

**МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ
КИЇВСЬКИЙ НАЦІОНАЛЬНИЙ ЛІНГВІСТИЧНИЙ УНІВЕРСИТЕТ**

Г.І. Сташко, Н.Ю. Титова

ВЖИВАЄМО АНГЛІЙСЬКУ

**Навчальний посібник з англійської мови як другої іноземної
для студентів II курсу факультету перекладачів**

*Рекомендовано Міністерством освіти і науки України
як навчальний посібник для студентів вищих навчальних закладів*

**Київ
Вид. центр КНЛУ
2014**

УДК 811.111 (075.8)
ББК 81.432.1-923
С 78

**Рекомендовано Міністерством освіти і науки України
як навчальний посібник для студентів вищих навчальних закладів
(Лист №1/11-9749 від 07.06.2013 р.)**

Друкується за рішенням вченої ради
Київського національного лінгвістичного університету
(протокол № 8 від 25 лютого 2013 р.)

Рецензенти: **Козяревич Л.В.** – кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри зіставного мовознавства і теорії та практики перекладу Київського національного лінгвістичного університету;
 Тараненко Л.І. – кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри теорії, практики та перекладу англійської мови Національного технічного університету України “КПІ”;
 Онучак Л.В. – кандидат педагогічних наук, доцент, завідувач кафедри сучасних європейських мов Національного університету ДПС України.

Сташко Г.І., Титова Н.Ю.

С 78 English-in-Use / Англійська мова. Навч. посібник. – К.: Вид. центр КНЛУ, 2014. – 348 с.

ISBN 978-966-638-295-8

Укладачі: **Сташко Г.І.** – старший викладач;
 Титова Н.Ю. – старший викладач.

ISBN 978-966-638-295-8

ББК 81.432.1-923

© Сташко Г., Титова Н., 2014
© Вид. центр КНЛУ, 2014

ПЕРЕДМОВА

Запропонований навчальний посібник розрахований на студентів другого курсу факультету перекладачів.

Посібник має на меті розвиток мовленнєвих і перекладацьких навичок та вмінь з англійської мови як другої іноземної, подальший розвиток соціокультурної та мовної (фонетичної, граматичної та лексичної) компетенцій студентів.

Структурно посібник складається з двох модулів: “Особистісна інформація та сім’я” (“Personal Identification and Family Life”), “Житло. Помешкання людини” (“There is No Place Like Home”), кожен з підтемами, які розроблено у відповідності до змісту типової та робочої програм з дисципліни в умовах кредитно-модульної системи.

На початку кожного модуля подано перелік мовного матеріалу, що представлений тематичною лексикою, яка активізується протягом вивчення модуля. В кінці посібника подана теорія з граматичних явищ, які присутні в обох модулях.

У посібнику передбачено різноманітні вправи для розвитку вмінь аудіювання, читання, усного та писемного мовлення, перекладу. Завдання спрямовані як на роботу студентів в аудиторії під керівництвом викладача, так і позааудиторну самостійну роботу. Розроблено вправи для багаторівневої аудиторії, що допомагають студенту та викладачеві не лише сконцентруватись на базовому матеріалі, а й охопити складні лексико-граматичні явища.

Текстовий матеріал посібника відзначається автентичністю та інформативністю, а також базується на сучасних джерелах інформації, перелік яких подано наприкінці посібника.

Укладачі вдячні рецензентам посібника – Л.В. Козяревич, кандидату філологічних наук, доценту кафедри зіставного мовознавства і теорії та практики перекладу Київського національного лінгвістичного університету, Л.І. Тараненко, кандидату філологічних наук, доценту кафедри теорії, практики та перекладу англійської мови Національного технічного університету України “КПІ”, Л.В. Онучак, кандидату педагогічних наук, доценту, завідувачу кафедри сучасних європейських мов Національного університету ДПС України за ретельний фаховий аналіз лінгвістичних та методичних властивостей посібника. Також автори висловлюють щире подяку Л.М. Яценко, кандидату педагогічних наук, доценту, завідувачу кафедри англійської мови факультету перекладачів Київського національного лінгвістичного університету за допомогу в створенні посібника та цінні поради, які сприяли його вдосконаленню.

MODULE ONE: PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION AND FAMILY LIFE

SECTION I: FAMILY, RESEMBLANCE, AGE

GRAMMAR:

- The Gerund and the Infinitive
- The Modal Verbs *Must, Have to, Should*

Vocabulary

Family relations	Родинні відносини
a husband / a wife	чоловік (одружений) / дружина
a father / a mother	батько / мати
parents	батьки
a child / children	дитина / діти
a son / a daughter	син / донька
a brother / a sister	брат / сестра
a cousin	двоюрідний брат чи сестра
a cousin brother / a cousin sister	двоюрідний брат / двоюрідна сестра
a second cousin	троюрідний брат чи сестра
a forty second cousin	дуже далекий родич, "десята вода на киселі"
an uncle / an aunt	дядько / тітка
a nephew / a niece	племінник, небіж / племінниця, небога
a grandfather / a grandmother	дідусь / бабуся
grandparents	дідусь та бабуся
a grandson / a granddaughter	онук / онука
a grandchild / grandchildren	онук / онуки (незалежно від статі)
a great-grandfather	прадідусь
a great-grandmother	прабабуся
great-grandparents	прадідусь та прабабуся
a half-brother / a half-sister	брат / сестра (по одному з батьків)
a father-in-law / a mother-in-law	свекор, тесть / свекруха, теща
parents-in-law	батьки чоловіка чи дружини
a brother-in-law / a sister-in-law	брат / сестра чоловіка чи дружини
a son-in-law / a daughter-in-law	зять / невістка
in-laws	рідні чоловіка чи дружини
a stepfather / a stepmother	вітчим / мачуха
a stepson / a stepdaughter	пасинок / пасербиця
a stepbrother / a stepsister	зведений брат / зведена сестра

foster parents; adoptive parents	прийомні батьки
foster children; adopted children	прийомні діти
an orphan	сирота
a godfather / a godmother	хрещений / хрещена
a family	сім'я
a single-parent family	неповна родина
a relative	родич
blood relatives / distant relatives	кровні родичі / далекі родичі
to adopt	всиновлювати
to bring up	виховувати
to be married to sb	бути одруженим з кимось
to be single	бути неодруженим
to marry sb / to get married to sb	одружуватися з кимось / одружитися ~
to divorce / to get divorced	розлучатися / розлучитися

Gerund

Uses of the -ing form

1. The -ing form (gerund) is used **after prepositions**.

He is good **at** *running*.

We are interested **in** *watching* this movie.

I am looking forward **to** *meeting* you.



Here are the constructions followed by **-ing**.

to be sorry for doing sth	вибачатися за щось (що вже зробили)
to be sorry about sth	шкодувати, жалкувати про щось
to be (feel) sorry for sb	шкодувати, співчувати комусь
to look forward to sb/sth/doing sth	з нетерпінням чекати когось, щось
to be sorry to do sth	вибачення за те, що робиться в даний момент чи буде незабаром зроблено

Constructions of liking/disliking

to be addicted to sth/doing sth	дуже захоплюватися чимось поганим, призвичаїтись до чогось поганого
to be crazy/mad about sth/sb/doing sth	бути схибленим на чомусь, комусь
to be fond of sb/sth/doing sth	любити когось, щось, щось робити
to be good/bad at sth/doing sth	вміти добре/погано робити щось
to be interested in sth/doing sth	бути зацікавленим чимось
to be keen on sth/doing sth but to be keen to do sth	палко захоплюватися чимось; дуже хотіти; прагнути щось зробити
to be pleased/happy/delighted with sth	бути (дуже) задоволеним чимось

to be impressed with/by sb/sth	бути враженим кимось/чимось
to be obsessed with sth/doing sth	бути одержимим чимось
to be afraid/scared of sb/sth/doing sth but to be afraid/scared to do sth	боятися когось, чогось, робити щось
to be bored/fed up with sb/sth/doing sth	знудитися через когось, щось
to be angry about sth	гніватися, сердитися на щось
to be angry with sb for doing sth	гніватися, сердитися на когось за щось
to be terrible at sth/doing sth	не вміти чи жахливо робити щось
to be tired of sb/sth/doing sth	стомитися від когось, чогось
to be worried/nervous about sb/sth/doing sth	непокоїтися/нервувати про когось, щось, з приводу чогось
to be (in)capable of doing sth	бути (не)здатним, (не)спроможним щось робити
to be (get) used to sth/doing sth	бути призвичаїним до чогось, призвичаїтись щось робити
to be surprised/shocked at/by sb/sth	бути здивованим, шокованим кимось, чимось

2. The **-ing** form is used after certain verbs.

I **enjoy** *visiting* my relatives.

John **denies** *stealing* the money.

Here are the verbs followed by -ing.

to avoid	уникати чогось
can't stop	не могли зупинитись щось робити
can't help	не могли не робити щось
to deny	заперечувати
to keep on	продовжувати
to finish	завершувати
to give up	кидати назавжди (якусь звичку), відмовитися
to prefer	надавати перевагу

Verbs of liking/disliking

to adore	обожнювати, любити над усе
to enjoy	зазнавати втіхи (від чогось), мати задоволення
to like	подобатися, любити
to love	любити, кохати
to dislike	не любити, не подобатися
to hate	ненавидіти
to mind	мати щось проти, заперечувати
can't stand	не могли витримати, не могли терпіти

Note that **like, love, hate, prefer** may have slight difference in meaning.

-ing

I like *cooking*.

(generally)



to+infinitive

I like *to cook* beef on Sundays.

(specific)

3. The **-ing** form is used as a noun (the subject or object of the sentence).

Cooking is my hobby.

Smoking is bad for your health.

I find *working* in the garden a real bore.



4. The **-ing** form is used after certain *idiomatic expressions*.

This book **is worth reading**.

It's no use <i>doing sth.</i>	Немає сенсу щось робити.
There's no point in <i>doing sth.</i>	Немає сенсу щось робити.
It's no good <i>doing sth.</i>	Даремно (марно) щось робити.
<i>Sth</i> is worth <i>doing</i> .	Щось варто того, щоб зробити.
To be busy <i>doing sth.</i>	Бути зайнятим чимсь.

5. Some verbs may take both **-ing** or **to+infinitive**. Though if the verb is in the Continuous tense, the infinitive is used.

He **began working** when he was twenty.

He **began to work** when he was twenty.

It **is beginning to rain**.

to begin = to start	починати
to continue = to go on	продовжувати
to stop = to finish	закінчувати

6. After “**go**” for physical activity.

They **go skiing** every winter.



7. After **spend/waste time**.

He usually **wastes time playing** computer games.

1 Complete the chart with the **-ing** form of the verbs in the list.
Translate them into Ukrainian.

drive	listen	run	make	play	ski
swim	travel	use	write	shop	study
wait	buy	come	take	get	go
paint	dance	fly	give	find	watch

+ing	-e+ing	double consonant+ing
<i>reading</i>	<i>loving</i>	<i>stopping</i>

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words from the list. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

cycle read run shop travel drive chat cook

1. I have a lot of books. I love _____. 2. Jamie has a bike. He likes _____. 3. My friends do a lot of exercise. They like _____. 4. My parents never go to restaurants. They love _____ at home. 5. We usually stay at home on holidays. We don't like _____. 6. David has a big car. He loves _____. 7. My brother uses his computer a lot. He likes _____ online. 8. Rosie often goes to the city centre. She loves _____.

3 Complete the sentences with the -ing form of the verbs in brackets. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. I really hate _____ (*tidy*) my room. 2. I don't enjoy _____ (*go*) to the cinema on my own. 3. Please, stop _____ (*make*) that noise! 4. Finish _____ (*eat*) and let's go for a walk. 5. My sisters always go on _____ (*talk*) unless the mother tells them to stop! 6. I love _____ (*travel*) to different places. 7. She hates _____ (*garden*). 8. My husband hates _____ (*go*) to the gym. 9. We love _____ (*go*) out. 10. My brother is good at _____ (*swim*).

4 Match the sentence beginnings and endings. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Do you ever dream of | a. <i>doing</i> some part-time work? |
| 2. Are you interested in | b. <i>hearing</i> from you. |
| 3. Please, don't leave without | c. <i>stopping</i> work and <i>retiring</i> ? I do. |
| 4. Remember to say good-bye before | d. <i>thanking</i> everybody for coming. |
| 5. We want to end the party by | e. <i>saying</i> good-bye to me. |
| 6. I'm really looking forward to | f. <i>leaving</i> tomorrow. |

5 Complete the text with the -ing form of these verbs. Translate it into Ukrainian. Say what makes you feel good.

drive have get get up go imagine leave
read send stay turn take write listen

What Makes You Feel Good?

Here are some answers from five people.

- _____ and then _____ a funny e-mail or text message to my friends. And of course, _____ their faces when they read it.
- I really like _____ at night when there's no traffic, _____ to my favourite music. I feel completely free.
- _____ in bed on Sunday morning and _____ the newspaper. Then _____ very late and _____ my dog for a walk.

4. I enjoy _____ to the gym and really _____ tired then _____ a long hot shower followed by a nice hot cup of tea. There's nothing better.
5. _____ off my computer at the end of the day, _____ work, and getting into my car to go home! It's the best moment of the day. I love it!

6

Read the sentences. Translate them into Ukrainian. Make up your own sentences with the words and phrases in bold type.

1. My brothers **adore** playing chess.
2. We **are sorry for** being late.
3. **Is** your father **good at** tennis?
4. Their children **are fond of** swimming.
5. Our aunt **is keen on** playing the piano.
6. My second cousin **is addicted to** smoking.
7. Her husband **is mad about** listening to music.
8. My little nephew and niece **are looking forward to** visiting us.
9. That orphan **is looking forward to** his foster parents.
10. I'm **sorry about** your parents' divorce.
11. His cousin sister **is good at** reading but she is very **bad at** writing.
12. Mary's grandfather **is obsessed with** collecting stamps.
13. Her stepdaughter **is obsessed with** pets.
14. I'm really **sorry for** his stepson.
15. John **doesn't mind** living with his in-laws.
16. I **am impressed with** my stepfather's English.
17. That lady **is angry with** her son-in-law **for** being lazy.
18. Mark's father-in-law **is happy with** his job.
19. Their daughter-in-law **is tired of** cooking.
20. His parents **can't stop** shouting at him.
21. Peter **is fed up with** watching TV.
22. His wife **is nervous about** her distant relatives.
23. **There's no point in** buying the car.
24. Your grandchildren **are capable of** passing the exam.
25. We **are not used to** living in a single-parent family.
26. My grandfather **is** always **busy** doing translations.
27. Our little cousin brother **can't help** eating sweets.
28. **It's no use** complaining of unhappy life.
29. I **can't stand** working with my relatives.
30. Linda's half-brother usually **wastes time** playing computer games.



7

Work in pairs. Choose five things to talk about from the list below. Say why.

Model: *I don't mind cooking. It's quite relaxing.*

- a job you **don't mind doing** in the house

- a sport you **enjoy watching**
- something you **like doing** with your family
- something you **love doing** in summer
- something you **hate doing** at the university/work
- something you **spend** a lot of time **doing**
- somebody you **dream of meeting**
- something you **don't like doing** alone
- a country you **are interested in visiting**
- something you want to **stop/give up doing**

8

Complete the sentences using **gerund**.

1. I adore ...

2. My cat enjoys ...

3. We can't stand ...

4. I never care about ...

5. I'm afraid of ...



6. My father is fond of ...

7. My mother is interested in ...

8. My best friend is really mad about ...

9. My grandparents dislike ...

10. My sister / brother is terrible at ...

9

Fill in the gaps with suitable forms of the verbs in brackets.

Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Linda _____ (*love*) looking after her kids. 2. My aunt _____ (*be*) keen on playing the piano. 3. Lisa _____ (*dislike*) learning romantic poems with her granny.

4. This girl _____ (*be*) terrible at mathematics. 5. Mark and Laura _____ (*be*) scared of going there.

6. Ann _____ (*adore*) doing housework at weekends. 7. Our little son _____ (*be*) tired of reading books.

8. We _____ (*hate*) doing our homework. 9. Peter _____ (*be*) fond of traveling by car. 10. He _____ (*be*) angry about his exam.



10

a) 🎧 Listen and write four sentences. Translate them into Ukrainian.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

b) 👁️ Look at the phrases and make up some sentences. Say who usually loves and who hates doing the following things.

▪ *watch football*

▪ *tell secrets to friends*

▪ *play chess*

▪ *dance at parties*

▪ *have lunch with the mother*



▪ *buy presents*

Model: *Women love going shopping but men hate going shopping.*

11

a) 🎧 Listen and complete the sentences. Repeat and translate them.

1. What do you like _____ at the weekend? 2. I like _____ in the mountains. 3. I love _____. 4. I don't like _____.

b)   Listen to the dialogue. Fill in the gaps with the necessary words. Practice the dialogue in pairs.

A: I _____ cooking. Do you?

B: Yes, I like cooking _____.

A: Do you like reading _____?

B: Yes, I _____ reading good _____.



A: Do _____ like cycling?

B: Yes, _____ do. I _____ cycling!

A: Are you _____?

B: No, sorry!



c)   Listen, write and then read the activities. Translate them. In pairs, act out dialogues with these like in b. Speak about your favourite and pet hate activities.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------------|----------|----------------|
| 1. _____ | 4. flying | 7. _____ | 10. camping |
| 2. _____ | 5. _____ | 8. _____ | 11. _____ DVDs |
| 3. _____ online | 6. _____ to the cinema | 9. _____ | 12. _____ |

d) Complete the sentences.

- Cy _____ is a very good exercise, especially for your legs.
- Sh _____ is a lot of women's favourite free time activity.
- C _____ is a cheap way of having a holiday, and it's fun for children.
- T _____ can be very expensive if you go by plane and stay in hotels.
- Many people prefer w _____ DVDs to g _____ to the cinema.

12

a)   Listen and complete the dialogues. Translate them into Ukrainian.

1.

A: Do you like _____?

B: No, I don't. I _____ it. It's boring. I hate _____ to clothes shops with my _____. We always argue.

2.

A: Do you like _____?

B: It's OK. I like _____ food, and things for the _____. I don't like _____ for clothes. I can never find things I _____, and clothes are very _____.

3.

A: Do you like _____?

B: Yeah! I go _____ every _____. I love _____ clothes, music, _____, food – everything. _____'s fun. I love it.

4.

A: Do you like _____?

B: It depends. I _____ trying on clothes with my _____. That's fun but I don't like _____ shopping with my _____, and I hate _____ to the supermarket.

b) 🗣️ Do you like shopping? What do you usually go shopping for? Who do you usually go shopping with?

13

a) Complete the dialogues. Translate them into Ukrainian.

1.

Interviewer: *What do you like doing on your holidays?*

Matt: Well, I like **t**_____, so we go to a lot of different places. Unfortunately my girlfriend doesn't like **f**_____, so we can't go by plane. We usually go by car and we take our bikes with us because we love **c**_____.

2.

Interviewer: *Where do you go on holiday?*

Nicole: Well, it depends on the year. Sometimes we like **s**_____ at home when it rains or **g**_____ out for the day. **W**_____ along the street or **h**_____ a picnic in the country can also be great. We love **st**_____ outside and sometimes we go **c**_____.

3.

Interviewer: *What do you do in your free time?*

William: At weekends I like **d**_____ something relaxing, for example **r**_____ a book or **p**_____ a picture. Sometimes I have a free afternoon in the middle of the week and so I like **h**_____ lunch with my friends.

b) 🗣️ How do you like spending your holidays?

14

Translate into English using *gerund*.

1. Мої діти обожнюють гратися з іншими дітьми. 2. Ви не проти випити келих вина? 3. Не люблю обідати без батьків. 4. Люди часто дуже бояться літати. 5. Які учні здібні до малювання? 6. Не можу терпіти розмовляти зі своїми далекими родичами. 7. Чому ти божеволієш через танці? 8. Невже ви не зацікавлені в тому, щоб тут працювати? 9. Чому ти ненавидиш зустрічатися з родичами? 10. Не хвилюйся, дітям подобається гратися разом. 11. Нам так набридло вчити граматику! 12. Я цікавлюсь кулінарією, в мене є до неї здібності. 13. Ти не проти піти в кафе та випити чаю? 14. Нам подобається готувати смачні тістечка. 15. Не сердься на це кошеня, воно маленьке та обожнює гратися. 16. Ненавиджу бути один, мені подобається бути зі своїми друзями. 17. Вона зацікавлена в вивченні історії?



15

Make up all possible questions to the following sentences.



1. Paul adores playing with puppies.
2. Emma loves cooking for her family.
3. John is afraid of touching terrible spiders.
4. Eve hates talking to her sister.
5. Steve likes walking with his son in the park.

16

Read the text and translate it into Ukrainian.

My Family

Before I start talking about my family **let me introduce** myself. I'm Petro Klymenko. I'm 18. I'm a **second year** student at Kyiv National Linguistic University. I study foreign languages and in future I'm going to **work as a translator and interpreter** at an enterprise.

And now I am going to tell you about my **family**. It's not very large. We are a **family of four**. **There are four of us** – my father, my mother, my sister and I. We are happy that we live together and we **get on** well.

To begin with, I want to tell about my **father**. His name is Volodymyr Ivanovych, he is 49. My father is **good-natured**, tall, thin and quite **handsome**. He is a **hard-working** and **easy-going** person. He is a university teacher. He gives lectures, takes classes and seminars there. He is **fond of** his students. They **are of various specialities**. They **work in various fields**. Some of them are biologists, others are economists or physicists. What I don't like about my dad is that he is always busy. He often **works overtime**, as he is a **bread-maker** in our family. My father is **crazy about** sports. He plays tennis, but his **hobby** is chess.



My **mother's** name is Svitlana Dmytrivna. She is **three years younger than** my father. My mother is very **attractive**, quite slender, blue-eyed and dark-haired. She is a very **kind** and **understanding** person. She is a good engineer and has a senior position at her office. She adores cooking very much. I must admit she is especially **good at** baking tasty apple pies and cakes.

Julia is my **elder sister**. She is **eight years senior to** me. So she is already 26. My sister **works for a firm** as an accountant and makes calculations on the computer. She is **married** and has two children. Her husband's name is Victor. He is tall, dark-eyed and fair-haired. He is a serviceman. My sister and her family live in a small town not far from Kyiv. We sometimes go there on our days off. I



like playing with my **niece** and my **nephew**. They are very **funny** and **cute children**. Mary, my **sister's elder daughter**, **takes after** Julia. She is a blue-eyed girl with ginger hair. She is quite pretty, but a little **hot-headed**. She **is keen on** classical music. She loves playing the piano. My nephew Tom is fair-haired, brown-eyed and **looks like** his father. They **are both interested in** football and spend a lot of time playing football or watching matches on TV.



As for my **grandparents**, they are musicians. My **grandfather** is a violinist and my **grandmother** is a pianist. They **adore** playing musical instruments and dancing. Now they don't work. They **are retired**. They **are obsessed with** going to the country at weekends and enjoy working in the garden.

Moreover, I have a lot of **relatives on my mother's** and **on my father's side**. Some of my **aunts, uncles, cousins** and other **distant relatives** live in Odesa and Lviv. But my father's **elder brother** and his family live in Kyiv too. My uncle Borys works as a translator for a company. His wife Kate is a nurse. They have two children. Their names are Nick and Nelly. Nick is a student of the Polytechnic College. He is going **to graduate from** it this year. Nelly **goes to school**. She is **in the tenth form**. She **leaves school** next year. She is going **to apply to** the Engineering College. I suppose she wants **to make a designer**. Our families are very **close** and we like spending time together.



In conclusion, to sum up, I want to say that my family **is my everything**. We **respect** and try **to take care of** each other. I **see** my relatives **as my best friends** and I am happy that we are so united.

17

Transcribe the following words from the text from *ex.16*.



Pianist, engineer, musicians, cousin, daughter, senior, graduate, pretty, accountant, violinist, designer, niece, various, university, interpreter, enterprise, suppose, conclusion, handsome, translator, everything, piano.

18

Find the English equivalents in the text from *ex.16*.

висока темноволоса дівчина, блакитноокий старший брат, закінчувати політехнічний університет, працюючий племінник, приваблива струнка дружина, обожнювати готувати тістечка, на вихідні, бути годувальником у родині, працювати медсестрою, навчатися в 10 класі, поважати батьків, представлятись, закінчувати університет, працювати на фірмі, закінчувати

школу, ставати дизайнером, піклуватись один про одного, бути на три роки старшим за батька, проводити час граючи у футбол, вважати батьків за кращих друзів (бачити у батьках кращих друзів), родичі по лінії мами, подавати документи до коледжу, працювати в різних сферах, студент другого курсу, родина з чотирьох осіб, далекі родичі, працювати письмовим перекладачем, добре ладнати, бути на пенсії, працювати понаднормово, бути на вісім років старшим за когось.



19 Make up five special questions to the text from *ex.16*.

1. _____; 2. _____; 3. _____; 4. _____; 5. _____.

20 Supply appropriate prepositions where necessary.

1. My sister is keen _____ playing chess. 2. His colleague is not _____ holiday now. 3. I am going to come _____ your place tomorrow. 4. They are teachers _____ German. 5. Are you going to apply _____ that university? 6. We live _____ London. 7. He doesn't speak _____ French. 8. Ann works _____ a big company _____ Belfast. 9. Is Peter a student _____ this university? 10. Julia is _____ the third form. 11. My younger brother is fond _____ cooking. 12. Each year many students graduate _____ Kyiv National Linguistic University. 13. There are 5 _____ them _____ their family. 14. They have two aunts _____ their father's side. 15. I don't go _____ school _____ weekends. 16. My grandparents are _____ pension. 17. He takes care _____ his family.



21 Translate into English.

1. Ваша дочка струнка та висока? Вона інженер чи музикант? В неї є сім'я? Вона працює? Вона грає на піаніно? Де вона живе? Вона любить музику? Чому вона любить музику? Яку музику вона обожнює?
2. Ми одружені. Мою дружину звать Марія. Вона вчителька англійської мови. Вона не перекладач. Їй тридцять років. Вона темноволоса, темноока та дуже струнка. Вона любить готувати тістечка. Вона не говорить німецькою. Вона знає англійську.
3. Мої батьки на пенсії, вони не працюють. Вони живуть у Львові. У них є улюблене хобі. Це шахи.
4. Його сини схожі на нього. Вони обожнюють спорт та грають у теніс кожен вівторок. Але вони хочуть стати біологами. Вони не живуть у Києві. Вони живуть у Берліні та розмовляють німецькою.
5. Скільки у вас дітей? Як їх звати? Ким вони збираються стати? Вони студенти? Що вони обожнюють робити? Вони цікавляться музикою?



6. Твій брат скрипаль чи піаніст? Ні, він студент політехнічного коледжу. Він збирається стати фізиком. Він розмовляє французькою, німецькою та англійською. Він не розмовляє італійською.
7. Твій чоловік лікар чи економіст? Він лікар, він дуже привабливий і трохи запальний. В нього прямий ніс, блакитні очі та світле волосся. Він не високий.
8. Мої племінники навчаються в коледжі. Вони живуть недалеко від Львова. Там живе багато родичів зі сторони мого чоловіка. Тітка працює бухгалтером, а молодший брат дизайнер у великій компанії. Ми часто відвідуємо їх.



22

Underline the word that is odd. Explain your choice.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. brother-in-law | uncle | niece | grandfather |
| 2. friend | colleague | brother | group mate |
| 3. wife | uncle | daughter | aunt |
| 4. mother-in-law | wife | niece | son |
| 5. parents | nephews | grandparents | cousin |

23

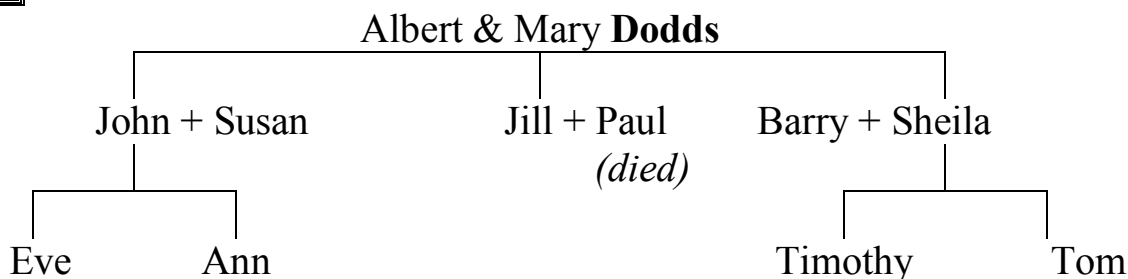
Complete the following sentences using the active vocabulary list.

1. My sister's son is my _____. 2. My sister's daughter is my _____. 3. Your mother's husband is your _____. 4. Your mother's sister is your _____. 5. Your uncle's daughter is your _____. 6. Your brother's wife is your _____. 7. Your aunt's son is your _____. 8. These are my parents' parents. They are my _____. 9. This is my husband's mother. She is my _____. 10. Your uncle's or aunt's children are your _____. 11. Your mother's brother is your _____. 12. Your grandparents' parents are your _____. 13. Your mother's mother is your _____. 14. Your mother's new husband is your _____. 15. She is my sister. She is my parents' _____. 16. They are married. She is his _____ and he is her _____. 17. Your son and daughter are your _____. 18. He is my brother and my parents' _____. 19. My father's new wife is my _____.



24

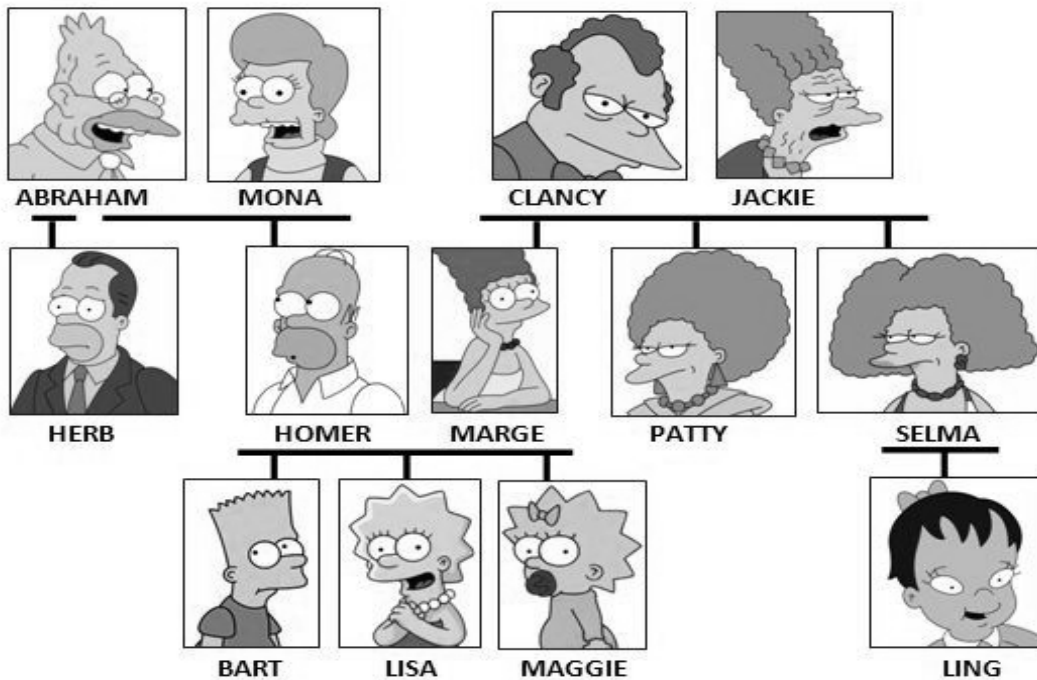
Look at the family tree and complete the sentences below.



1. John is Jill's _____.
2. Timothy is Jill's _____.
3. Eve and Ann are Timothy's _____.
4. Eve is Sheila's _____.
5. Albert Dodds is Tom's _____.
6. Barry is Eve's _____.
7. Susan is Timothy's _____.
8. Paul is Jill's _____.
9. Tom is Mary's _____.
10. Ann is Susan's _____.

25 How much do you know about the Simpsons Family? Look at the picture, read the sentences and fill in the blank spaces.

THE SIMPSONS



1. Bart is Lisa's _____.
2. Marge is Homer's _____.
3. Clancy is Selma's _____.
4. Abraham is Mona's _____.
5. Maggie is Ling's _____.
6. Lisa is Patty's _____.
7. Homer is Abraham's _____.
8. Selma is Ling's adoptive _____.
9. Bart is Herb's _____.
10. Maggie is Marge's _____.
11. Herb is Marge's _____.
12. Patty is Selma's _____.
13. Herb is Homer's _____.
14. Abraham is Marge's _____.
15. Herb is Maggie's _____.
16. Jackie is Homer's _____.
17. Marge is Herb's _____.
18. Homer and Marge are Lisa's _____.
19. Homer is Clancy's _____.
20. Bart and Lisa are Maggie's _____.
21. Abraham is Lisa's _____.
22. Bart and Lisa are Marge's _____.
23. Maggie is Jackie's _____.
24. Marge is Mona's _____.
25. Clancy and Jackie are Bart's _____.

26 a) Listen and complete the sentences about Tom's family tree below. Draw the family tree.

1. Sally is Tom's _____.
2. Tom is Sally's _____.
3. Kirsty is Sally and Tom's _____.
4. Nick is their _____.
5. Sally is Nick's _____.
6. Tom is Kirsty's _____.
7. Kirsty is Nick's _____.
8. Nick is Kirsty's _____.
9. Sally and Tom are Kirsty and Nick's _____.
10. Kirsty and Nick are Tom and Sally's _____.

b) Listen and complete the sentences about Sally's brother, David.

This is David Arnot and his family.

"We're from _____. I have a _____ farm. My _____'s name is Megan, and she has a _____ in town. She _____ a shop assistant. We have one _____, Ben, and two _____, Dylan and Dolly. My _____, Sally, and her _____, Tom, have a big _____ in London. They have _____ children. Tom has a very good _____."

27

U.S. Politics is a family affair. Listen and complete the sentences.

1. Hillary Clinton is Bill Clinton's _____.
2. George Bush is George W. Bush's _____.
3. Jeb Bush and George W. Bush are _____.



28

Listen and write the sentences you hear. Explain the usage of 's. Here are the names you may need.

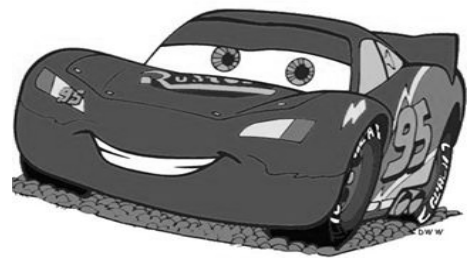
Miranda Carrie Jack Ela Ben Molly

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

29

Order the words to make sentences.

1. house / Scotland / sister's / in / my / is.
2. works / her / in / Barbara / shop / brother's.
3. Japanese / her / car / boyfriend's / is.
4. father / you / do / know / Jennifer's?
5. from / girlfriend / France / brother's / is / my.
6. daughter's / bank / in / friend / our / works / a.
7. job / stressful / is / Tom's / very?
8. money / mother / lot / earns / of / Susan's / a.



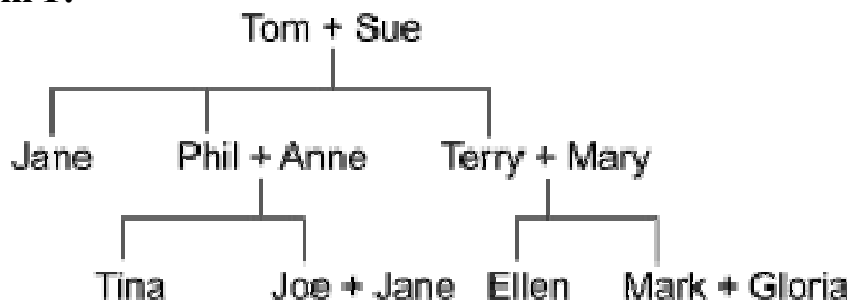
30

Write the sentences with an apostrophe (').

1. Martha is my brothers girlfriend.
2. This is my parents car.
3. Do you know Kathys brother?
4. I think this is that womans bag.
5. Our teachers wife is French.
6. We have coffee in the Teachers Room at 10.00.
7. My fathers flat is in the town center.
8. Philips brother is an actor.
9. My sons wife likes animals.
10. His cousins cat is very nice.
11. Clares children work in London.
12. Boris brothers name is Max.
13. This bag is Jacks.
14. That is Donnas boyfriend.

31**Give the English equivalents.**

1. сестра моєї тещі; 2. дідусь її тітки; 3. брат їхнього дядька; 4. племінниця мого онука; 5. сини його бабусі; 6. свекруха його дружини; 7. чоловік вашої дочки; 8. зять її дідуся; 9. батько твоєї дружини; 10. діти мого племінника.

32**Fill in the correct member of the family. Keep to this family tree. Who am I?**

1. My **father** is 64 years old. His name is **Tom**.
2. My _____ is 62. Her name is _____.
3. I have got a _____, she is 37.
4. My _____ is 40. He is married and has two _____.
5. I have two _____ too.
6. My _____ is called _____. She is 17 years old.
7. My _____ is called Joe. He is married.
8. His _____ is called _____, just like my _____.
9. Do you know who I am? My name is _____.

33**Complete the sentences with the words from your active vocabulary.**

a)

1. They don't have their own children. He is their _____. 2. They can't live together anymore. They want to _____. 3. This poor child has no parents. He is a(n) _____. 4. My wife has a nice sister. She is my _____.

b)

1. Your husband's/wife's family _____. 2. All your relatives including aunts, grandparents, etc. _____. 3. Children who have (for example) the same father but a different mother _____. 4. A girl who has the same mother as you but a different father _____. 5. Families where the mother or father is bringing up the children on his/her own _____. 6. Two people who are having a relationship _____. 7. Two or more people who are together and are relatives _____.

34**Write the names of two people who are important to you. Work in pairs. Tell your partner as much as possible about these people.**

Model: *Tara is my niece. She's 19 years old and she studies at the university ...*

35

Draw your family tree. Then write as much as you know about all members of your family.



36

Translate into English.

батько та мати	брат	чоловік	прадід	близькі родичі
дідусь та бабуся	сестра	дружина	правнук	далекі родичі
двоюрідний брат	дядько	зять	правнучка	племінник
неповна родина	тітка	невістка	тесть та теща	племінниця

37

a) Listen and write the words. Translate them.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

b) Listen and write the phrases. Translate them.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____

c) Listen and repeat the irregular plurals.

1. _____ - _____ 2. _____ - _____ 3. _____ - _____ 4. _____ - _____

d) Listen and write the words. Translate them. Give the plural forms.

1. _____ 3. _____ 5. _____ 7. _____ 9. _____
2. _____ 4. _____ 6. _____ 8. _____ 10. _____

38

Listen and write the sentences, translate them.

a) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

b) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

neither ... nor ...	ні ..., ні ...	<i>She is neither tall nor short.</i>
both ... and ...	як ..., так і ...	<i>I like both tea and coffee.</i>
either ... or ...	чи ..., чи ...	<i>Take either a pen or a pencil and write it down.</i>

39 Translate into English.

1. Він не має ні братів, ні сестер. 2. У неї є як сини, так і дочки. 3. Або йди додому, або залишайся у друзів. 4. У мене немає ні ручки, ні олівця. 5. Ані хочеться побачити як дядька, так і тітку. 6. У Джека немає ні дружини, ні дітей. 7. Леся хоче як навчатися, так і працювати. 8. Чому діти не хочуть ні спати, ні їсти? 9. Їй подобаються як племінники, так і племінниці. 10. У Петра немає ні дітей, ні онуків. 11. Я люблю як малювати, так і співати.

40

Read and translate the article about three families. Answer the questions below the article.

Emma Bedford

Emma **comes from** a quiet village in the south of England. Her **mother** works in a library and her **father** is an accountant. They are going to **retire** soon. Emma **is married to** Lesikar and loves him very much. They have a **daughter**, Lucia. She is **seven years old** now. They live in a small village in Tanzania now because Lesikar is a Masai. There is no electricity in the home and they walk almost a kilometer to get water. Emma cooks simple dinners of corn and vegetables and she washes the clothes in a bucket. There is a small primary school in the village, but Emma and Lesikar teach Lucia at home.



Judy Boomer

Judy has four **sons** and seven **daughters** and a pet dog, Bosco, but she wants more boys. Judy and her **husband**, Larry, live in Atlanta, Georgia, but they also have a 10-metre-long motor home. The family sometimes travels more than 40 000 kilometers a year for their work. The **children** do not go to school, but they study at home with their parents. The Boomers are a **circus family** and all the children take part in the show. They do different kinds of juggling and Margaret, the youngest, stands on one leg in her mother's hand. Now they perform all over America.



John Allen

John is 43 years old and he has four children, two **daughters** and two **sons**. John is a plant scientist and he lives with three of his children in the South American **rainforest**. Their “house” is a group of tents near the river Orinoco in Venezuela. John’s **wife** and one of his daughters prefer to live in London.

John’s children don’t go to school because John is their teacher. He teaches them everything he knows, including how to survive in South America.



The children don’t know how to use a PlayStation, but they can drive, even his 9-year-old son, Simon.



At night they drive their car 50 meters from the kitchen tent to the bedroom tent because there are a lot of wild animals in the area. They spend their free time playing and reading books and in the evening they listen to the news on the radio. They don’t have a TV or a CD player. In summer the children’s friends come from London to visit. When they go home they tell their parents incredible stories of their holidays in the Venezuelan rainforest.

- Do you think that the life of these three families is good for the children? Why or why not?

41

a)   **Read and translate the phrases. Listen to the description of a typical English family and answer the questions in each block.**

- ✓ *a part-time secretary*
- ✓ *a beach*
- ✓ *chicken and chips*
- ✓ *a soap opera*
- ✓ *a Barbie doll*
- ✓ *roast beef / lamb*

➤ **Parents**

What are the parents’ names? How old are they? What are their jobs? What are their interests?

➤ **Children**

How many children are there? What are their names? How old are they? What are their hobbies?

➤ **Family pet**

Is there a family pet? What is it? What is it called?

➤ **Weekends and holidays**

What does the family do at weekends? What do they do on holidays?

➤ **Food**

When does the family eat together? What is their favourite food? What is Sally’s favourite dish?

➤ **TV**

What are the family’s favourite TV programme? When do they watch TV?



b) 🎧🗣️ Think and speak about a typical family in Ukraine. Make notes using the questions above.

42 🎧🗣️ Listen to Sarah talking to her boyfriend about her family. Answer the questions.

1. What can you say about Sarah's mother?
2. Who is Martin? Where does he work? What is Sarah's attitude to Martin?
3. Who is Lisa? Who's Philip? Who's Sophie? How old is Sophie?
4. Who is Adam? What is he?

43 a) 🎧🗣️ Listen to Rachel Chang. Complete the information about her family.

	<i>name</i>	<i>age</i>	<i>job</i>
Rachel's <i>brother</i>			
Rachel's <i>mother</i>			
Rachel's <i>father</i>			

b) 🎧🗣️ Complete the sentences. Listen again and check.

1. Rachel is from _____.
2. Their family's _____ is in San Diego.
3. Steve is _____ brother.
4. Steve is _____ years old and he is a _____.
5. Her _____ name is Grace.
6. Her mother is _____ years old and she is a _____.
7. Grace is Bob's _____.
8. Her _____ name is Bob.
9. Bob is _____ years old and he is a _____.

44 🎧🗣️ Listen to the song "We are family".

45 Write a paragraph about your family.

I have ... sisters, ... brothers. My elder sister's name is ... She is ... My mother has one brother. His name is ... He is my ... He is married to ... They have ... children. Their children's names are ... etc.

46 Translate into English.

1. Моя родина не велика, але гарна й дружна. Маму звати Юлія, а батька – Юрій. Мама лікар, батько інженер. 2. В мене є як брат, так і сестра. Моя сестра незаміжня. Вона не має ні чоловіка, ні дітей, але в неї є як племінник, так і племінниця. 3. Нас троє в сім'ї. І в мене є багато родичів з маминої сторони. 4. А я маю прабабусю, тітку, дядька і двоюрідну сестру з батькової сторони. 5. Мій брат одружений. Їого дружину звати Мері. Вони мають двоє дітей: сина та доньку. Їхнього сина звати Нік, а дочку – Джейн. 6. Мої батьки мають онука та онучку. Вони дуже гарні дідусь і бабуся. Вони гарні свекор та свекруха також. Їм 45 років. 7. Не дивлячись



на те, що Том і Мері зведені брат і сестра, вони ніколи не сваряться. **8.** У мене є один брат. Йому 18. Він студент. Його звати Алекс. Він не одружений. У нього немає дітей. **9.** У нас є дві гарні кішки та песик. Кішок звати Міллі та Том. Песика звати Біллі. Він теж дуже гарний. Йому три роки і він чорного кольору. **10.** Хто цей хлопець? Це мій зведений брат. **11.** В мене немає двоюрідних братів чи сестер, але по батьковій лінії у мене є зведений брат. **12.** Хто цей чоловік? В нього є діти?

13. Він мій дідусь. Я його онук. **14.** Наша сім'я велика. Нас семеро: мати, батько, сестра, брат і мої бабуся та дідусь. **15.** Це друзі сім'ї. Вони мають прийомну дитину. **16.** Містер і Місіс Лінсі занепокоєні тим, що їхня онука збирається одружитися з племінником їх сусідів. **17.** Він сирота, але добрі люди збираються його всиновити. **18.** Мій дальній родич по лінії батька є з неповної сім'ї і зараз він живе зі своєю бабусею в селі. **19.** Невістка її тітки не знає своїх кровних родичів. **20.** Неповні сім'ї стають дуже частими в наш час. **21.** Ваша сім'я велика? А скільки вас у сім'ї? Ти маєш брата? Твій брат одружений? У тебе є багато родичів? У тебе є двоюрідні брати чи сестри? **22.** Дівчина не має жодних родичів по лінії матері, але в неї є тітка по лінії батька. **23.** Їхня онука завжди допомагає їм по господарству. **24.** Думаю, мені пощастило. Усі мої родичі з боку чоловіка надзвичайно милі та цікаві люди. **25.** Я маю зведеного брата, який є сином моєї матері та вітчима. Він навчається у коледжі.

Vocabulary

Resemblance	Схожість
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • to take after sb • to look like sb • to resemble sb 	бути схожим на когось
likeness between / to sb	схожість, подібність між / з кимось
resemblance between / to sb	схожість між / з кимось, на когось
to have a strong resemblance to sb	бути дуже схожим на когось
twins	близнята, двійнята
triplets	трійня
quads	четвернята
to be a male replica of one's mother (only about men)	бути точною копією матері (лише про чоловіків)
to be as like as two peas in a pod	бути схожими як дві краплі води
to be the very image / picture of sb	бути точним портретом / ~ копією

to be unlike / to be dissimilar	різнитися, бути не схожими
to look (to be) alike / to be similar	бути дуже схожими (бути на одне лице)
to confuse sb with sb	плутати когось з кимось
to spot (similar features)	бачити, відмічати; розпізнавати (схожі риси)
to take sb for sb	приймати когось за когось

47

Act out the dialogues. Try to find out who your new friend resembles and answer similar questions.

1. A. You do **look alike** – your brother and you!
B. Yes, we **have a strong resemblance between us**.
A. Who do you **resemble**?
B. We **look like** our father.
 2. A. Who does your sister **take after**?
B. She is **the very image of** her mother.
 3. A. Those two brothers are **twins**, aren't they?
B. Yes, they are twins and **as like as two peas in a pod**.
 4. A. Is there any **likeness** between your parents and you?
B. Yes, we have a **strong resemblance between us**.
 5. A. How do you manage not to **confuse** your twin-brothers?
B. It's easy if they are your brothers.
 6. A. Do you have a **strong resemblance to** your sister?
B. No, we are **quite unlike**. To be more exact, we are **dissimilar**.
 7. A. Who does his son **take after**?
B. He is a **male replica of his mother**.
- Who do you **resemble**? Is there any **likeness** between your parents and you?
➤ Who does your brother/sister **take after**?
➤ Do you have a **twin** brother/sister? Do people **confuse** you?
➤ Do you have a **strong resemblance to** your brother/sister?



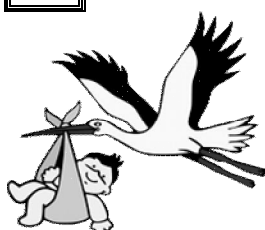
48

Transcribe the given words and explain their meaning.

Resemblance, twins, triplets, quads, replica, confuse, dissimilar, picture.

49

Fill in the missing words or phrases.



When the child is born, all the relatives wonder, who he/she **a) _____** like. Of course, it is very interesting to spot some **b) _____** features, especially fathers go crazy about looking for some strong **c) _____** between his appearance and his child's. You can often hear suggestions like: "No,

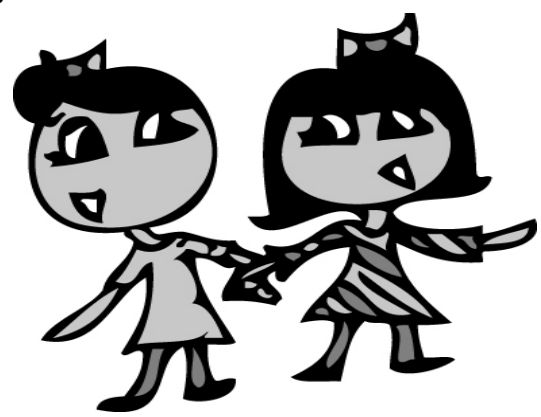
darling, he d) _____ like me” or “Oh, no, sweetie, he e) _____ after me!” But when a family has f) _____, parents and relatives often g) _____ them, because they are as like h) _____. In fact, it’s not the main point who your child i) _____ after, all loving parents just wish him good health and happy future.

50 Complete the text with a linking word from the box.

and but so because however

Two Sisters

My sister and I are very different, to be more exact, we are dissimilar, _____, we get on well together. She likes staying at home in the evening _____ watching television with her boyfriend, _____ I prefer going out with my friends. We like going to clubs or the cinema. Sometimes we just go to a café. I am about to have my exams soon, _____ I’m not going out very much at the moment.



My sister is six years older than me, _____ she works in a bank. She is trying to save some money _____ she is going to get married this year. Her fiancé’s name is Ferdinand, _____ we all call him Freddy. People say I look like my sister _____ we both have brown eyes _____ dark hair. _____, we are very different in character. She is very quiet, _____ I’m a lot more sociable. My sister and I are the very image of our mother, _____ we resemble our father in character.

51 Complete the text with a linking word from the box. Write a similar short paragraph about yourself and someone in your family using the ex. 50 and 51.

and although/though but too so both because however for example

My Brothers



I have twin brothers, Tim and Tom. They are very similar and a lot of people confuse them, _____ they don’t know which twin is which. They _____ have blond hair _____ blue eyes, _____ they always wear jeans and T-shirts. They like wearing the same things _____. _____, they both like pop music _____ they are

crazy about football and computers. They go to a football match every Saturday. They want to play computer games every day and night, _____ our mother says they can’t _____ they have a lot of homework.

_____ they're twins, they aren't the same in every way. _____ Tim works hard at school, _____ Tom doesn't. He is a bit lazy.

Our mother is often away from home _____ she travels a lot in her job, so we all help in the house. Most of the time it's fine, _____ sometimes we fight a bit!

_____ they are noisy and annoying, I think it's fun to have twin brothers.

52 Complete the text with the words below.

<i>sister</i>	<i>good</i>	<i>day</i>	<i>common</i>
<i>regularly</i>	<i>films</i>	<i>together</i>	<i>different</i>
<i>only</i>	<i>understand</i>	<i>well</i>	<i>enemies</i>

I have a _____ called Irene. We are very _____ friends, though we don't live _____. We see each other _____, about once a week. We also call each other almost every _____. We have a lot in _____, so we get on very _____. We don't argue, _____ sometimes about _____ as we have completely _____ tastes. Generally I don't _____ how blood relatives can be _____!

53 Correct the mistakes if there are any.

1. I look my older brother. We are both tall and dark. 2. This looks like a nice hotel. 3. You look happy. Any good news? 4. He's 35, but he looks like older. 5. These shoes look terrible. Take them off! 6. What's the matter? You look like worried. 7. This photo doesn't look you at all. 8. You look like very young in this photo. 9. Your brother looks as a rugby player. He is very big. 10. You look like tired. Why don't you go to bed? 11. She not looks like great!

54 Give the English equivalents. Make sentences with some of the phrases.

Бути схожим на батька, плутати близнюків, несхожі сестри, схожі як дві краплі води, шукати схожі риси, люблячі батьки, брати-близнюки, бути копією матері.

55 Translate into English.

1. У тебе є брати чи сестри? Вони схожі один на одного? А на кого схожа ти? 2. Лілі пішла в бабусю: якщо бути точною, вона копія своєї бабусі. 3. Я не схожа на своїх батьків; в нас зовсім немає спільних рис. 4. Я маю двох братів. Вони гарні та дуже схожі один на одного. А я схожа на матір. 5. Твоя сестра схожа на когось у вашій сім'ї? На кого вона схожа? 6. Я завжди плутаю твого брата з дядьком, хоча вони зовсім різні. 7. Ти працьовитий. Кого ти наслідуєш? 8. Майк і Алекс двоюрідні брати, але вони схожі, як дві краплі води. 9. Анна копія матері. 10. Тебе дуже легко

сплутати з твоєю тіткою. Я часто сприймаю тебе за неї. **11.** Я думаю, що діти Гофманів зведені брати: вони абсолютно не схожі. **12.** У вас дуже гарна онучка. Вона повністю пішла у матір. **13.** Ти можеш побачити схожість між ними? **14.** Хоча вони й близнюки, вони геть різні. Том схожий на матір, а Нік як дві краплі води схожий на Джона. **15.** Ви так схожі один на одного! Як вас не плутають інші? **16.** Тобі ще не набридло шукати спільні та відмінні риси між собою і Ларі? **17.** У Мері є двійнята і вони дуже схожі між собою; їхні друзі завжди їх плутають. **18.** Кажуть, що я схожа на батька, але характер у мене від мами. **19.** Батькові надзвичайно лестить, якщо його дитина на нього схожа. **20.** В мене так багато дальніх родичів, що я завжди плутаю їхні імена. **21.** Я успадкував цю рису від моїх батьків, хоча ми не схожі в зовнішності.



Vocabulary

Age	Вік
a new-born baby	новонароджена дитина
a baby	дитина (до 1 року)
a toddler	дитина, яка починає ходити
a child	дитина
an infant	немовля, дитина
a kid	дитина, малюк
a teenager	підліток
a youth	юнак
a minor	неповнолітній, підліток
a youngster	хлопець, юнак, парубок
an adult; a grown-up	дорослий
a long-living stock	довгожитель
to be at an awkward age	бути в перехідному віці
to be at a legal age	бути повнолітнім
to be at a call-up age	бути в призовному віці
an old age	похилий вік
a pensionable age	пенсійний вік
a ripe age; an age of responsibility	зрілий вік
aged	похилий (старий)
ageing	старіючий
ageless	без віку
middle-aged	середнього віку
to be under age / to come of age	бути неповнолітнім / стати повнолітнім
to be over the hill	бути пристаркуватим

to be as old as the hills	бути старим як світ
to have one foot in the grave	стояти однією ногою в могилі
to push up (the) daisies	“зіграти в ящик”, “склеїти ласти”
to be under 14	ще немає 14
to be about 14	біля 14
to be nearly 14	майже 14
to be 14 (years old)	14 (років)
to be at the age of 14	бути у віці 14 років
to be over 14	більше 14
to be in sb’s teens	ще немає 20 (від13 до19)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • to be in sb’s early teens • to be in sb’s mid teens • to be in sb’s late teens 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 13-14 років • 15-16-17 років • 17-18-19 років
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • to be in sb’s early thirties • to be in sb’s mid thirties • to be in sb’s late thirties 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 30-31-32 • 33-34-35 • біля 40
to be younger than sb	бути молодшим за когось
to be ... years younger than sb; to be ... years sb’s junior	бути на ... років молодшим за когось
to be older than sb	бути старшим за когось
to be ... years older than sb; to be ... years sb’s senior	бути на ... років старшим за когось
to look young for one’s age	виглядати молодо на свій вік
to look old for one’s age	виглядати старим на свій вік
to outlive sb by ... years	пережити когось на ... років
to be of the same age; to be the same age as sb	бути однакового віку
to be born	народитися
a birthday	день народження
a name day	день ангела, іменини

56

📖 Read and translate the text. Answer the questions below.

An Only Child

What is an “**only child**”? Are children who have neither brothers nor sisters different from those who have them? Are they the same as **children from large families**?

There are many articles about only children. Some articles speak of the “problem” of only children. But what are the facts?



A lot of only children are people who are **very successful** in life. For example, many **famous scientists** were only children. But many **first-born children** are also successful, as a rule.

What do scientists say?

Fifty years ago they said: "Being an only child is an **illness**." Of course, it is difficult to agree with this. But only children are very different from children in large families. They are often **in the centre of attention**.

One modern scientist believes that it is more difficult for them **to feel comfortable at school**. But the phrase "an only child" does not mean a "**lonely child**". Another scientist said: "There is one great **advantage** for an only child. This child gets all the love of his/her parents. A **loved child** usually becomes a **loving parent**".

But there are a lot of people who think differently.

- And what do you think? How many children do you have/do you want to have? Would you like to have twins? What size is a perfect family?
- Do you get on well with your brother/sister? Why(not)? Do you think you are friends? What do you and your brothers/sisters have in common? Do you ever argue? What about? How often do you see each other? How do you keep in touch the rest of the time?
- How many only children are there in the class? Does anyone have a twin? What is your position in the family?
- Are you the eldest child, a middle child, the youngest child, or an only child?
- In a family with two children, do you think it's better to be the elder or the younger brother or sister? Why?

57

Transcribe the given words and explain their meaning.

Only, famous, scientist, advantage, attention, lonely, successful, illness.

58

Make up the dialogue/sentences using the following words and word combinations.



A famous scientist; an only child; to be different from; a large family; to get all the love of sb; a loved child; a loving parent; to agree with sth/sb; a first-born child; to be very successful in life; an illness; in the centre of attention; a lonely child; a great advantage for sb.

59

Read these sentences and translate them into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words and phrases in bold type. Use them in the examples of your own.

1. My parents are **of the same age**, I mean my mother **is the same age** as my father.

2. My uncle is **on the wrong side of** forty. He is a **mature** person.
3. His aunt **is in her prime**. She **has turned** thirty but she doesn't **look her age**. She **is taken for** twenty-five.
4. Our little niece **is coming up to** school age. Next year she is going to school.
5. Their stepfather **is long past** forty. He **is approaching** fifty. He **looks old for his age**, because **nervous people age fast!**
6. Mary's grandmother is 70, but she **looks not a day older than** sixty. She is not **senile**. She **is still going strong!**
7. Peter **is coming up to** seventy, but he **bears age well**. He **is growing old** gracefully.
8. Don't be so **childish!** You are not a **youngster** any more! Stop playing your schoolboy tricks!
9. I **am twice your age**, young man! I'm **heading for retirement**. Don't be so rude to me!
10. Jack's grandfather is **as old as the hills**. He is **four times Jack's age**. He is **in his second childhood**. I am afraid, he can **pass away** (or **kick the bucket**) soon.
11. It's a pity that Tina and Mark are not with us any more. They **are pushing up the daisies**, poor things.



Must

- ❖ The modal verb **must** is used to express **necessity**, **obligation** or **duty**.
*Children **must** go to school.*
- ❖ It also expresses **order** or **prohibition** (mainly connected with social rules or principles).
*You **mustn't** walk here.*
- ❖ It may express **urgent advice**.
*You **must** see the doctor.*
- ❖ The form: *must* + infinitive without *to*.
- ❖ The forms of *must* are the same for all persons.
- ❖ This modal verb is usually translated as “*потрібно, слід, необхідно*”.

60

Paraphrase these sentences using must.



1. It's necessary for Amy to clean her teeth.
2. It's necessary for Sheila to book an international call.
3. It's necessary for him to go back to the town early this night.
4. Why are you still here? It's necessary for you to go home immediately!
5. I know your exams are next week. It's necessary for you to study hard at the moment.
6. It's necessary for you to work hard.
7. It's necessary for Ann to brush up her Norwegian. She is going to study in Norway.
8. Is it necessary for me to leave the room right now?
9. Is it necessary for you to inform the owner of the shop of very bad service?
10. It is necessary for you to have a passport to visit most foreign countries.

61

☛ Answer the following questions using **must**.

1. What time do you get up? What time must you get up on working days?
2. What time do you get up on Sundays?
3. What time must you come to work/university?
4. What must you do in the morning?
5. What must you do in the evening?
6. What must you do in the afternoon?
7. What time must little children go to bed?
8. What must you do to know English well?

62

a) There is a collection of bizarre laws from different parts of the United States. Read and translate them.

1. If you want to go swimming in Destin, Florida, you must get dressed in your hotel room, not in your car 😊
2. You mustn't take a pig to the beach in Miami Beach, Florida 😊
3. You must not look into car windows in the street in Milford, Massachusetts 😊
4. You mustn't ride a bicycle in a swimming pool in the town of Bedwin Park, California 😊
5. You mustn't take a dog to school in Cathedral City, California 😊
6. In Virginia, you must wear shoes while you are driving 😊
7. A man must not wear women's clothes in Walnut, California 😊
8. In Toledo, Ohio, you mustn't throw a snake at another person 😊
9. You must not shout or sing in public at night in Topeka, Kansas 😊

b) ☛ Answer the questions.

- Which law do you think is the most interesting?
- Do you have any strange laws in your town or country? What are they?

Have to

- ❖ The modal verb **have to** is used to express **strong necessity due to some circumstances**.

I have to get up the next morning at 7.

- ❖ The form: *have* + infinitive *to*.

I <i>have to</i>	We <i>have to</i>
You <i>have to</i>	You <i>have to</i>
He/She/It <i>has to</i>	They <i>have to</i>

- ❖ The colloquial form **have got to** is often used but only in the present tense.
I've got to go.
- ❖ This modal verb is usually translated as “*потрібно, слід, необхідно*”.

63

Translate into English using **must** and **have to**.

1. Вам не слід відкривати вікно. В кімнаті дуже холодно.
2. Діти мають спати 9 годин на день.
3. Ти обов'язково маєш допомагати матусі по дому.
4. Дітям не дозволяється самим гратися на вулиці.
5. Тобі необхідно відві-



дати лікаря. У тебе висока температура. 6. Я маю йти, вибач. Моя дружина чекає на мене. 7. Вибачте, тут не можна палити. 8. Ви обов'язково маєте подивитися цей фільм. Він чудовий. 9. Вибачте, але я змушений вас покинути на декілька хвилин. 10. Ти маєш приходити на роботу о 8 годині кожен день – такі правила.

64

Look at these notices. Match them with the sentences below.

SILENCE <i>Exam in progress</i>	Tonight's film: <i>Pirates of the Caribbean</i> Entrance free	<i>Course of English</i> to be paid in advance
Switch off your mobile phones	No food here please	<i>Extra pronunciation class</i> 5pm

1. You **have to** pay before you start. 2. You **don't have to** come if you don't want to. 3. You **mustn't** eat here. 4. You **must** turn off your mobiles before you come in. 5. You **mustn't** talk near here. 6. You **don't have to** pay to see this.



65

Listen and write the six sentences. Repeat and copy the rhythm. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. Explain the usage of modals.

a) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

b) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

66

Make true sentences about the rules in the/your university. Use We have to, We don't have to, or We mustn't. Add details if necessary.

1. _____ come to lessons on time.
2. _____ turn off our mobile phones.
3. _____ do a test every week.
4. _____ come to class on Saturday.
5. _____ bring a dictionary to class.
6. _____ do an exam at the end of the year.
7. _____ smoke in the building.
8. _____ do homework after each lesson.
9. _____ eat or drink in the classroom.
10. _____ wear a uniform every day.

67

Complete the sentences with the correct form of must (mustn't) or have to (don't have to).

1. Chefs _____ have clean hands to work with food.
2. Chefs _____ do the washing up.
3. A politician _____ be very old.
4. A politician _____ talk to lots of people.
5. Secretaries _____ know how to use computers.
6. Secretaries _____ be very tall.
7. – _____ a pilot _____ be strong? – No, but they _____ be intelligent.
8. – _____ a nurse _____ wear a uniform? – Yes, they usually _____ wear a blue or white dress.

☛ Read the passage, then answer the questions below.



Living Happily at Home

When children get past ten years old both they and their parents sometimes find it difficult **to live together** happily at home. This often happens because children want **to do different things from** their parents, and because parents still think their children are little babies.

Sometimes children are right. They need to **go out, meet their friends** and **learn how to live** with people who are not **part of the family**. They need to do this to become **successful adults**.

Sometimes parents are right. Children still **need help**, and there are many things about the world that they **don't understand yet**. Parents still love to teach their children what is **good and bad**, and how to live in the world **outside the family**.

So how can parents and children **live happily** at home? It is **a matter of give and take** on both sides. Children must not **ask for too much**. Parents must **let their children move into the outside world**.

The most important thing is **to talk and listen to each other**. Children must **explain to** their parents what they want to do and why. Parents must explain to their children what they can and can't do and why. **Shouting, crying, hiding** in your room are not the way to live happily at home. Talking and listening **openly** is the answer.

- What does the writer say young teenage children want to do that causes problems for their parents?
- Why does the writer say parents don't let their young children do what they want?
- Who does the writer say is right: the children or the parents, and why?
- What does the writer say the children shouldn't do?
- What does the writer say the parents should do?
- What does the writer say is the answer to the problem?

☛ Now talk about your living at home. Use the phrases below and the ones highlighted in the text above.

to cause problems for sb	завдавати комусь проблем
to find it difficult to do sth	вважати складним щось робити
to be a matter of sth	бути справою чогось
to get on well with sb	ладнати з кимось
to be nice / patient / kind / rude / hostile / unfriendly to sb	бути хорошим / терплячим / добрим / грубим / ворожим / недружнім з кимось
to have a lot in common with sb	мати багато спільного з кимось

Should

- ❖ The modal verb **should** is used to express what the speaker thinks is right or the best thing to do. It expresses **mild obligation** or **advice**.
*I **should** do more work. (This is my opinion.)*
*You **should** do more work. (I'm telling you what I think.)*
*Do you think we **should** stop here? (I'm asking you for your opinion.)*
- ❖ The question “**Why should ...?**” expresses **strong surprise**.
***Why should** I go with you?*
- ❖ The form: *should* + infinitive without *to*.
- ❖ The forms of *should* are the same for all persons.
- ❖ This modal verb is usually translated as “*потрібно, слід, необхідно*”.

70

👉 **Recommend your parents or somebody you know who have kids what to do and what not to do using the modal verb should.**

- Model:** 1. *Mum, you should talk to me more often.*
2. *Helen, you shouldn't leave your son alone at home. He misses you a lot.*

71

a) 👉 **Listen to the Castle family and underline the correct variant.**

1. Andy *is/isn't* 32 years old. 2. Andy *has/doesn't have* a car. 3. His mother *wants/doesn't want* Andy to live at home. 4. Emily *lives/doesn't live* with Andy. 5. Andy *is/isn't* married. 6. His father *loves/doesn't love* Andy. 7. Andy *likes/doesn't like* his house.

b) 👉 👉 **Listen again and answer the questions.**

1. What is the problem? 2. Why does Andy live at home? 3. Who is Emily? 4. What is your opinion? 5. Do you know a person in Andy's situation? 6. How old are people when they usually leave the family home?

c) 👉 **Recommend something to the Castle family.**

72

a) **Read the article. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).**

1. Stephen is a student.
2. Many young people aged 25 live with their parents.
3. They don't like living with their parents.
4. In Italy 18% of 30-year-old men live with their parents.
5. Giuseppe Andreoli is divorced.

Is a Man Still a Child When He's 30?

Children usually live with their parents – but until what age? 20? 25?

Stephen Richardson, a social psychologist, studies the lifestyles of young people in Britain and the USA. He says that today many young people live at home when they are 25 or more. They are happy to live with their parents, go

out at night, and spend their money on mobile phones and designer clothes. It's not only university students, but also young people who have jobs and earn money.

In many other European countries children leave home later. In Italy, for example, 30% of men and 18% of women between 30 and 34 live with their parents.

This week in Naples a judge decided that Giuseppe Andreoli, aged 70, must pay €750 a month to his ex-wife for their son Marco. Marco lives with his mother – but he's not a child, he's a 30-year-old lawyer!

b) What can you recommend to Giuseppe? To Marco? To Giuseppe's ex-wife? Are there any social duties parents and children have?

73

Translate into English using should.



1. Ми повинні купити нашим батькам подарунок. 2. Ти маєш піти до лікаря. Хіба ти так не вважаєш? 3. Не сиди близько біля екрану. Це погано для очей. 4. Думаєш, потрібно зателефонувати дядечку Джону? 5. Чому я маю зустрічати тітку Джейн? 6. Чому я маю купувати цей автомобіль? Він мені не подобається. 7. Слід додати трохи солі до цього супу. 8. Думаєш, мені слід написати листа додому? 9. Не слід говорити неправду. 10. Не думаю, що їм потрібно одружуватися в п'ятнадцять років.



74

Read the problems. Complete the advice with should/shouldn't and a verb from the box. Match the problem to the advice.

- A** I love going out at night and then watching TV when I get home. The trouble is that I'm always tired at work the next day. What should I do?
- B** I have a bad pain in my neck. When I move my head, it gets much worse. What is your advice?
- C** There is a really nice shirt on sale in my local shop. It's expensive, but I can't just afford it. Should I buy it?
- D** My colleague earns more money than I do, but does half the amount of work. It's really making me angry. What should I do?
- E** My children are six and nine years old. They love to watch horror films, but when they do, they can't sleep at night. Any advice?
- F** I hate waiting in lines. After about two minutes I get really angry and want to hit someone. Please, help.
- G** I'm 23 and lonely. I work from home and I never get a chance to meet anybody. What should I do?

be

go (x2)

tell

watch

buy

join

1. You _____ your boss. He might offer you more money. _____
2. You _____ so impatient. Try to read more. _____
3. You _____ to bed so late! _____
4. You _____ to the doctor's immediately. _____
5. You _____ it before someone else does. _____
6. You _____ a dating agency. _____
7. You _____ horror movies at that age! _____

75 Match the sentences to the advice. Complete the a-e sentences with should/shouldn't.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. My hair is too long! I see nothing around! | a) You _____ drink some coffee. |
| 2. My sweater is very old, just holes! | b) You _____ have a haircut. |
| 3. I want to sleep a lot, but I have a lot of work! | c) You _____ buy a new one. |
| 4. It's only the second cigarette today, though I usually have seven. | d) She _____ drive when she is tired. |
| 5. Anna is exhausted but has to travel home. | e) You _____ smoke, it's bad for you. |

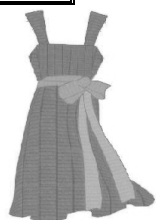
76 Listen, write and repeat these sentences. Think of problems to match these situations where needed.

- a) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____
- b) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

77 Make new sentences using the information in brackets.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I should listen to the other person. (?) | 5. You shouldn't talk loudly. (they) |
| 2. I should wear smart clothes. (she; not) | 6. I should ask the teacher. (you; not) |
| 3. You should wear formal clothes. (not) | 7. They should do something. (he;?) |
| 4. We shouldn't talk in English. (you;+) | 8. He should buy flowers. (we; not) |

78 Translate into English using can, may, should and have to.



1. Вам слід купити цю рожеву сукню. Вона така гарна.
2. Ми можемо закінчити роботу сьогодні.
3. Я не можу розмовляти. Я зайнятий.
4. Моя сестра не вмє грати на піаніно. Але вона вмє плавати.
5. Можна він відкриє книжку? Вам слід дозволити йому це зробити.
6. Можна вони пограють у футбол у вівторок?
7. Вона не може відповісти на друге питання. Вважаю, тобі слід допомогти їй.
8. Можливо, буде холодно. Слід взяти пальто.
9. – Чому я маю їсти цю рибу? – Рибу слід їсти, бо вона корисна для здоров'я.
10. Він не може це зробити сьогодні. Вона це може зробити.
11. Чому я маю читати цю книжку? Вона не цікава. І взагалі, я маю вже йти.
12. Ти б провідала її. Вона зараз в лікарні. Краще купи яблук та молока для неї.
13. Чому ми

маємо тут сидіти? Можна ми підемо додому? **14.** Ви можете перекласти цю статтю французькою? Ви вмієте розмовляти цією мовою? **15.** Ця дівчина вміє гарно танцювати та грати на різних музичних інструментах.

16. Можете мені допомогти? Я не можу відкрити двері, а мені край потрібно зайти до офісу. **17.** Чому я маю вчити всі ці правила? Можна я піду додому спати? **18.** Не варто їсти багато солодкого. Слід їсти овочі та фрукти. **19.** Чому я маю туди їхати? Я не можу, я на роботі. **20.** Вибачте, я запізнився. Можна зайти? Можна я напишу тест? **21.** Можна я закрию вікно? Я вмію закривати вікна. **22.** Чи можу я вам зателефонувати о 2 годині? Зараз я маю йти на зустріч.



79

Complete the sentences.

1. My brother is one month old. He is a(n) ... **2.** She is still in her teens. She is a(n) ... **3.** My great-grandfather is 109 years old! People say he is a(n) ... **4.** My little son is learning to walk. He is a(n) ... **5.** The day you were born on is your ... **6.** One of the two children born at the same time is called a(n) ... **7.** A person who is fully grown is a(n) ... **8.** A child who doesn't have any brothers or sisters is a(n) ...

80

Answer the questions about you and your family.

1. How old are you? When is your birthday? When is your name-day?
2. How old are your parents? Describe their age.
3. Do you have children? How old are your children?
4. Do you have a husband/a wife? What is his/her name? How old is he/she?
5. Do you have any brothers or sisters? Who is younger? Are there twins in your family? Do people confuse them?
6. Are there long-living stocks in your family? How old are your grandparents?
7. Are there any babies in your family? How old are they?
8. Do you have a pet? What is it? What colour is it? How old is it?

81

Supply prepositions wherever needed in the sentences.

1. His birthday is _____ May, but his name day is _____ January. **2.** John lives _____ home _____ his parents. **3.** There is a nice green carpet _____ the middle _____ the room. **4.** We come _____ London. London is the capital _____ Great Britain. **5.** This boy takes _____ his grandfather. He is keen _____ playing football. **6.** We are here _____ holiday. Let's meet _____ Saturday. **7.** She is _____ the cinema _____ her sister. **8.** Can you help me _____ my homework? **9.** We are going _____ the party now. **10.** Look _____ this photo _____ my cousin brother. **11.** Tom is _____ the park _____ his friend Sam. **12.** I always

play _____ tennis _____ nine o'clock _____ Sunday. **13.** What are you doing _____ tonight? **14.** We both look like _____ our mother. **15.** Our hotel is fifty meters _____ the sea. **16.** Are people walking _____ the street? **17.** – How many children are there _____ your family? – There are three _____ us. **18.** My second cousin is addicted _____ smoking. **19.** What does the family do _____ weekends? **20.** I'm interested _____ language lessons. **21.** They live _____ the village. **22.** He has a strong resemblance _____ her. **23.** Anna is the very image _____ her mother. **24.** What do you think _____ only children? **25.** Who do you resemble _____? **26.** My granny is mad _____ sweets. **27.** Please, listen _____ me. **28.** Are you really happy _____ your distant relatives? **29.** My wife and I live _____ a big house _____ Belfast.



82

Write ***both, neither, either, also*** or ***too*** in the sentences.



1. – Are you from the USA? – Yes, I'm from California. – Oh, really? Me _____. **2.** Paula and her sister are _____ teachers. **3.** – I don't like pop music. – Me _____. **4.** – We are here on holiday. How about you? – Yes, me _____. **5.** I speak Spanish, and I _____ speak Italian. **6.** We are _____ 19 years old. **7.** – I'm not tired. – I'm not tired _____. **8.** Nick and I _____ work here. **9.** – I don't take milk in my coffee. – No, me _____. **10.** – I love Chinese food. – I _____ adore it. **11.** – Stefan loves basketball. – I love it _____. **12.** – I don't understand this film. – Me _____. **13.** They are _____ from London. **14.** They are very friendly _____. **15.** We _____ hate meat, and we _____ hate fish _____. **16.** Mike doesn't drink orange juice _____. **17.** Ann and Helen _____ come from London. **18.** – I think this car is fantastic. – Me _____.

83

Translate into English.



1. Моя племінниця ще немовля, а племінник підліток. **2.** Скільки років цій дівчині? Вона ще неповнолітня. **3.** Мій молодший брат дитина, він тільки починає ходити, а старша сестра вже повнолітня. **4.** Моя двоюрідна сестра перехідного віку, а двоюрідний брат призовного віку. **5.** Ми з другом одного віку. Він єдина дитина в родині. **6.** Скільки років моїй мамі? Вона середнього віку. Вона на п'ять років молодша від тата. Мама виглядає молодше свого віку, а тато виглядає на свій вік. **7.** Скільки тобі років? Тобі вже є 20? **8.** Між іншим, коли твій день народження? А коли день народження твого брата? **9.** Його батьки не дозволяють йому водити автомобіль, бо він

ще неповнолітній. **10.** Моя молодша сестра народилася 8 липня 1997 року. **11.** Матері Джона вже далеко за 40, але вона збирається одружитися вдруге. **12.** Незважаючи на те, що її діти вже дорослі, вона все ще піклується про них. **13.** Багато людей вже в зрілому віці вважають, що життя тільки-но починається у 40 років. **14.** Дочка моєї тітки народила дитину. Це мій племінник. Він ще немовля. **15.** Мій дідусь довгожитель. Він старий, як світ. **16.** Одна з твоїх далеких родичок ще зовсім дівчинка, а її малюк вже починає ходити. **17.** Я завжди раджуся зі своїми батьками. Вони старші за мене і мають певний життєвий досвід. **18.** Їй вже далеко за 40, але вона не виглядає на свій вік. **19.** Всі діти дошкільного віку дуже хороші, але коли вони стають підлітками, вони часто змінюються. **20.** Ти знаєш, що містер Пауер дуже хворий? Він однією ногою в могилі. **21.** Твій братик ще немовля. Йому приблизно 7 місяців, чи не так? **22.** Хоча вона вдвічі старша за свого чоловіка, вони гарна пара. **23.** Джону вже 18 і він вже більше не неповнолітній. **24.** Моєму племінникові 14 місяців і він починає ходити. **25.** Будь ласка, не говори так із ним. Він вдвічі старший за тебе. Ти маєш його поважати. **26.** Він завжди готує обід сам, бо живе один. У нього немає ні дружини, ні дітей. **27.** Коли до нас приїзять далекі родичі, ми надзвичайно раді й готуємо дуже смачний обід. **28.** Вона виходить заміж через місяць. **29.** Моя дружина дуже захоплюється читанням детективів і саме зараз вона читає один цікавий детектив. **30.** Часто підлітки не погоджуються з думкою дорослих. **31.** Ми з Пітером одного віку, хоча він виглядає старше. **32.** Ти знаєш, коли у Марти день ангела? **33.** Мені подобається святкувати свій день народження.



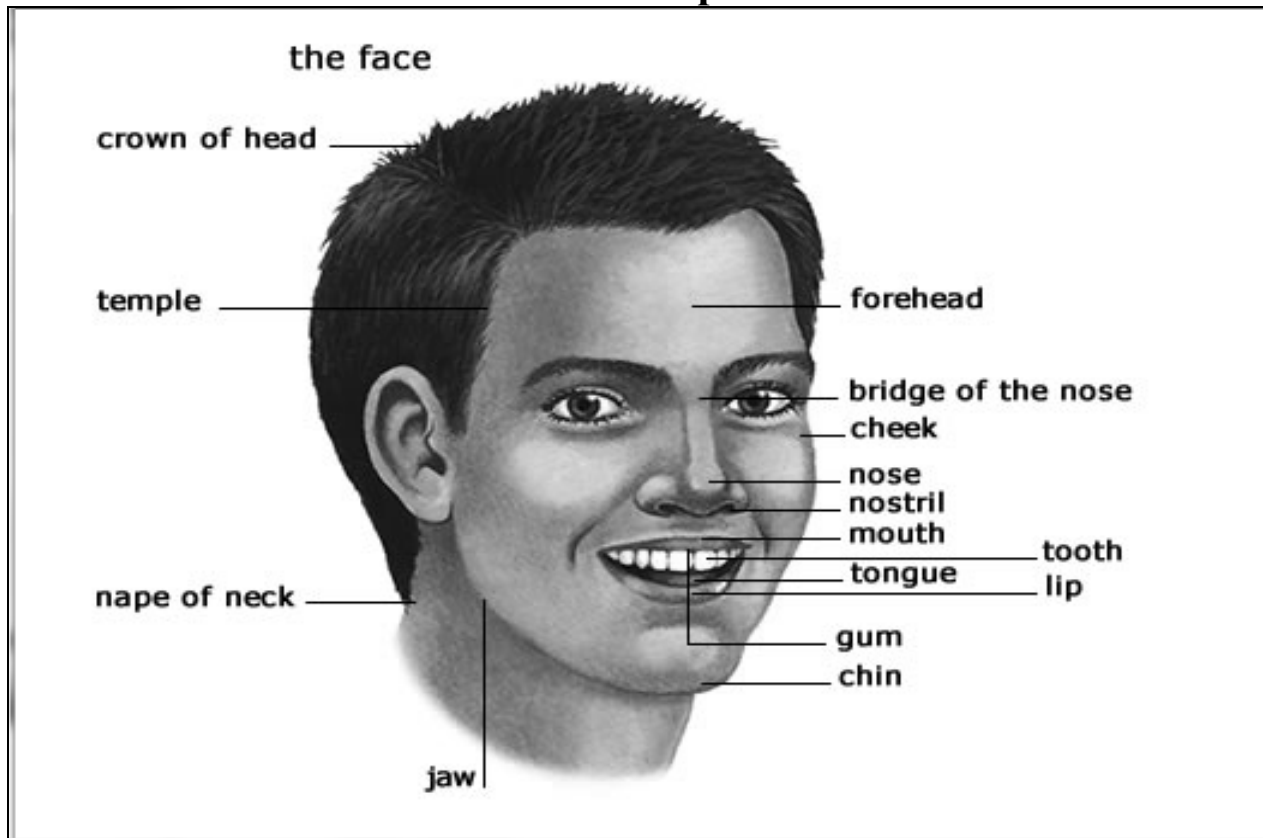
84 🎧 Listen and write a letter to your parents where you describe the family of your friend Alex you are staying at these days. Give details about:

<i>Name</i>	<i>Relation to Alex</i>	<i>Age</i>	<i>Job</i>	<i>Other details</i>
Alex				
Elena				
Enrique				
Beatriz				
Lucas				
Lourdes				
Roberto				
Isabella				
Bella				
Mateo				

SECTION II: APPEARANCE

GRAMMAR:

- The Order of Adjectives
- The Degrees of Comparison
- To Be and to Have in the Past Simple Tense



Vocabulary

an appearance	зовнішність
• appealing	• приваблива, чарівна
• attractive	• приваблива
• beautiful	• красива
• elegant	• елегантна
• enchanting	• зачаровуюча
• lovely	• мила
• irresistible	• неперевершена
• gorgeous	• розкішна
• well-groomed	• доглянута
• common	• проста, звичайна
• plain	• проста, некрасива
• disguising	• облудна, оманлива
• ugly	• потворна
• handsome	• вродливий (про чоловіка)
• pretty	• гарненька (про жінку)

a head	ГОЛОВА
a crown of head	маківка, тім'я
a face	ОБЛИЧЧЯ
• small	• маленьке
• broad	• широке
• fleshy	• м'ясисте
• round	• кругле
• square	• квадратне
• angular	• вуглувате
• oval	• овальне
• long	• витягнуте
• thin	• худе
• gaunt	• виснажене
• puffy	• набрякле
• wrinkled	• у зморшках
• pimpled	• прищаве
• pork-marked	• рябе
• spotty	• з цятками
• freckled	• у ластовинні
• sunburned; tanned	• засмагле
• swarthy	• смагляве
• clean shaven	• чисто виголене
• charming	• чарівне
a feature / features	РИСА / РИСИ
• clean-cut	• чітко окреслені
• delicate	• витончені
• regular	• правильні
• irregular	• неправильні
• forceful	• сильні
• stern	• суворі
• large	• крупні
• small	• дрібні
a forehead	ЧОЛО, ЛОБ
• broad	• широке
• narrow	• вузьке
• high	• високе
• low	• низьке
• large	• велике

a temple / temples	скроня / скроні
• high	• високі
an eye / eyes	око / очі
• hazel	• світло-карі
• brown	• темно-карі
• dark	• темні
• bright blue	• яскраво-блакитні
• violet	• темно-блакитні (як волошки)
• big; large	• великі
• small	• малі
• bulging	• банькати
• narrow	• вузькі
• round	• круглі
• almond	• мигдалевидні
• slanting	• розкосі
• close-set	• близько розташовані
• wide-set	• широко поставлені
• deep-set	• глибоко посаджені
• wide-open	• широко відкриті
• sunken	• впалі
• kind	• добрі
• clear	• ясні
• clever	• розумні
• crystal	• кришталеві
• piercing	• пронизливі
• striking	• вражаючі
• anxious	• занепокоєні
• bloodshot	• налиті кров'ю
cross-eyed	косоокий
dark circles	темні кола
under-eye-bags	“мішки під очима”
a sty(e)	ячмінь (на повіці)
an eyelash / eyelashes	вія / вії
• long	• довгі
• short	• короткі
• curving	• загнуті
• straight	• прями
• thick	• густі
• false	• накладні

an eyelid / eyelids	повіка / повіки
an eyebrow / eyebrows	брова / брови
• dark	• темні
• fair; light	• світлі
• arched	• вигнуті
• penciled	• тонко окреслені
• thin	• рідкі
• thick	• густі
• downy; fluffy	• пухнасті
• bushy	• кустисті
• continuous	• що зрослися (моноброва)
a nose	ніс
• small	• маленький
• big; large	• великий
• straight	• прямий
• crooked	• кривий
• hooked	• гачком
• Grecian	• грецький
• Roman	• римський
• aquiline	• орлиний
• snub / turned-up	• кирпатий / повернутий догори
• fleshy	• м'ясистий
• wide	• широкий
• flat	• приплюснутий
a bridge of the nose	перенісся
a nostril / nostrils	ніздря / ніздрі
a cheek / cheeks	щока / щоки
• pale	• бліді
• rosy; pink	• рожеві
• ruddy	• рум'яні
• plump	• пухкі, товсті
• chubby	• круглі, повні
• dimpled	• з ямочками
• hollow	• впалі
• stubby; unshaven	• непоголені
• wrinkled	• в зморшках
a dimple / dimples	ямочка / ямочки
• dimple in the cheek	• ямочка на щоці

a cheekbone / cheekbones	вилиця / вилиці
• high	• високі
a mole; a birthmark	родимка
a beauty-spot	“мушка” для краси
a wart	бородавка
make-up	грим, макіяж
a scar	шрам, рубець
a moustache	вуса
a beard	борода
stubble	щетина, довго неголена борода
five o'clock shadow	ледь помітна одноденна щетина
sideboards; sideburns; side whiskers	бакенбарди
an ear / ears	вухо / вуха
• huge	• величезні
• big; large	• великі
• small	• малі
• cauliflower	• неправильної форми, лапаті
• pierced	• проколоті
lop-eared	клаповухий
an earlobe / earlobes	мочка вуха / мочки вух
a mouth	рот
• small	• маленький
• large	• великий
• vivid	• виразний
• wide	• широкий
• firm	• твердий
• soft	• м'який
• toothless	• беззубий
a lip / lips	губа / губи
• full	• повні
• thick; plump	• пухкі
• thin	• тонкі
• clearly lined	• чітко окреслені
• compressed	• зжаті
• Cupid's bow	• бантиком
• cherry	• губи-вишні
• rosy	• рожеві
• painted	• нафарбовані
• parched	• пересохлі

a smile	посмішка
• cordial; hearty	• сердечна
• pleasant	• приємна
• artificial	• неприродна
laughter line	зморшка від постійної посмішки
a tooth / teeth	зуб / зуби
• even	• рівні
• uneven	• нерівні
• small	• маленькі
• tiny	• дрібні
• large	• великі
• perfect	• досконалі
• sparse	• рідкі
• milk	• молочні
• molar	• кутні
gums	ясна
a tongue	язик
a chin	підборіддя
• double	• подвійне
• massive	• масивне
• pointed	• гостре
• protruding	• виступаюче
• round	• кругле
• cleft	• з ямочкою
a jaw / jaws	щелепа / щелепи
• upper	• верхня
• lower	• нижня
• heavy	• важка
• square	• квадратна
• strong	• міцна
a neck	шия
• swan	• лебедина
• long	• довга
• short	• коротка
a nape of the neck	потилиця, задня частина шиї
hair	волосся
• short	• коротке

• medium-length	• середньої довжини
• shoulder-length; shoulder-long	• довжиною по плечі
• long	• довге
• straight	• пряме
• spik(e)y	• що стирчить як у їжака
• curly	• кучеряве
• wavy	• хвилясте від природи
• frizzy; permed	• завите
• abundant	• густе, пишне
• luxuriant	• розкішне
• silky	• шовковисте
• unmanageable	• що важко піддається, коли робити зачіску
• receding	• що випадає
• dry	• сухе
• normal	• нормальне
• greasy	• жирне
a haircut	стрижка
• crew cut	• коротко підстрижене під матра- роса; як у їжака (у чоловіків)
• bobbed	• коротко підстрижене волосся під каре (у жінок)
flat top	стрижка “пласка маківка”
a fringe	чубок, чубчик, гривка
a ringlet	кучер
a lock	прядка волосся
a bald spot; a bald patch	лисина
a bare patch	плішивість
to grow bald; to go bald	лисїти
split ends	посічені кінці
dandruff	лупа
colour	колір
• golden	• золотисте
• ash-blonde	• попелясте
• fair	• світле
• grey; white	• сиве
• red; reddish; ginger	• руде
• auburn	• золотисто-каштанове
• chestnut	• каштанове

• dark	• темне
• black	• чорне
• jet-black	• чорне як смола
• dyed	• пофарбоване
a blond / a blonde	блондин / блондинка
a brunet / a brunette	брюнет / брюнетка
highlights	висвітлені прядки
a hairstyle; a hairdo	зачіска
hair setting; hair styling	укладка

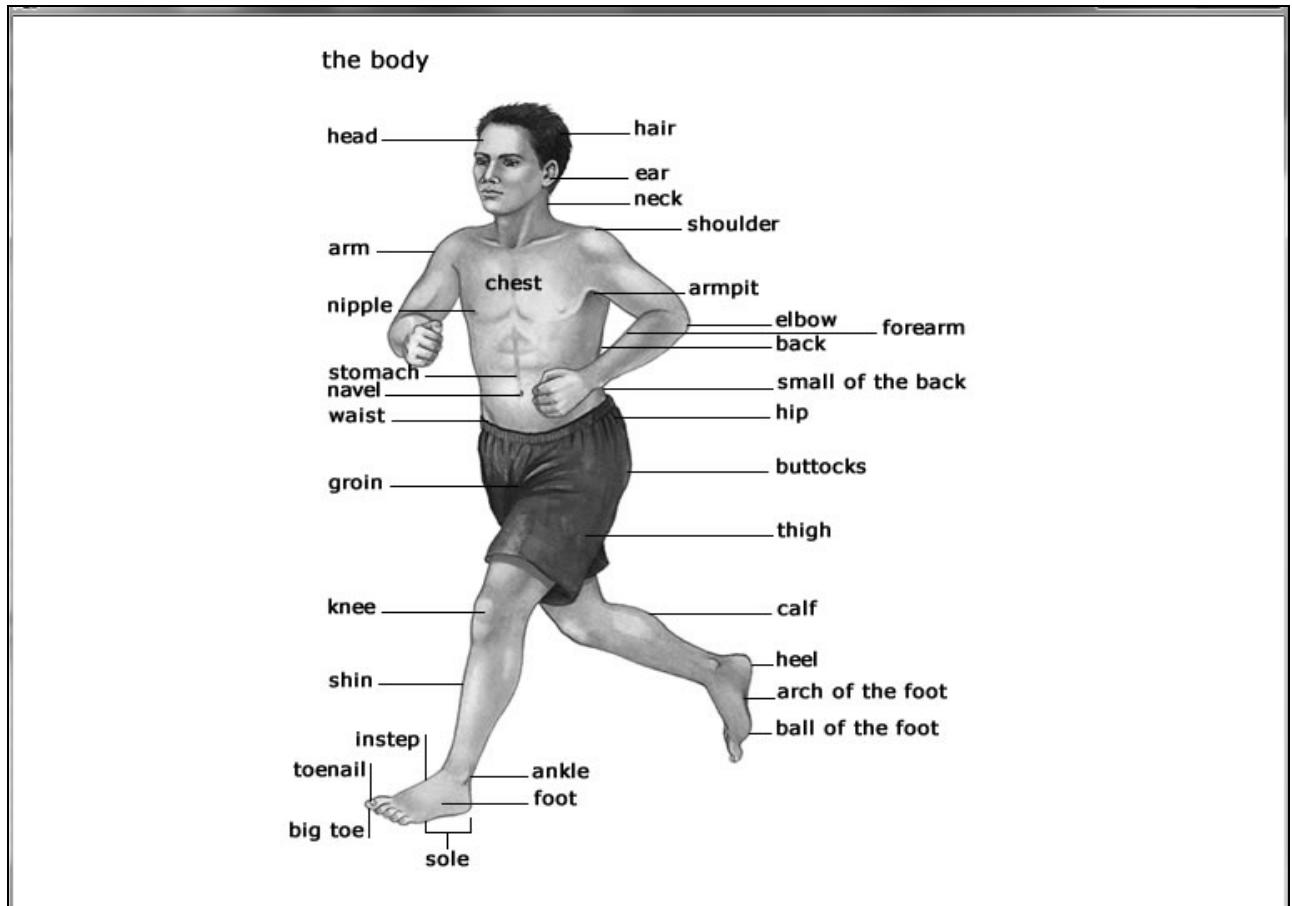


to wear (have) one's hair ...	НОСИТИ (МАТИ) ВОЛОССЯ ...
• back-combed; swept-back	• зачесаним назад
• combed forward	• зачесаним наперед
• combed on one side	• зачесаним на одну сторону
• put up	• піднятим доверху
• sleek	• пригладженим
• parted	• з проділом
• plaited	• заплетеним в косу
• layered	• з зачіскою “каскад”

• elaborately dressed	• гарно зачесаним
• dishevelled	• скуйовдженим, розпатланим
• with a parting	• з проділом
• with a mid-parting	• з проділом посередині
• with a side-parting	• з проділом збоку
• in bunches	• в пучках
• in cornrows	• в афрокосичках
• in dreadlocks	• в дредах
• in mops	• розпатланим
• in a plait; in a braid	• в косі
• in a French plait; in a French braid	• з зачіскою “колосок”
• in a French twist	• з зачіскою “мушля”
• in a bun	• у вузлі (гульці)
• in a ponytail	• у хвостіку
• in a pigtail; in a braid	• у маленькій косичці
• in a horsetail	• у хвості
permanent wave; perm	завивка “перманент”
frizzle	завивка
a toupee	невелика перука, щоб прикрити лисину (чоловіча)
a wig	перука (жіноча)
a chignon	шиньйон
to comb out; to brush	розчісувати
to cut off all hair	підстригтися “під нуль”
to wear one’s hair long	носити довге волосся
to let one’s hair down	розпустити волосся

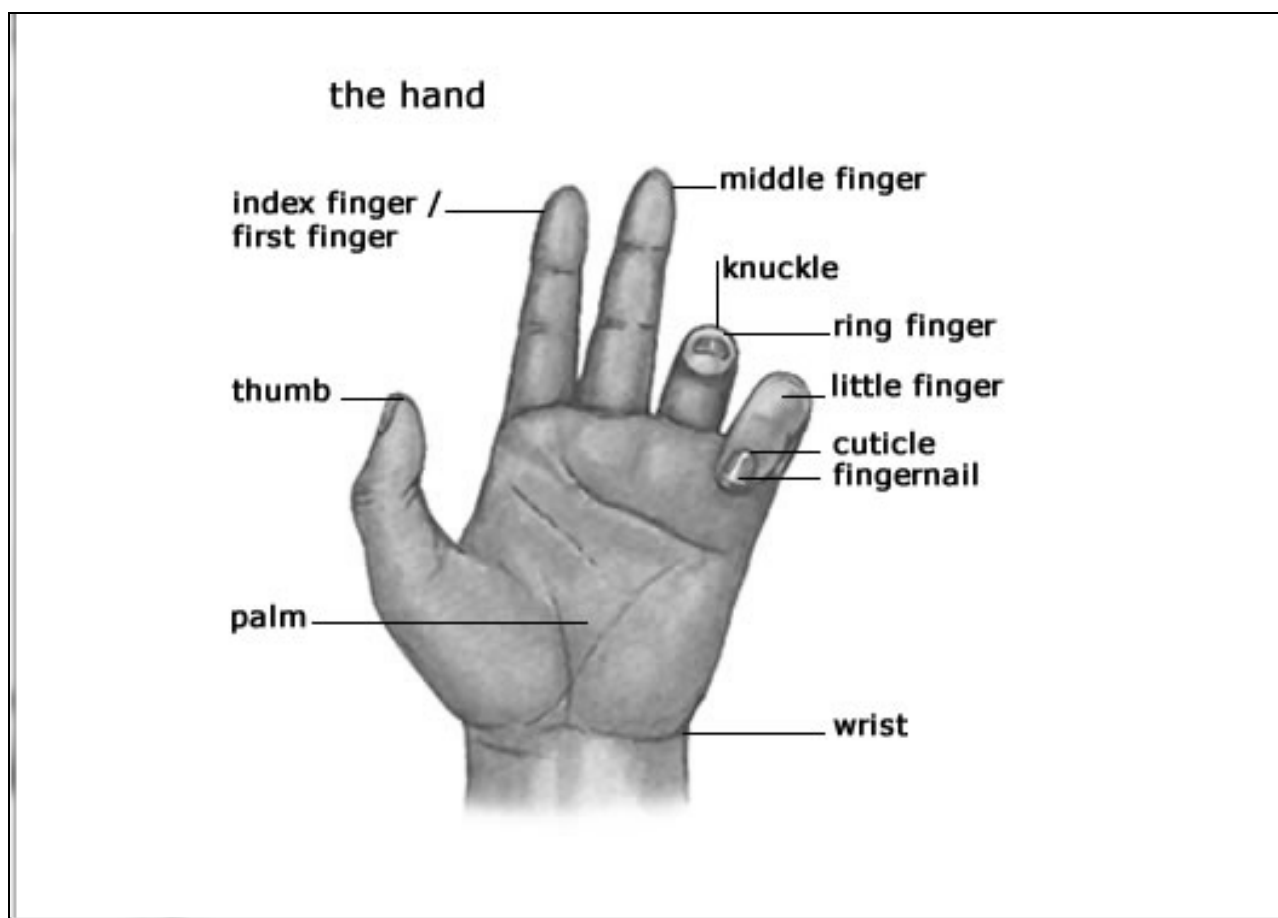
a figure	фігура
• delicate	• тендітна
• graceful	• граціозна
• neat	• струнка (лише про жінку)
• slender; slim	• струнка
• shapely	• гарної статури
• thin	• худа
• lean	• дуже худа
• fat	• товста
• plump	• пухка
• stocky	• кремезна

• stout	• міцна
• middle-sized	• середньої ваги
• overweight	• з надмірною вагою
• obese	• жирна
• upright	• пряма
• stooping	• сутула
• clumsy	• незграбна



build	будова тіла
skin	шкіра
• delicate	• ніжна
• rough	• груба
• weather-beaten	• обвітрена
• tanned	• засмагла
complexion	колір шкіри
• fair	• біло-рожевий
• clear	• світлий
• olive	• оливкового кольору
• sallow	• жовтуватий
• dark	• темний
• swarthy	• смаглявий (від природи)

height	зріст
• tall	• високий
• above average	• вище середнього
• medium; average	• середній
• below average	• нижче середнього
• short	• низький
• tiny	• мініатюрний
a shoulder / shoulders	плече / плечі
• broad	• широкі
• narrow	• вузькі
• round	• сутулі
a chest	грудна клітка
a waist	талія
a belly	живіт
a back	спина
a hunchback	горбун
hunchbacked	горбатий



an arm / arms	рука / руки
a hand / hands	кисть руки / кисті рук

• shapely	• гарної форми
• soft	• м'які
• tender	• ніжні
• delicate	• витончені
• puffy	• пухкі
• calloused	• мозолисті
a finger / fingers	палець / пальці (на руці)
• a thumb	• великий палець
• an index finger; a first finger; a forefinger	• вказівний палець
• a middle finger	• середній палець
• a ring finger	• безіменний палець
• a little finger	• мізинець
a fingernail / fingernails	ніготь / нігті (на руці)
a palm / palms	долоня / долоні
a wrist / wrists	зап'ясток / зап'ястки
a right-handed person	правша
a left-hander; a left-handed person; a lefty	лівша, шульга

a leg / legs	нога / ноги
• long	• довгі
• short	• короткі
• plump	• пухкі
• shapely	• гарної форми
• slender	• стрункі
• strong	• міцні
• hairy	• волосаті
bow-legged	кривоногий
a toe / toes	палець / пальці (на нозі)
a toenail / toenails	ніготь / нігті (на нозі)
a foot / feet	ступня / ступні
a sole / soles	підшва / підшви
a heel / heels	п'ята / п'яти
an ankle / ankles	щиколотка / щиколотки

TO BE in the Past Simple Tense

I	was / was not=wasn't	a good pupil at school.
He/She/It	was / was not=wasn't	there yesterday.
We/You/They	were / were not=weren't	his friends.

TO HAVE in the Past Simple Tense

I		a dog in the childhood.
He/She/It	had / didn't have	a house in Lviv.
We/You/They		many friends from England.

1 Read and translate the text.

My Family Album



Look at these photos. These are my parents, I hope you recognize them. They are **neither young nor old**. They are **in their prime** and **look great for their age**.

My father **is above average height**, one hundred and eighty seven centimetres. Although he is **in his late forties** (to be more exact he is 49), my father still has a good **stout figure**. He is **well-built, broad-shouldered**, he has a **muscular body** with **strong arms** and **shapely legs**. You already know that my father is crazy about sports and he plays tennis twice a week.

As for my father's **appearance** I **find him** quite **handsome**. He has **thick short jet-black hair** which is just **beginning to go grey**. He always has a **neat hair style** and wears his **hair back-combed (swept-back)** or sometimes **with a side parting**. My father's **swarthy face** is **oval** with **clean-cut** and **regular features**. He has a **high, broad**, a little bit **lined forehead**, **hollow cheeks** and a **protruding cleft chin**. I like his **striking**, a bit **slanting blue eyes** under **thick black eyelashes** and **thin eyebrows**. He has a **large straight nose** and a **wide mouth**. When my father smiles **dimples** appear **in his cheeks**, and you can see his **white even teeth** behind his **thin lips**. All in all, he **looks** very **kind** and **open**. He is extremely **sociable** and has many friends.

My uncle Borys **has a strong resemblance to** my father. They have a lot of **features in common**. But Borys **looks different** now, because his hair is **receding** and he wears a **beard** and a **moustache**. Unfortunately I don't have his late photos.



And this is my mother. People **find her** quite **attractive** and **charming**, but I think she is a **real beauty!** She is **of medium height**, **slim** and **slender** with a very **graceful figure**. Although she is **in her mid-forties**, she doesn't **look her age**. She is **taken for 38**. I remember in my childhood my mother's hair was **long, abundant** and **jet-black**. Now her wavy hair is **bobbed**, **died in chestnut**, always **elaborately dressed** with a **right-side parting** and a long **fringe**. This haircut **makes her look elegant** and **smart**.

Moreover, my mother always wears a perfect **make-up**. I adore my mother's **delicate features**. She has an **oval face** with **fair complexion**. Her **forehead** is very **high**, her **cheeks** are **rosy**, her **chin** is **soft** and **round**. When you talk to my mother, you just can't help looking into her **deep almond, wide-open** blue eyes with very **long, curving eyelashes** and **pencilled arched** eyebrows. My mother has a **small turned-up nose** and a **vivid mouth** with **full cherry lips** and **even pearly teeth**. My mother **looks sophisticated** and a bit **serious** in this photo. But believe me, she is **enchanting** and absolutely **irresistible** when she smiles.



And these are my grandparents. They are in their **early seventies**, but they **are still going strong**. They say that they **feel not a day older than fifty!** My granny is a **short stooping** old lady, but quite **active** and **energetic**. She has a **thin wrinkled** face with a **low narrow forehead**, **kind sunken eyes** and **pale hollow cheeks**. Her **lips** are very **thin**, her nose is **snub**. Her **hair** is **white** now and she always **wears it in a bun**. My grandfather is a bit **clumsy old man**. He is **overweight** now, because he likes my mother's pies and can't stop eating them. He has a **big round face** with **chubby cheeks**, a **fleshy aquiline nose** and a **massive double chin**. His **forehead** looks very **high** and **broad**, mainly because of his **bald patch**. You can't see his **mouth** and **lips**, as he **wears a white bushy moustache**. I love his **warm narrow eyes** with **deep laughter lines** around them. I think my grandparents are **the most cordial** people in the world!



And finally have a look at the photo of my nephew! He is a **short plump** boy who **looks** very **funny** when he plays football. He is **the baby of the family**, because he is only five. Tom has **curly dark hair**, a **round freckled face**, **big blue eyes** and **ruddy dimpled cheeks**. He has **small ears**, a **turned-up nose** and a **soft mouth** with **tiny sparse milk teeth**. My nephew is always **cheerful** and **restless**. I adore playing with him.

2 a) 🎧 Listen and touch the parts of the face you hear. Say and translate the instructions you hear.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

b) 🎧 Listen and repeat the pairs of sentences. Translate them into Ukrainian.

1. ___ - ___ 2. ___ - ___ 3. ___ - ___ 4. ___ - ___ - ___ 5. ___ - ___

c) 🎧 Listen and repeat the sentences. Translate them into Ukrainian.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____

d) Transcribe and translate the following words and phrases from the text in *ex.1*.

broad-shouldered, muscular body, appearance, bushy moustache, swarthy, handsome, back-combed, eyebrows, beard, elaborately dressed, fringe, hollow, clumsy, enchanting, complexion, forehead, irresistible, aquiline, laughter lines, average height, cheerful, bald patch, cordial, sparse teeth, curving eyelashes.

3

Find the English equivalents in the text from *ex.1*.

Лице в ластовинні та зморшках, добрі мигдалевидні очі, кустисті вуса, з проділом на бік, бути точним, сильні руки та ноги, сивіти, виступаюче підборіддя, середнього росту, хвилясте каштанове волосся, виглядати вишукано, довгі вії, кирпатий ніс, сердечні люди, невисокий, рівні рідкі зуби, вважати (знаходити) когось привабливим, охайний стиль, впізнавати когось, робити елегантним на вигляд, виглядати витончено, невгамовний, щічки з ямочками, веселий племінник, загнуті вії, виразний.

4

Read these sentences and translate them into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words and phrases in bold type. Use them in the examples of your own.

1. Mary's father-in-law is **short, stocky** and **obese**. He is **built like a barrel**.
2. That girl is a bit **tallish** for her boyfriend because he is **below average height**. He is **shortish** for her.
3. My husband **has a good figure**. He is **of medium build**. Moreover, he is **muscular** and **well-built**.
4. Jack is **of medium height**, but **skinny** and **puny-looking**. His mother says that he is **all skin and bones** and **there is nothing of him!** He is **as lean as a rake!**
5. My sister is **tiny** and **petite**. She is **slim and slender**.
6. He is **knee-high to an ant (an ant)!** I don't want to go out with him!
7. Peter is **extremely tall** and **thin**. He is **like a lamp post!**
8. Paula is **a bit overweight**, but her husband adores her figure. He says she is **plump**.



5

a) A person with fair hair is fair-haired. What are the adjectives for these people?

1. A lady with grey hair is _____.
2. A girl with a thin face is _____.
3. A man with broad shoulders is _____.
4. A girl with long legs is _____.
5. People who write with their right hands are _____.
6. A boy with green eyes is _____.
7. A lady with a round face is _____.



b) Say these in another way.

1. A brown-eyed man is 2. A grey-haired old lady is 3. A left-handed child is 4. A thin-faced person is 5. A dark-eyed woman is

6 Read and translate each line below. Which part of the face is odd? Why?

- | | | | | |
|--------------|---------|---------|-------|----------|
| 1. eyes | teeth | tongue | gums | lips |
| 2. moustache | nose | eyelash | hair | eyebrow |
| 3. jaw | chin | eyelid | teeth | beard |
| 4. mouth | cheeks | ears | eyes | eyebrows |
| 5. skin | wrinkle | tooth | lip | cheek |
| 6. gums | teeth | lobes | ears | tongue |

7 Read the words and define which word from your topical vocabulary can go with each line.

1. high, broad, narrow _____
2. rosy, hollow, stubby _____
3. double, pointed, protruding _____
4. false, long, curving _____
5. bushy, pencil-thin, arched _____
6. snub, crooked, Roman _____
7. huge, pierced, small _____
8. piercing, hazel, violet _____
9. square, upper, lower _____
10. thick, cherry, compressed _____
11. wide, soft, vivid _____
12. angular, square, oval _____



8 Look at the words. Which adjectives can you use to talk about the following? Model: an attractive face


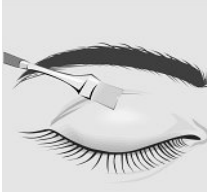
<i>teeth</i>	<i>beard</i>	<i>nose</i>	<i>eyes</i>	<i>face</i>	<i>hair</i>	<i>skin</i>	<i>cheeks</i>

beautiful, black, sparse, plump, kind, dark, long, nice, curly, round, short, square, straight, ugly, brown, milk, fair, piercing, soft, Roman, ruddy, bushy.

9 a) Give the equivalents to these definitions.

1. a head where all – or nearly all – the hair is cut _____
2. attractive, nice to look at _____
3. thin, a good way _____
4. you use them to see things _____
5. hair which is yellow or light-coloured _____
6. hair that you tie together at the back of your head _____
7. hair which is brown or black _____

b) Keep the right-hand column covered. On the left are some definitions of facial features. Write or say what they are. Then find the appropriate word on the right.

- 
1. hair that grows above the upper lip
 2. soft lower parts of the ears
 3. hair that grows on the chin and the lower jaw
 4. movable skin which opens and closes the eyes
 5. colour and state of the skin on the face
 6. openings in the nose
 7. tissue our teeth are in
 8. an organ used for tasting, speaking etc.
- 
- a) tongue
 - b) eyelids
 - c) moustache
 - d) complexion
 - e) nostrils
 - f) beard
 - g) gums
 - h) lobes

10

a) Read the rules and circle the correct one.

1. Adjectives go *before/after* a noun.
2. Adjectives *change/don't change* before a plural noun.

b) ♻️ Order the words to make sentences. Listen and check.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. easy / it / is / exercise / an. | 4. she / flat / an / expensive / has. |
| 2. live / house / in / an / I / old. | 5. nice / it / a / evening / is. |
| 3. she / American / an / is / actress. | 6. I / cat / a / black / and / have / white. |

c) Rearrange the words to make sentences.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. a / bag / black / it / small / is. | 5. T-shirt / light / it / green / big / is / a. |
| 2. towel / blue / a / dark / it's / large. | 6. brown / large / light / they're / bags. |
| 3. tiny / they / earrings / are / silver. | 7. a / red / gorgeous / dress / satin / it's. |
| 4. gold / a / pen / small / it / is. | 8. American / they're / actors / well-known. |

d) Put the adjectives in the correct order. Translate the phrases.

1. a Chinese / little / pretty / **girl** _____
2. a grey / smart / cotton / new / **suit** _____
3. a detective / new / brilliant / French / **film** _____
4. a(n) round / gold / big / elegant / **medallion** _____
5. a(n) wedding / expensive / satin / white / **dress** _____
6. a red and white / lovely / marble / Turkish / **chess set** _____
7. a German / brown / huge / beef / delicious / **sausage** _____
8. a(n) pair of / leather / black / walking / nice / old / **shoes** _____
9. a(n) motorcycling / old / black / dirty / comfortable / **jacket** _____
10. a(n) black / wooden / old / large / wonderful / Chinese / oval / **table** _____
11. straight / dark / permed / long / beautiful / **hair** _____
12. a(n) tall / handsome / young / stout / Italian / **man** _____
13. even / white / sparse / milk / **teeth** _____
14. a(n) fair-haired / happy / attractive / clever / slim / **lady** _____
15. blue / piercing / nice / almond / big / **eyes** _____



d) 🗣️ Describe the celebrity to the other students in your group but do not mention the name.

Model: He's a short, ageing, bald British rock star.

11 a) Translate and make the adjectives comparative. Listen and check.

1. healthy 2. hot 3. good 4. short 5. safe

b) Write the positive degree of the adjectives. Listen and check.

1. cheaper 3. faster 5. friendlier 7. noisier 9. more exciting
2. dirtier 4. safer 6. bigger 8. hotter 10. more modern

12 Compare the following people.



Bob, 28 years old
55 kilos, 1.50 m



Homer, 39 years old
80 kilos, 1.55 m



Alice, 9 years old
33 kilos, 1.20 m

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Bob is _____ (<i>young</i>) than Homer. | 11. Alice has _____ (<i>long</i>) hair than Bob. |
| 2. Homer is _____ (<i>old</i>) than Alice. | 12. Homer can play the guitar _____ (<i>good</i>) than Alice. |
| 3. Alice is _____ (<i>slim</i>) than Bob. | 13. Alice can run _____ (<i>fast</i>) than Homer. |
| 4. Bob is _____ (<i>short</i>) than Homer. | 14. Alice draws _____ (<i>bad</i>) than Bob. |
| 5. Homer is _____ (<i>fat</i>) than Bob. | 15. Bob is _____ (<i>intelligent</i>) than Homer. |
| 6. Alice is _____ (<i>short</i>) than Homer. | 16. Homer is a _____ (<i>interesting</i>) person than Bob. |
| 7. Homer is _____ (<i>ugly</i>) than Alice. | |
| 8. Homer is _____ (<i>slow</i>) than Bob. | |
| 9. Bob is _____ (<i>tidy</i>) than Homer. | |
| 10. Alice is _____ (<i>beautiful</i>) than Bob. | |

13 Write sentences using the opposite adjective.

Model: *A Fiat is slower than a Ferrari. – A Ferrari is faster than a Fiat.*

1. The Pacific Ocean is **bigger** than the Atlantic Ocean. 2. Germany is **wetter** than Tunisia. 3. The Suez Canal is **longer** than the Panama Canal. 4. Gold is **more expensive** than silver. 5. Olive oil is **healthier** than butter. 6. The sun is **hotter** than the moon. 7. An orange is **sweeter** than a lemon. 8. English is **easier** than Chinese. 9. The climate in northern Europe is **wetter** than in the south. 10. Madonna sings **better** than me. 11. Russia is **bigger** than the USA. 12. Cafés are **cheaper** than restaurants. 13. Buses are **slower** than cars.

14 Write the comparatives. Listen and check. Repeat after the speaker and copy the rhythm. Add similar information about yourself.

1. I am _____ (*busy*) than a year ago. 2. Life is _____ (*stressful*) than in the past. 3. We work _____ (*hard*) than before. 4. We walk and talk _____ (*fast*). 5. I'm not as _____ (*relaxed*) as I was. 6. We won't live as _____ (*long*) as our parents.

15 Correct one mistake in each sentence.

1. Which city is bigger: London or Tokyo? 2. London is smaller Tokyo. 3. The weather in Toronto is cold than in Dallas. 4. Do you think Kyiv is more dangerous than Lviv? 5. I like this city gooder. 6. She is happier now. 7. This boy is more worse than that one. 8. Paris is noisy than Dublin. 9. Bologna is hotter than London. 10. Real sauce is gooder than sauce in a bottle. 11. China is more interesting Thailand. 12. Juice is healthier than beer.

16 a) Make these adjectives superlative. Listen and check.

1. expensive 3. dry 5. beautiful 7. fast
2. crowded 4. cold 6. small 8. strong

b) Listen and make the superlative. Make up 3 sentences with these superlatives.

Model: A big cat. – The biggest cat.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

c) Complete the conversations using the superlative form of the adjective. Listen and check.

1. – That house is very *big*. – Yes, it's _____ house in the village.
2. – The Ritz is a very *expensive* hotel. – Yes, it's _____ hotel in London.
3. – Appleton is a very *pretty* village. – Yes, it's _____ village in England.
4. – New York is a very *cosmopolitan* city. – Yes, it's _____ city in the world.
5. – Brad Pitt is a very *popular* film star. – Yes, he's _____ film star in America.
6. – Miss Smith is a very *funny* teacher. – Yes, she's _____ teacher in our school.
7. – Anna is a very *intelligent* student. – Yes, she's _____ student in the class.
8. – This is a very *easy* exercise. – Yes, it's _____ exercise in the book.

17 a) Complete the sentences with the correct superlative form of the adjectives from the box.

<i>long</i>	<i>dangerous</i>	<i>high</i>	<i>cold</i>	<i>expensive</i>	<i>big</i>
-------------	------------------	-------------	-------------	------------------	------------

1. Everest is the _____ mountain in the world. 2. The Amazon is the _____ river in the world. 3. Shanghai is the _____ city in China. 4. Antarctica is the _____ place in the world. 5. The Great White is the _____ shark in the world. 6. Cape Grace is the _____ hotel in Cape Town.

b) Complete the questions with superlative adjectives. Then ask and answer the questions with a partner.

World Capitals Quiz

1. What's the _____ (**noisy**) capital city in the world?

- a) Tokyo b) Madrid c) Rome

2. What's the _____ (**big**) capital city in the world?

- a) Buenos Aires b) Mexico City c) Tokyo

3. What's the _____ (**dry**) capital city in the world?

- a) Nairobi b) Lagos c) Cairo

4. What's the _____ (**expensive**) capital city in the world?

- a) London b) Tokyo c) Washington

5. What's the _____ (**safe**) capital city in the world?

- a) Copenhagen b) Canberra c) Oslo

6. What's the _____ (**crowded**) capital city in the world?

- a) Beijing b) Bangkok c) New Delhi

c) In pairs or small groups, ask and answer these questions about your country.

1. What's / hot / place?

2. What's / windy / place?

3. What's / cold / place?

4. What's / high / mountain?

5. What's / long / river?

6. What's / big / city?

7. What's / beautiful / city?

8. What's / dangerous / city?

9. Where's / big / shopping center?

10. What's / ugly / building?

18

a) Work in pairs. Choose five of the following categories and write a name for each one on a piece of paper. Use intensifiers if necessary.

- The oldest person in the family
- The youngest person in the family
- The friendliest person in the family
- The funniest person in the family
- The nicest person in the family
- The most hardworking person in the family
- The tallest person in the family
- The worst driver in the family
- The most intelligent person in the family
- The best-looking person in the family



b) Now ask questions to find out the category each person belongs to. Ask other questions to learn more details about your partner's members of the family. **Model: (Peter)**

- Is Peter the oldest person in your family?
- No, he isn't. He's the youngest!
- How old is he?
- He's my nephew. He's only two years old.

19 Write the correct comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives.

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|-------|-------|--------------|-------|-------|
| 1. ugly | _____ | _____ | 16. regular | _____ | _____ |
| 2. good | _____ | _____ | 17. dark | _____ | _____ |
| 3. handsome | _____ | _____ | 18. little | _____ | _____ |
| 4. narrow | _____ | _____ | 19. tender | _____ | _____ |
| 5. thin | _____ | _____ | 20. wide | _____ | _____ |
| 6. appealing | _____ | _____ | 21. clumsy | _____ | _____ |
| 7. clever | _____ | _____ | 22. common | _____ | _____ |
| 8. bad | _____ | _____ | 23. vivid | _____ | _____ |
| 9. delicate | _____ | _____ | 24. crooked | _____ | _____ |
| 10. tanned | _____ | _____ | 25. sad | _____ | _____ |
| 11. old | _____ | _____ | 26. lean | _____ | _____ |
| 12. simple | _____ | _____ | 27. graceful | _____ | _____ |
| 13. shapely | _____ | _____ | 28. high | _____ | _____ |
| 14. neat | _____ | _____ | 29. sparse | _____ | _____ |
| 15. clear | _____ | _____ | 30. large | _____ | _____ |

20 a) Complete the chart. Listen and check.

<i>positive degree</i>	cold	high	hot	dangerous	good	bad
<i>comparative degree</i>						
<i>superlative degree</i>						

b) Write the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives. Listen and check. Translate them into Ukrainian.

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|----------|--------------|----------------|---------|---------------|
| 1. cheap | 3. young | 5. beautiful | 7. busy | 9. bad | 11. new |
| 2. expensive | 4. happy | 6. big | 8. intelligent | 10. far | 12. dangerous |

21 a) Read and translate the adjectives below. Make them comparative and superlative. Group them according to the table.

- | | | | | |
|--------|---------|-----------|---------|------|
| good | safe | short | popular | nice |
| bad | white | tall | common | hot |
| yellow | careful | dangerous | healthy | easy |

<i>-er/-est</i>	<i>more/the most</i>	<i>irregular</i>

b) Listen and repeat the eight sentences from the True False Show. Copy the rhythm. Write *T* (true) or *F* (false).

THE TRUE FALSE SHOW

- Mosquitoes are *more dangerous* than sharks.
- Brown eggs are *healthier* than white eggs.

3. The Earth is *hotter* than Mars.
4. Coffee is *more popular* than tea in the UK.
5. Tigers are *better* swimmers than cats.
6. An adult is *shorter* in the morning than in the evening.
7. White cars are *safer* than yellow cars.
8. The word “yes” is *more common* than the word “no”.



c) Listen to The True False Show. Check your answers. How much money does Darren win?

22 Listen and repeat the sounds and sentences. Copy the rhythm. Translate into Ukrainian.

- a) *Were* they famous? *Was* she a teacher? He *was* a soldier.
 Yes, they *were*. Yes, she *was*. They *were* waitresses.
 No, they *weren't*. No, she *wasn't*.
 They *weren't* famous. She *wasn't* a teacher.
- b) It *was* Monday yesterday. We *were* at school.
Was it hot? Yes, it *was*.
Were you tired? Yes, we *were*.

23 Listen, complete and repeat the sentences. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

- a) I _____ a teacher. b) I _____ a teacher.
 You _____ at _____ yesterday. You _____ at _____ yesterday.
 He _____ at home last _____. He _____ at home last _____.
 It _____ hot _____ week. It _____ hot _____ week.
 We _____ at _____. We _____ at _____.
 You _____ in a hurry. You _____ in a hurry.
 They _____ in _____. They _____ in _____.
- c) _____ you late? Yes, I _____. No, I _____.
 _____ she a singer? Yes, she _____. No, she _____.
 _____ they in Mexico last _____? Yes, they _____. No, they _____.

24 Complete the sentences with was or were.

1. My grandfather _____ in Warsaw more than fifty years ago.
2. When I _____ in Berlin last year, the weather _____ very cold.
3. It _____ a beautiful day in August. My family and I _____ on holiday at the seaside.
4. Where _____ you on Saturday evening?
5. How many people _____ there at the party?
6. _____ George at the university today?
7. How _____ your first day at work?
8. It _____ very nice to meet you, Mr. Brown.
9. In 2003 he _____ five years old.
10. Everything _____ different 500 years ago.
11. Peter and Nelly _____ very

happy together. **12.** Fifteen years ago we _____ husband and wife. **13.** When Bill _____ a child, he had big ears. **14.** Why _____ Peter without his bag?

25 Write affirmative, interrogative and negative sentences with was and were. Translate them into Ukrainian.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. We / home / last night (-) | 6. David / happy / last night (-) |
| 2. You / university / yesterday (?) | 7. I / work / until 8 pm / Monday (+) |
| 3. James / meeting (-) | 8. Sister / Boston / last week (?) |
| 4. We / gym / 4 pm (+) | 9. It / fantastic / film (+) |
| 5. They / class / yesterday (?) | 10. Last summer / hot (-) |

26 Complete the dialogue with was, were, wasn't or weren't. Translate it into Ukrainian.

Son: *Who's that?*

Father: It's William Shakespeare.

Son: *Why _____ he famous?*

Father: He _____ a writer.

Son: _____ *he Scottish?*

Father: No, he _____. He _____ English. He _____ born in Stratford-upon-Avon.

Son: *And _____ he married?*

Father: Yes, he _____. His wife's name _____ Anne.

Son: *And _____ they happy?*

Father: I don't know.



27 Listen, complete and repeat the sentences. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

- | | |
|--|--|
| a) There _____ a station.
There _____ a road.
There _____ an airport.
There _____ a _____ pool. | b) There _____ some _____.
There _____ ten _____.
There _____ any _____ shops.
There _____ any _____ buildings. |
| c) _____ there a _____? Yes, there _____.
_____ there a _____ center? No, there _____. | |
| d) _____ there any _____? Yes, there _____.
_____ there any _____? No, there _____. | |

28 a) Study these words and phrases and make some sentences with them.

Alicante (town)
differences

nightlife
tourist

from all over the world
famous for

b) Listen to a journalist talking to a local historian. Complete the information about Benidorm. Do you prefer Benidorm today or in the 50s? Why? Are there any places in your country like Benidorm?

Benidorm today

- ✓ There're 65,000 _____ in Benidorm.
- ✓ There're 4 mln _____ a year.
- ✓ There's an _____ 50 km from Benidorm.
- ✓ There are 128 _____.
- ✓ There are 600 _____.
- ✓ There are 264 _____.

Benidorm in the 1950s

- ✓
- ✓
- ✓
- ✓
- ✓
- ✓

29

a) Rewrite the sentences in the Past Simple. Use the time indicators from the box below.

<i>yesterday</i>	<i>last night</i>	<i>yesterday afternoon</i>
<i>the day before yesterday</i>	<i>yesterday morning</i>	<i>yesterday evening</i>

1. I'm in a hurry this morning.
2. They aren't at university today.
3. She is at the cinema tonight.
4. We aren't at home today.
5. Is he at work this afternoon?
6. Are you in London today?
7. They are in the gym this morning.
8. Are you at the airport now?
9. I'm not late today.
10. He is here now.
11. Susanna is in a café.
12. She is in bed today. She is not fine.

b) ♣ Tell a partner what is true for you.

1. Today is Monday/Tuesday/etc. Yesterday was Sunday/Monday/etc.
2. Today I'm at university/home/work. Yesterday I was ...
3. Today the weather is hot/cold/wet/lovely. Yesterday the weather was ...
4. Today my parents are at work/home/etc. Yesterday they were ...
5. Today my mood is good/bad/great/etc. Yesterday my mood was ...
6. Today I'm in Kyiv/Moscow/London/etc. Yesterday I was ...

30

Put the form of the verb to be in the Present Simple or the Past Simple. Change the word order if necessary.



1. The homework _____ very difficult yesterday.
2. The weather _____ beautiful today. It _____ terrible the day before yesterday.
3. I _____ at home at 6 o'clock in the evening last Monday.
4. Where _____ you born?
5. _____ you happy now?
6. I can play chess though I _____ five years old.
7. There _____ many people at the meeting last week.
8. _____ they at your party last night?
9. I _____ 20 years old. I _____ happy to invite you to my birthday party.
10. I _____ in London two years ago.
11. What _____ your favorite subject at the university last year? What _____ your favorite subject now?
12. What _____ your job? _____ you a teacher?
13. Now I _____ in Kyiv.
14. He _____ born in India.
15. This nice girl _____ my niece, and that boy _____ my son.

31 a) Listen and put the sentences in *the Past Simple*. Translate them into Ukrainian.

1. _____ - _____ 3. _____ - _____ 5. _____ - _____
2. _____ - _____ 4. _____ - _____ 6. _____ - _____

b) Listen and say the sentences in the past. Write the sentences down.

Model: She is a nice girl. – She was a nice girl.

1. _____ - _____ 3. _____ - _____ 5. _____ - _____ 7. _____ - _____
2. _____ - _____ 4. _____ - _____ 6. _____ - _____ 8. _____ - _____

32 Translate into English.



1. Коли мені було вісім років, я був гарним зеленооким та світловолосим хлопчиком. 2. Моїм улюбленим предметом в школі була математика. 3. Я був у той день в університеті. Мій кращий друг також був зі мною. Ми були на заняттях. 4. У суботу його не було на роботі, він був вдома. 5. Мій перший телефон був зелений. Він був дуже маленький, але красивий. 6. Ця дівчинка була вчора в красивій червоній сукні. 7. Мій кіт був білий, пес не був білий. 8. Вчора ми були у бабусі. Вона була рада нас бачити. 9. Чай був дуже солодкий. Кава також була солодка. 10. Був радий тебе бачити. Зустріч була приємною. 11. Вчора ми були в цьому музеї.

33 a) Listen and complete the dialogue. Read and translate it into Ukrainian.

Kellerman: Mr Magnus. My _____ is John Kellerman. And this is Dana Diaz. She _____ with the Crime Scene department.

Magnus: Well, nice to _____ you, but I don't know what this is all about. _____ am I here?

Diaz: Mr Magnus, do you _____ Peter Gordon?

Magnus: Yes, I _____. We work _____ the same factory.

Kellerman: Mr Magnus, I have some _____ news. Mr Gordon is ... dead.

Magnus: That's _____! He _____ at the factory _____!

Diaz: There _____ a fire at the factory _____ night, Mr Magnus.

Kellerman: Where _____ you at _____ o'clock last _____?

Magnus: Umm, I _____ at _____.

Kellerman: Really? _____ you with _____? Your _____?

Magnus: No, I _____ with my _____. I'm _____.

Diaz: That's right. Your _____, your _____, was Peter Gordon's new _____.

Magnus: Really?

Diaz: Mr Magnus, if you _____ at home, why _____ your fingerprints on the _____ emergency exit?

Magnus: Wh ... what?

Diaz: Yes, your fingerprints. And why _____ your blood on Mr Gordon's jacket?

Magnus: Listen, I _____ at the factory last _____ and I _____ with Peter.

Kellerman: Mr Magnus. You _____ at the factory. And you _____ with Mr Gordon.

Magnus: I ... I ...

Diaz: Do you have a _____ lawyer, Mr Magnus?

b) Listen to the dialogue again and decide whether the statements are true or false.

1. Mr Magnus is dead.
2. Mr Magnus works with Peter Gordon.
3. There was a fire at the factory.
4. The fire was last night.
5. Mr Magnus wasn't at the factory yesterday.
6. Mr Magnus isn't married.
7. Mr Magnus' fingerprints were at the crime scene.
8. Peter Gordon is married.
9. Mr Gordon and Mr Magnus are friends.



c) Rearrange the words to make sentences or questions. Listen to the recording to check your answers.

1. you / friends / were / Peter / with?
2. factory / at / the / he / yesterday / was
3. fingerprints / door / your / were / the / on
4. night / last / you / were / where?
5. factory / at / you / the / were?
6. her / last / night / with / wasn't / I

d) Describe the appearance of the main characters in the dialogue. What are their features?

34

a) Read and complete the text with the verb to be in the Past Simple. Make the sentences negative if needed.



Sherlock Holmes _____ a famous detective. He _____ a real person. He _____ a character in the books by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle. Sherlock Holmes _____ from London. Sherlock Holmes _____ friends with a man called Watson. Watson _____ a doctor. Sherlock Holmes' house and offices _____ at 221b Baker Street. It is there today, and many tourists in London visit it every day.

b) Answer the questions about you. Move around the class to ask your classmates these questions. Report to the teacher about the results.

1. Were you at the party last night?
2. Were you in bed at 10.00 last night?
3. Were you at home at 5 o'clock yesterday afternoon?
4. Were you at English classes last week?
5. Were you at work yesterday?
6. Were you with your friends last Sunday?
7. Were you at the cinema last weekend?

c) ♣ **In pairs, ask and answer.**

1. Where were you yesterday at 6:30 in the morning?
2. Where were you yesterday at 10:00 in the morning?
3. Where were you yesterday in the afternoon?
4. Where were you last night?
5. Where were you last Saturday?
6. Where were you at this time yesterday?
7. Where were you five minutes ago?

35

Translate into English.



1. Ти був у Парижі цим літом? Там було красиво? Хто був з тобою?
2. Де він був у понеділок? Це було 23 чи 24 січня?
3. Їй було 15 років у 1984? Хто був її найкращим другом? Як його звали?
4. Хто був на зустрічі? Де була зустріч? Чому вона була в парку?
5. Чому ви не були на уроці? Ви були вдома? Де ви були?
6. Цукерки були смачні? Що було смачним? Вони були з горішками?
7. Вони були вчора на роботі? Хто був на роботі?
8. Скільки вам було років у 2008 році? Ви були щасливі?

36

Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

<i>bald</i>	<i>straight</i>	<i>square</i>	<i>narrow</i>	<i>good-looking</i>
<i>ears</i>	<i>beard</i>	<i>blue</i>	<i>full</i>	<i>early</i>
<i>heavily</i>	<i>(to) look</i>	<i>glasses</i>	<i>beautiful</i>	<i>high</i>

1. I don't think I'm very _____, but I'm not bad-looking either. I probably _____ a bit younger than I am. That is probably because I am not very serious.
2. I'm in my _____ fifties. I'm very tall, and quite _____ built, but I have rather _____ shoulders. I'm a little overweight and stout.
3. I have _____ medium-length _____ hair, but I'm going _____, so there isn't a lot of it left. I have a grey _____ and a moustache.
4. My eyes are _____ and clever and I wear _____. I have a rather long face, with a _____ chin, a big nose and big _____.
5. I have _____ lips, thick hair and I have a _____ forehead; I like to think that it looks intelligent. I don't like low foreheads.

37

a) Complete the description.

My cousin Ann is very attractive. She is in her **m** _____-twenties – 24 or 25 I think. She is blonde, with shoulder-**l** _____ hair. It's completely **s** _____, not curly at all. Her **f** _____ is very long. She's very short-sighted but she **w** _____ contact lenses.

b) Complete the sentences.

1. Your hair is over your eyes. You should ask your hairdresser to cut your **f** _____.
2. What does he **l** _____ like? He's tall, with blond hair, and quite good-
l _____.
3. James had very little hair for years but now he is totally **b** _____.
4. No, we're not fat, but we are both keeping to a diet because we're a bit **o** _____.
5. When she was young, she had red hair, but it's completely **g** _____ now when she's in her sixties.
6. She wears her hair in a pony **t** _____.
7. She's very tall and **s** _____.
8. My brother's hair is not straight, it's long and **w** _____.

38

a) Complete the police descriptions according to the pictures.

WANTED



1. Our first suspect is male, in his _____ twenties or _____ thirties, medium _____ (about 1.7 m) and _____, because he often goes to a gym. He has _____, _____ hair, which is very _____ in colour. He has neither a _____ nor a _____. His face is clean-shaven.

2. The other suspect is female, in her mid-_____ or possibly younger, perhaps 21 or 22. She is _____ (about 1.4 m) and very thin and _____. She has _____, _____ hair that is _____ in colour.



b) Look at the four men and listen. Which one is the bank robber? Describe him.

#1



#2



#3



#4



39

Listen to someone describing two famous people and answer the questions. Listen again and check your answers. Who do you think the two people are?

1. Where is **the man** from?
2. How old is he?
3. What does he look like?
4. What does he do?
5. Where is **the woman** from?
6. How old is she?
7. What does she look like?
8. What does she do?

40

A film director is trying to decide on two actors (one male, one female) for the leading roles in his new film. Look at the pictures, then listen and find the two people. Match the descriptions to the pictures above. Then, complete the table below. Finally, cover the paragraphs and describe each person.



- Mary's short and in her early twenties. She's got an oval face, long black curly hair and a small nose. Her eyes are brown. _____
- Paul's tall and in his early thirties. He's got a long face and long black hair. His nose is quite large and he's got a small mouth. _____

- Sally's short and plump. She's in her late sixties. She's got a square face, shoulder-length wavy grey hair and a wide mouth. Her eyes are green. _____
- Mike's tall, well-built and middle-aged with a square face. His mouth is wide, and his nose is rather big. He has large dark brown eyes and short grey hair. _____

	<i>Mary</i>	<i>Paul</i>	<i>Sally</i>	<i>Mike</i>
Height:	short			
Build:	--			
Age:	early twenties			
Face:	oval			
Hair:	long black curly			
Eyes:	brown			
Mouth:	--			
Nose:	small			

41

Valerie and Brian work with Explore London Tours. Listen to their conversation and describe the people Brian has to meet at the airport.

<i>Name</i>			
<i>Age</i>			
<i>Height</i>			
<i>Hair</i>			
<i>Other details</i>			

42

Work in pairs. Read the following dialogue, one student reading one part, the other student reading the other. Note the expressions used in the dialogue and the progression of the conversation.

Matt: What does your girlfriend look like?
John: She's very beautiful, with dark brown eyes and flaming red hair.
Matt: How long is her hair?
John: Her hair is very long, it goes down to the middle of her back.
Matt: How tall is she?
John: She's my height: one hundred and seventy centimeters.
Matt: And is she slim, plump, average weight, obese?
John: She's slim, like a model. And she has a great figure.
Matt: And she's in her early twenties, isn't she?
John: Yes, she's the same age as me.
Matt: What kind of clothes does she usually wear?
John: She almost always wears blue jeans and T-shirts. The T-shirts are usually blue, that's her favorite color.
Matt: Does she wear glasses?
John: Yes, she sometimes wears small gold-rimmed glasses, but she usually wears contact lens. Why are all the questions about my girlfriend?
Matt: Just curious. Besides, I think that's her over there across the street.
John: Where? I don't see her.
Matt: Under that big tree. Isn't she the one kissing the sailor?
John: What?! Gloria!

➤ After reading, close your book and tell your partner a summary of the dialogue.

Start like this: *The dialogue is about a boy describing his girlfriend. She has ...*

➤ Use the dialogue as a model to have similar conversations.

43

Read the text about Keiko Wilson. It is not very natural. Which nouns can you replace with pronouns or possessive adjectives? Underline them and then rewrite the text to make it more natural. Begin like this: *Keiko Wilson is Japanese, but she lives in New York ...*

Keiko and Her Family

Keiko Wilson is Japanese, but Keiko lives in New York because Keiko is married to an American. Keiko is an interpreter. Keiko likes New York because New York is interesting, but Keiko's husband, Walter, doesn't like New York. Walter wants to leave and live in the country.

Keiko and Walter have two children. Walter takes the two children and the two children's dog out of the city in Walter's free time. Walter and the children go walking in summer and skiing in winter, but Keiko does not go with Walter and the children because Keiko doesn't have any free time.



44

Complete the sentences with the correct *pronoun*.

Model: *My sister has a new car, but she doesn't like it.*

1. Harry has two sons. _____ plays football with _____ in his free time. 2. Irma's new teacher is Mr Banks. _____ likes _____ a lot. 3. Jane and I are good students. _____ like our teacher Estella and she likes _____. 4. That's my dictionary. Can _____ have _____ back, please? 5. Our teacher always gives _____ a lot of homework. 6. Kate likes Joanna, but Maria doesn't like _____ at all. 7. Anna buys a newspaper every day. _____ reads _____ on the train. 8. Look! This is a photo of _____ with _____ father. 9. Sally lives near Paul and Sue. _____ goes to work with _____ in their car every day. 10. He is a good boy and I love _____. 11. Anna drinks orange juice because _____ likes _____.

45

Underline one odd word in each line.

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|-------------|--------|---------|
| 1. curly | young | middle-aged | old | little |
| 2. fat | short | diminutive | tall | average |
| 3. thin | slim | fat | young | lean |
| 4. fair | brown | blue | dark | permed |
| 5. green | hazel | blue | blonde | brown |
| 6. ugly | handsome | beautiful | pretty | nice |

46

Translate into Ukrainian.

A clean shaven face, a freckled face, a wrinkled face, irregular features, pencilled eyebrows, curving thick eyelashes, a turned-up nose, an aquiline nose, hollow pale cheeks, full compressed painted lips, a protruding double chin, a soft vivid mouth, a cordial smile, medium height, a hairdo, a beard, a moustache, a mole, dimples, a scar, bald, a ponytail, a plait, curly golden hair, uneven teeth, a broad forehead, under-eye-bags, bulging eyes, a cross-eyed man, hazel eyes, a handsome man, arched eyebrows, a beautiful woman.

47

Give the English equivalents.

Коса, середнього зросту, зачесане назад волосся, дуже високий зріст, чорне як смола волосся, м'язистий, фарбоване волосся до плечей, кучерявий, бакенбарди, стрункий, коротко стрижене волосся, кремезний, масне волосся, хімічна завивка, гарна фігура, вуса, ніздрі, повіки, скроні, ясна, мочки вух, колір обличчя, рубець, прищик, цятки, ячмінець, бородавка, родимка, ластовиння, "мушка" для краси, зморшки, щелепа, засмаглий, високі вилиці, приплюснутий ніс, вирячені очі, мигдалевидні очі, запалі щоки, загнуті вії, брови дугою, звичайна зовнішність, привабливий, чарівна, подвійне підборіддя, лапаті вуха, орлиний ніс, рівні зуби, лоб.

48**🗨️ Answer the questions and then discuss them in pairs.**

- What kind of hair do you have? What colour is it?
- What kind of hairstyle do you have now? What hairstyles did you have in your childhood? What hairstyles are fashionable at the moment?
- What hairstyles can you suggest for your groupmates and friends?
- Do you like when women have long or short-cut hair?
- Do you approve of people dyeing and bleaching their hair? Shaving their heads? Men wearing long hair? Explain.
- Do you like beards? Why? Why not?
- Would you like to be different? If so, what would you like to be?
- Do you think you have any special features? Are there any facial features you would like to have?
- How tall are you? What is the average height for men and women in your country? Is it changing? What are the advantages and disadvantages of being either very tall or very short?
- How much do you weigh? How much would you like to weigh? Why?
- How can you describe your build? Do you like your build? If you don't, what build would you like to have?
- How can you describe your build in the childhood?
- How can you describe your groupmates' build?
- What words and phrases are suitable to describe your relatives' build?
- What sort of build should gymnasts, weight lifters, footballers and basketball players have?
- Can you describe any well-known people (actors, actresses, showmen, singers, top models, boxers, swimmers)? Do you think that they always have perfect figures?

49**🗨️ Work in pairs. Describe people (family, friends, classmates, teachers) you know to you partner. Include in your description:**

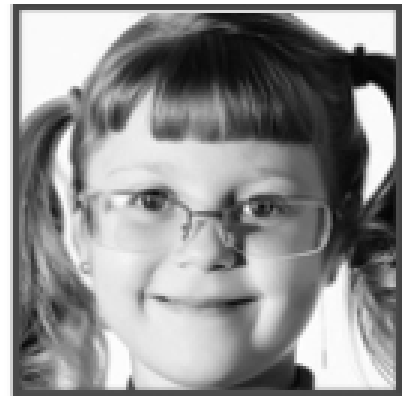
- height and weight (build)
- eyes and hair color
- hair style
- approximate age
- any distinguishing features
- additional information which helps to guess who is being described

50**🗨️ Work in pairs. Select a prominent personality in our country or in the world, without naming him or her to your partner. The person may be a TV or movie star, sports figure, politician etc. Describe the person until your partner can guess who is being described. You may tell what kind of job the person has, the style of clothes they usually wear (if known), and what they are well-known for.**

Example statements include: *This person is very tall, but thin. This person has long black hair and ... This person is an entertainer and is well-known for his role in the movie ...*

51

🗨️ Describe these people to your partner.



52

🗨️ You have recently met a very ugly person. Describe this person. Dwell on the issue of nice and ugly appearances. Does it matter whether a person is beautiful or not?

53

Fill in the correct sentence.

a) I love sports. b) My name's Ben and I'm from England. c) I'm 12 years old.

Dear Claude,

1) _____. I live in Sussex with my family. There are four of us: my parents, my sister Emily, aged 4, and me. My mum works in a bank. My dad's a dentist.

2) _____. I'm tall, about 1.70, and slim. As you can see from my photo, I've got green eyes and short fair hair.

3) _____. My favorite is basketball. I usually play basketball with my friends at weekend. I also enjoy riding my bicycle. I love reading books but I don't like reading comics.

Write back to me soon and tell me about yourself. Send me your photograph.

Best wishes, Ben

54**Look at the plan, then write a letter to your pen-friend.**

Plan

Dear *(your friend's first name)***Introduction**

Para 1: name, where from, place you live in, family

Main Body

Para 2: age, height, build, facial features

Para 3: what you like/don't like/don't mind

Conclusion

Para 4: ask him/her to write back and send you his/her picture

Best wishes,

(your first name)**55****Translate into English.**

Петрик маленький хлопчик. Йому чотири роки. Він маленького зросту і товстий. Він схожий на свого батька. Обличчя у Петі кругле та в ластовинні. У нього густе кучеряве каштанове волосся та маленький кирпатий ніс. Мені подобаються його великі сірі очі та білі зуби. У нього повні губи та пухкі рожеві щоки. Він має родимку біля лівого ока та ямочки на щоках. Я думаю, що він розумний хлопчик, бо в нього широке й високе чоло. Він веселий і жвавий хлопчик, але трохи запальний.

56**Translate into English.**

1. Моя мама дуже красива. Вона середнього зросту, трохи повненька. У неї засмагле обличчя з великими, глибоко посадженими сірими очима, прямий ніс, повні губи та довге каштанове волосся, заплетене у косу. Коли мама посміхається, у неї з'являються ямочки на щоках. 2. Моя наречена дуже красива дівчина. У неї блакитні очі, довгі густі вії, червоні уста, білі рівні зуби та овальне обличчя. 3. Мій брат схожий на батька. Він високий і стрункий. У нього кучеряве каштанове волосся та маленький кирпатий ніс. Він має родимку на підборідді та ямочки на щоках. 4. Ця дівчина хоче бути схожою на свою улюблену співачку зі світлим волоссям, блакитними очима та гарною фігурою. 5. Їй дуже подобається той хлопець з коротким темним волоссям, темними добрими очима та ямочкою на підборідді. 6. Моїй бабусі 55 років, але вона не має жодної сивої волосинки чи зморшки на обличчі. 7. Моїй сестрі подобаються високі чоловіки з чорним волоссям та блакитними очима, може, навіть з довгими бакенбардами.



Translate into English.

1. Зараз дуже модною є чоловіча стрижка “їжачок”, хоча інколи можна побачити чоловіка з довгими бакенбардами та волоссям до плечей. 2. У Ірини сірі очі, світло-русяве волосся, губи бантиком та кирпатий носик. 3. Давід має маленького дворічного сина з рудим волоссям, темно-зеленими очима, пухкенькими рожевими щічками, кирпатим носом та маленьким ротиком. 4. В мене є сестра. Вона гарненька дівчинка середнього зросту зі стрункою граційною фігурою. Вона має овальне обличчя з ямочками на щічках, її риси обличчя чітко окреслені. 5. Майк не любить своє кучеряве волосся, тому підстригся під “їжачка”. 6. Тендітна фігура, мініатюрний зріст, вузькі очі та пряме пригладжене волосся – це типові риси китаянки. 7. У цього підлітка справді жахливе обличчя: прищі, ластовиння, бородавки, а на лобі – величезний рубець. 8. У нашій групі є хлопець з прямим довгим рудим волоссям, що заплетене у косу. 9. Моя двоюрідна сестра мала довге волосся з посіченими кінцями, тому вона зробила акуратну стрижку з чубком. 10. В нього добре широке обличчя, завжди чисто виголене, але трішки прищаве. 11. Ця дівчина дуже красива. В неї гарна фігура, чітко окреслені риси обличчя, а також вона завжди одягається зі смаком.

Translate into English.

1. У моєї доньки кругле лице у ластовинні з пухленькими рожевими щічками, ясними блакитними очима, маленьким кирпатим носиком та виразним ротом. 2. Моя подруга має тітку, яка нижче середнього зросту та трішки товстенька. Вона носить зачіску “каскад”. 3. Мої племінники двійнята, схожі як дві краплі води, але один із них має густе чорне волосся із проділом збоку. 4. Мій троюрідний брат високий та худий, а його дружина крихітна та повненька. 5. Моя подруга має гарну фігуру, хоча вона й не висока. 6. Марина худа й дуже мініатюрна. Вона кучерява, тому й носить волосся, заплетене в косу. 7. Якщо у вас лупа, посічене або тонке волосся, вам треба користуватися цим шампунем. 8. Мій батько товстий, високий брюнет. А мати струнка блондинка. 9. Моя подружка перукар, вона вміє робити звичайну стрижку, укладку, хімічну завивку та стрижку “їжачок”. 10. Обличчя цієї бабці в глибоких зморшках, вона має прямий ніс, стиснутий рот і дуже гостре підборіддя. Волосся вже не густе та чорне як смола, а сиве та рідке, тому вона носить його у вузлі.



59

Supply prepositions wherever needed in the sentences.

1. Where do you usually go _____ holiday? 2. His exam is _____ August. 3. I'm not interested _____ Chinese. Why should I? 4. Look _____ that ugly lady _____ a terrible hat! 5. Jane lives _____ her husband _____ Paris. 6. There is a low table _____ the corner _____ the room. 7. They are _____ London now. 8. This boy has dimples _____ his cheeks. 9. Lola is _____ her mid-thirties. 10. What are you doing _____ Tuesday? 11. We have a lot _____ features _____ common. 12. Angela is _____ medium height. 13. My parents are _____ their prime. 14. We both look like _____ our pretty aunt. 15. I sometimes wear my hair _____ a side parting. 16. My father is crazy _____ sports. 17. My aunt has a strong resemblance _____ my mother. 18. Jennifer looks _____ her age. 19. She is a nice girl _____ a graceful figure. 20. _____ my childhood my hair was ginger. 21. Oliver's teeth are white and his cheeks are _____ ruddy. 22. She always wears her hair _____ a bun. 23. This funny man is shortish _____ my tall and slender niece. 24. The youngest person _____ my family is my little brother.



London

60

Complete these sentences using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous. Use the verb given in brackets.

1. I _____ (*wear*) my sunglasses today because the sun is very strong. 2. I won't go out now as it _____ (*rain*) and I _____ (*not/have*) an umbrella. 3. Ann _____ (*make*) a dress for herself at the moment. She _____ (*make*) all her own clothes. 4. He _____ (*usually/speak*) so quickly that I _____ (*not/understand*) him. 5. Cuckoos _____ (*not/build*) nests. They _____ (*use*) nests of other birds. 6. Tom can't have the newspaper now because his aunt Ann _____ (*read*) it. 7. _____ (*you/like*) this scarf? I _____ (*give*) it to my daughter for her birthday tomorrow. 8. The milk _____ (*smell*) sour. _____ (*you/keep*) milk a long time? 9. – Why _____ (*you/walk*) so fast today? You _____ (*usually/walk*) quite slowly. – I _____ (*hurry*) because I _____ (*meet*) my mother at 4 o'clock and she _____ (*not/like*) waiting. 10. Tom and Lila _____ (*have*) a long chat. I _____ (*wonder*) what they _____ (*talk*) about. 11. What _____ (*your daughter/look*) like? _____ (*she/resemble*) you or your wife? 12. Our son _____ (*wear*) a terrible hairstyle this month. Can we do anything about that, Brian? Why _____ (*you/not/listen*) to me?!



SECTION III: CHARACTER

Vocabulary

<i>Virtuous traits of character</i>	<i>Чесноту</i>
active / energetic	активний, жвавий, енергійний
affable	привітний, люб'язний
affectionate	люблячий, ніжний
ambitious	цілеспрямований
amiable / friendly	дружній, люб'язний, доброзичливий
attentive	уважний
benevolent	доброзичливий
brilliant / bright / smart	здібний, кмітливий
broad-minded	з широким кругозором
calm / quiet / peaceful	спокійний
capable / skillful	здібний
careful / caring	дбайливий, турботливий
cheerful	веселий
clever / intelligent	розумний
communicative / sociable / outgoing	комунікабельний
composed	спокійний, стриманий
confident	упевнений
considerate	уважний до інших, делікатний
consistent	послідовний
cordial / hearty / warm-hearted	сердечний, щирий
courageous / brave	сміливий, відважний
creative	творчий
decisive / determined	рішучий, сповнений рішучості
devoted	відданий
dignified	що має почуття власної гідності, гідний
discreet	обачний, розсудливий, стриманий (що вміє мовчати)
earnest / serious	серйозний
easy-going	добродушно-веселий, з яким легко спілкуватися
emotional	емоційний
enthusiastic	сповнений ентузіазму, захоплений
funny / humorous	забавний, смішний
generous	щедрий
gentle	м'який, лагідний

good-humoured / good-natured	добродушний, доброї вдачі
good-tempered / even-tempered	врівноважений
gullible	довірливий
hard-working / industrious	працьовитий
honest / straightforward	чесний
hospitable	гостинний
imaginative	наділений багатою уявою
impartial / just	справедливий
independent	самостійний
individualistic	індивідуалістичний
inventive	винахідливий
loyal	вірний
merciful	милосердний
modest	скромний
optimistic(al)	оптимістичний
painstaking / diligent	старанний, сумлінний
patient / tolerant / forbearing	терпеливий
persevering / persistent	наполегливий
polite / respectful	ввічливий
proud	гордий
punctual	пунктуальний
quick-witted / witty	кмітливий, дотепний
reliable	надійний
reserved	стриманий, відлюдний
respectable	порядний
responsible / trustworthy	відповідальний
romantic	романтичний
sensitive	чутливий, вразливий
shy	сором'язливий
sincere / frank	відвертий, щирий
sophisticated / refined	з витонченим смаком
strong-willed	рішучий, вольовий
sweet	приємний
sympathetic	співчутливий
tactful	тактовний
thoughtful	замислений, уважний
tidy / neat	охайний, акуратний
well-bred	вихований
well-mannered	з гарними манерами
wise	мудрий

<i>Evil traits of character</i>	<i>Вади</i>
absent-minded / inattentive	неуважний
annoying / boring	надокучливий
arrogant	зарозумілий
boastful	хвалькуватий
bossy / dictatorial	деспотичний, владний
capricious	капризний
careless / carefree / casual	безтурботний
coarse / harsh / rude	грубий, вульгарний
conceited	самовдоволенний, чванькуватий
cruel / hard-hearted	жорстокий
cunning	хитрий
deceitful / two-faced	брехливий
dishonest	нечесний
disorganized / unorganized	неорганізований
dull / silly / stupid	тупий, дурний
empty-headed	пустоголовий
envious	зздрісний
forgetful	забудькуватий
fussy	метушливий, нервовий, що приділяє надто багато уваги незначним речам
greedy / stingy	скупий
haughty	пихатий, гордовитий
heartless	безсердечний
hesitant / undecided	нерішучий
hostile	ворожий
hot-headed / hot-tempered / passionate	запальний
ill-mannered	невихований, нечемний
ill-natured	недоброї вдачі, злобливий
illogical	нелогічний
impatient / intolerant	нетерплячий, дратівливий
impersonal	безликий
impertinent / impudent	нахабний, зухвалий
impolite	неввічливий
impulsive	імпульсивний
inconsiderate	неуважний до інших, неделікатний
indiscreet / unrestrained	нетактовний, нестриманий
inquisitive / curious	занадто допитливий
insensible	байдужий

insincere	нещирий
irresponsible	безвідповідальний
jealous / green-eyed	ревнивий, заздрісний
lazy	лінивий, ледачий
mean	жадібний, підлий, нечесний
mercenary	корисливий
merciless	безжалісний
meticulous	дріб'язковий
moody	що легко піддається змінам настрою, сумтний, похмурий
naive / naïve	наївний, простакуватий
negligent	недбалий, халатний
naughty	неслухняний, вередливий, пустотливий
obstinate / perverse / stubborn	впертий
rebellious	бунтарський, впертий, неслухняний
revengeful	мстивий
risk-taking	рисковий, що не боїться ризикувати
self-centered / selfish / egoistic	егоїстичний
self-confident	самовпевнений
self-willed	свавільний
servile	рабський, улесливий
shameless	безсоромний
spiteful	злобний, ущипливий
sulky	похмурий, надутий
sullen	замкнутий, понурий
tactless	нетактовний
talkative	балакучий, занадто говіркий
touchy / susceptible	образливий
uncommunicative / unsociable	некомунікабельний
undisciplined	недисциплінований
unfriendly	недружній, непривітний
unkind	недобрий
unimaginative	позбавлений уяви
uninteresting	нецікавий
unpunctual	непунктуальний
unreliable	ненадійний
untidy	неакуратний
vain	суєтний, пустий
weak-willed	слабохарактерний

1 Read and translate the text. Explain the words in bold as in the model.

Model: Responsible people are those who you can always trust to do what you ask them to do.

Read My Lips

Forget about fortune tellers and horoscopes. The shape of a person's lips can say a lot about them. The 5 000-year-old art of face reading is gaining popularity. So, take a look at the shape of someone's lips to find out about their personality...



People with full lips are usually **responsible**. You can always trust to do what you ask them to do. They are also **decisive**; they make decisions quickly. On the other hand, they tend to be rather **bossy**. They like telling other people what to do!

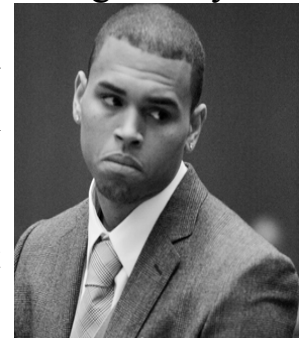
People who have a thin upper lip and a full lower lip are **energetic**. They work very hard and like participating in a lot of activities. They are **ambitious** as well; they want to be successful in life. However, these people tend to be **self-centered**. They seem to only care about themselves and they sometimes forget about other people's feelings.



People with thin lips are **determined**; they know what they want and do everything they can to get it. They are **careful** people who do their work with a lot of attention and thought. However, they tend to be **reserved**; they don't like showing their feelings or expressing their opinions. They can also be **mean**; they don't like sharing things or spending money.



People who have lips with down-turning corners are very **generous**. They love giving things to other people and helping them. They are also **intelligent** and understand difficult subjects quickly and easily. On the other hand, they can be **sensitive** at times; they get upset easily, so be careful of what you say to them.



2 Translate the phrases from the text above and use them in the sentences of your own.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|
| - to gain popularity | - to be successful in sth | - to take a look |
| - to be careful of sth | - to care about sth/sb | - to tend to be |
| - to make decisions | - to find out sth/about sth | - to share sth |
| - to participate in sth | - to seem to do sth | - to get upset |

3

a) Look at these famous people's lips and talk about their characters. Model: Sylvester Stallone has thin lips with down-turning corners. It means he is generous, careful and determined.



b) Use ex. 1, 2 and 3a to talk about your partner's character by reading his/her lips.

4

a) Do the personality quiz to discover what sort of person you are. Write *Y* for *Yes*, *N* for *No*, and *S* for *Sometimes*.

1. Are you usually smiling and happy?
2. Are you generally aware of other people's feelings?
3. Do you find it difficult to meet new people?
4. Do you frequently make people laugh?
5. Does your mood change often and suddenly?
6. When decisions should be made, do you think first of yourself?

7. Can your friends trust you and rely on you?
8. Do you generally like other people's company?
9. Are there lots of things you want to do in your professional life?
10. Can you usually understand other people's point of view, even if you don't support it?
11. Do you worry and think too much about details?
12. Do you sometimes not tell the truth because you don't want to hurt someone's feelings?
13. Are you interested in other people and their business?
14. Do you usually talk a lot?
15. Do you often give presents?



b) Ask your partner to do the quiz about you. Look at your ideas and your partner's ideas about you. Are they the same?

c) Translate these adjectives. Match them with the questions above.

<i>talkative</i>	<i>moody</i>	<i>sociable</i>	<i>sensitive</i>	<i>witty</i>
<i>generous</i>	<i>shy</i>	<i>reliable</i>	<i>ambitious</i>	<i>selfish</i>
<i>tolerant</i>	<i>fussy</i>	<i>cheerful</i>	<i>inquisitive</i>	<i>tactful</i>

5 Choose the best option for each sentence. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Johnson never has anything new to tell. It's so boring to talk to him. He is _____.
(a) *disinteresting* (b) *uninteresting* (c) *interesting* (d) *tolerant*
2. My wife is always _____ when she becomes angry with me for no reason at all.
(a) *jealous* (b) *talkative* (c) *sociable* (d) *bad-tempered*
3. Students at the university where I teach are so _____. They always do their homework.
(a) *patient* (b) *lazy* (c) *hard-working* (d) *friendly*
4. Cameron always comes up with the brightest ideas at work. She's so talented and _____!
(a) *imaginative* (b) *unimaginative* (c) *imaginating* (d) *impulsive*
5. Sometimes I get the feeling that Mark is not telling the truth to his clients. I think he is _____.
(a) *unhonest* (b) *honest* (c) *dishonest* (d) *trustworthy*
6. Alexis always has time to help her employees if they have a problem. I can say she is _____.
(a) *helpful* (b) *unhelpful* (c) *helpless* (d) *friendly*
7. Rob's desk is a mess! I don't know how he can find anything! Rob is _____!
(a) *untidy* (b) *distidy* (c) *tideless* (d) *tide*
8. Glenn is so _____. He always helps poor people in our community.
(a) *creative* (b) *greedy* (c) *sociable* (d) *generous*

9. Never ask Paula to dance while her husband is looking. He always gets so _____ of her.

(a) *jealous* (b) *responsible* (c) *attentive* (d) *tolerant*

10. Our new teacher is so _____. If we don't understand anything, she goes over it again and again until we do.

(a) *lazy* (b) *shy* (c) *patient* (d) *friendly*

11. I think Indonesian people are so _____. They always come up to you in the street and try to practice their English.

(a) *friendly* (b) *reliable* (c) *imaginative* (d) *bad-tempered*

12. Barry loves to chat a lot, doesn't he? In fact, I don't think I know anyone quite as _____ as him.

(a) *reserved* (b) *talkative* (c) *polite* (d) *lovely*

13. Mary's husband is so _____. He never helps her with any of the chores around the house.

(a) *brave* (b) *reliable* (c) *lazy* (d) *tolerant*

14. Our English teacher is so _____. He always comes up with new games that help make learning fun.

(a) *clever* (b) *creative* (c) *talkative* (d) *trustworthy*

6

The following adjectives describe people's character. Read them and try to find the proper words to describe people who have these traits. Then fill in the correct adjective. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

<i>reliable</i>	<i>optimistic</i>	<i>greedy</i>	<i>brave</i>
<i>stubborn</i>	<i>impatient</i>	<i>helpful</i>	<i>shy</i>
<i>cheerful</i>	<i>persistent</i>	<i>generous</i>	<i>selfish</i>



1. Tom tends to be quite a(n) _____ child; he seldom shares his toys with his friends. 2. Ann is a very _____ worker; I can always rely on her if I want something on time. She always arrives on time and does her job well. 3. Mr. James is a(n) _____ man; he gives a lot of money to the children's hospital. 4. Joe seems _____ at times; he never changes his mind and he always does what he wants to. 5. Seb is a(n) _____ person; he always sees the positive side of even the most difficult situation. 6. Steve tends to be _____; he becomes very annoyed when he has to wait in long queues. 7. I wonder why he is so _____. He has lots of money but he hates spending it. 8. In movies the main character is always _____. He always beats his enemies and can put up with any problem. 9. John is _____; he never gives up and always finishes what he starts. 10. Mary is very _____; when I have a lot of work to do, she always lends a hand. 11. Ann is such a(n) _____ girl. She always laughs and smiles. 12. Children are often really _____. They hide behind their mothers when guests come.

7

Read and translate the text. Describe the members of your family in the similar way using your topical vocabulary.

The Priestleys

Mr Priestley is a **kind, considerate, thoughtful, affable**, middle-aged man. There is something in him that makes him **irresistible** to people.

His wife is a woman who always keeps to her own style. Her appearance is like her house, neat and well-kept. Any kind of dust or disorder worries her. She is **kind, loving, tolerant and peaceful**, but she manages her house (and in her quiet way, her husband) very well. He is a handsome man but a little bit **unpractical** and he needs Mrs Priestley to look after him.

The Priestleys have two children, John and Margaret. John is eighteen, tall, **a good mixer and the life and soul of any party**. He is **bright, quick-witted and painstaking**. Besides, he is crazy about sports. He is strong both in body and character. Margaret is only eleven. She is a **sweet and polite** little girl with golden hair curling on her shoulders, and a spirit that is always **bright and happy, full of joy**. She is like a ray of sunshine in the house. Mr Priestley is very fond of his son and very proud of him and Margaret is the apple of his eye.

All the family are very **friendly, caring and benevolent**. They like spending their time together.

8

Check the text above one more time to find the words that mean the following.

1. beautiful (about men) _____
2. amiable, friendly _____
3. clean, tidy, orderly _____
4. attentive to other people _____



5. extra charming _____
6. brilliant _____
7. patient _____
8. calm _____

9

Read the text and underline the correct adjective. Translate the text.

My elder brother, Tom, is a singer. He is also my best friend. He is a(n) **1) active/caring/helpful** brother. I remember him sitting up with me all night once when I had a fever and could not sleep. Tom is very **2) generous/sensitive/decisive** and often brings us presents from the countries he visits. When Tom is not working, he is a(n) **3) confident/lazy/active** person who enjoys climbing, sailing and cycling. He also has a really **4) outgoing/loyal/cooperative** personality and loves meeting new people. Tom is a **5) reserved/determined/self-centered** person and once he decides to do something, nothing can stop him. He is also very **6) ambitious/careful/responsible** and practices every day because he wants to be a successful singer. However, he tends to be a bit **7) shy/stubborn/disorganized** at times, refusing to admit that he may be wrong about something. He can also be rather **8) bossy/arrogant/selfish**, he likes giving orders to others. All in all, Tom is very special to me as he is always there when I need him.

10 Write an adjective of personality for each comment. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. I don't like working. I prefer sitting and watching TV. _____
 2. I'm going to beat him if it's the last thing I can do. _____
 3. Take your time – I can wait. _____
 4. I really love seeing my mum and we always give each other a big hug. _____
 5. I understand exactly how



you feel. _____
 6. Oh, it's so great! A party! I adore being with my friends. _____



7. No problem. You can depend on me. _____
 8. I don't want to go to the party. I hate meeting new people. _____
 9. I have a list of all the possible films we can see, where they are on, and the time they start. _____
 10. Right. John, go and buy the food. Maria, tidy the room. _____

11 Choose the most suitable word or phrase underlined in each sentence. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Please don't push. It's very bad-tempered/rude/unsympathetic.
 2. Jack hates spending money. He's rather frank/greedy/lazy.
 3. I don't talk to anyone at parties because I am generally very ambitious/lonely/shy.
 4. Our teacher is very proud/strict/tolerant and doesn't let us talk in class.
 5. Teresa never gets angry with the children. She is very brave/patient/pleasant.
 6. Thank you for bringing us a present. It was very adorable/grateful/thoughtful of you.
 7. When Harry sees his girlfriend with other boys, he feels jealous/selfish/sentimental.
 8. Tom always pays for everyone when we go out. He's so cheerful/generous/honest.
 9. Helen never does her homework. She is rather gentle/lazy/reliable.
 10. I don't like people who are noisy and aggressive/courageous/sociable.

12 a) Which of the adjectives describe positive/negative qualities of a person's character?

funny, unreliable, self-confident, caring, imaginative, tactless, outgoing, helpful, rude, easy-going, stubborn, industrious, selfish, shy, impatient, organized, forgetful, active, lazy, loyal, arrogant, polite, envious, reliable

positive:

negative:

b) 🎧 Listen and write the adjectives you hear. Translate them.

1) ____, ____, ____ 2) ____, ____ 3) ____, ____ 4) ____, ____, ____, ____ 5) ____, ____, ____

c) 🗣️ Use adjectives from a) and b) to talk about your friends or members of your family.

Model: *My friend Peter is very funny. He always makes us laugh with his jokes.*

13

a) Before you listen translate the words.

- a continuity announcer - to worry - manipulative
- a presenter - to be likely to do sth - spoilt
- a guest - to share - competitive
- an affect - to promote a book - on the positive side
- downside - definitely - on the negative side

b) Listen to a psychologist talking about the influence your position in the family has on your personality. Complete the chart by writing four more adjectives of personality in each column.

<i>oldest children</i>	<i>middle children</i>	<i>youngest children</i>	<i>only children</i>
<i>self-confident</i>	<i>independent</i>	<i>charming</i>	<i>spoilt</i>

c) Compare with the partner. Then listen again and check your answers. Can you remember more details?

d) Look at the completed chart above. In pairs, say if it's true for you or not. Why? Why not? Do you think it is true for your brothers and sisters or your friends?

14

a) Listen to a man talking about how position in the family affects his and his family's personality. Tick the positions he talks about.

Oldest child Middle child Youngest child Only child

b) Listen again and write the adjectives he uses to describe each person.

Himself: not s____, not s____, not i____, r____, o____.

His wife: a____, not l____, h____-w____, c____, not m____.

His father: r____, b____.

15

Match these words with the descriptions given. Use each word only once. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

bad-tempered determined lazy reliable cheerful frank mean selfish considerate honest punctual sympathetic



1. You are always happy. _____
2. You always arrive on time. _____
3. You do what you say you will do. _____
4. You easily become angry with others. _____
5. You have a strong wish to get what you want. _____
6. You don't think about the needs of others. _____
7. You are unkind, or not willing to spend money. _____
8. You say exactly what you think. _____
9. You tell the truth and obey the law. _____
10. You think about the needs of others. _____
11. You hate working. _____
12. You understand the feelings of others. _____

16

Complete each sentence with a word from the list. Use each word only once. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

ambitious greedy polite sociable brave imaginative
proud stubborn grateful kind snobbish tolerant

1. It was very _____ of Sheila to put out the fire on her own. 2. Diana wants to get to the top in her company. She is very _____. 3. Peter refuses to change his mind, although he is wrong. He's so _____. 4. My parents don't mind my crazy hair style. They are very _____. 5. Our neighbours look down on us. They are a bit _____. 6. Don't eat all the cakes! You really are becoming _____! 7. I think I'll stay here on my own, I'm not feeling very _____ today. 8. Thank you for helping me.



- It was very _____ of you. 9. I am very _____ of my new motorbike. 10. I think you have to be very _____ to write a novel. 11. It's not _____ to stare at people and say nothing! 12. If you lend me the money, I'll be very _____.

17

Guess the adjectives to describe these people.



1. _____ someone who likes to work
2. _____ someone who can't decide at once
3. _____ someone who tells lies
4. _____ someone who is afraid of nothing
5. _____ someone who can't wait for a long time
6. _____ someone you can rely on
7. _____ someone who is extremely rude
8. _____ someone who tells you everything he thinks about you
9. _____ someone who is ready to share the last chocolate with you
10. _____ someone who believes everything you tell him
11. _____ someone who thinks and cares about other people
12. _____ someone who thinks too much of himself
13. _____ someone who tells much about his good traits
14. _____ someone who is easy to get on with
15. _____ someone who is not very intelligent
16. _____ someone who wants to get to the top
17. _____ someone who doesn't panic
18. _____ someone who gets angry all the time



18

Transcribe the words below according to the graphical rules. Translate them into Ukrainian.

kind	affable	consistent	impartial	respectable
calm	earnest	intelligent	generous	industrious
polite	patient	sociable	reserved	sympathetic
loyal	cordial	sincere	attentive	communicative
harsh	gentle	jealous	stubborn	mercenary
rude	envious	discreet	merciful	impertinent
wise	hearty	arrogant	conceited	merciless

19 a) Add the necessary suffixes (-able, -al, -ful, -ible, -ic, -ly, -ous, -y) to make up the topical adjectives. Translate them.

envi_____	help_____	thought_____	boast_____
friend_____	hospit_____	sympathet_____	caprici_____
haught_____	revenge_____	industri_____	greed_____
ami_____	spite_____	deceit_____	gull_____
gener_____	aff_____	imparti_____	heart_____
unreli_____	respect_____	jeal_____	fuss_____
sting_____	insens_____	romant_____	cordi_____
soci_____	loy_____	humor_____	enthusiast_____

b) Add the necessary prefixes (dis-, il-, im-, in-, ir-, un-) to make up the topical adjectives. Translate them.

_____friendly	_____sociable	_____honest	_____communicative
_____responsible	_____considerate	_____polite	_____attentive
_____sensible	_____reliable	_____kind	_____personal
_____punctual	_____logical	_____helpful	_____imaginative
_____respectful	_____discreet	_____sincere	_____organized
_____interesting	_____decisive	_____patient	_____disciplined

20 a) Find as many synonyms to the given adjectives as possible.

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. bright | 7. skillful | 13. serious |
| 2. clever | 8. brave | 14. refined |
| 3. smart | 9. hearty | 15. tolerant |
| 4. active | 10. diligent | 16. friendly |
| 5. calm | 11. benevolent | 17. just |
| 6. attentive | 12. sincere | 18. sociable |



b) Study your vocabulary list and find the opposite to the following words.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. clever | 8. weak-willed | 15. sincere |
| 2. hard-working | 9. well-mannered | 16. unreliable |
| 3. well-bred | 10. polite | 17. calm |
| 4. honest | 11. generous | 18. selfish |
| 5. even-tempered | 12. amiable | 19. reserved |
| 6. warm-hearted | 13. merciless | 20. cheerful |
| 7. attentive | 14. careful | 21. good-natured |

21

Translate these adjectives into English and give the synonyms to them.

1. некомунікабельний
2. нестриманий
3. невихований
4. неухажливий
5. жорстокий
6. нечесний
7. запальний
8. впертий
9. скупий
10. неорганізований
11. грубий
12. владний
13. безтурботний
14. надокучливий
15. заздрісний
16. нерішучий
17. нетерплячий
18. нахабний
19. егоїстичний



1. уважливий
2. серйозний
3. спокійний
4. розумний
5. люб'язний
6. стриманий
7. справедливий
8. працьовитий
9. доброзичливий
10. комунікабельний
11. активний
12. здібний
13. дружній
14. сердечний
15. сміливий
16. веселий
17. терпеливий
18. врівноважений
19. кмітливий



20. старанний
21. відвертий
22. чесний
23. рішучий
24. ввічливий

Linking Ideas

- When you describe people's character, you can include positive (e.g. *kind*) and negative (e.g. *lazy*) qualities.
- When you talk about negative qualities, you can use the expressions in bold. e.g. He **tends to/can** be aggressive at times. (NOT: He ~~is~~ aggressive.)

Look at the way you can join the sentences.

<i>Similar qualities</i>	<i>Opposing qualities</i>
e.g. She is friendly. She is very polite.	e.g. He is helpful. He can be arrogant at times.
• She is friendly and also polite.	• He is helpful but he can be arrogant at times.
• She is friendly and polite as well .	• He is helpful. On the other hand , he tends to be arrogant at times.

22

Join the ideas using: *and (also), but, however, on the other hand*.

1. Roger is friendly. Roger is caring.
2. John is intelligent. John is self-centered.
3. Andrew is stubborn. Andrew is disorganized.
4. Paul is cooperative. Paul is forgetful.
5. Michael is energetic. Michael is bossy.

☾ What star sign are you? Think of your friends. What are their star signs? Now read the star signs for you and for them. Do you agree with the information? Use linkers from *ex.22*.

ARIES ♈ 21/03 – 20/04	When they stop thinking about themselves, they are <i>excellent managers</i> . <i>Well-organized</i> and with very <i>good people skills</i> , they <i>need</i> to learn a bit more <i>patience</i> .
TAURUS ♉ 21/04 – 21/05	<i>Not</i> the most <i>imaginative</i> people in the world, but they are <i>the best</i> people to have near you if you are looking <i>for action</i> . When they <i>do things</i> , they do them <i>well</i> .
GEMINI ♊ 22/05 – 21/06	Their <i>independence</i> is important to them and they work better on their own than in a team. Lots of <i>imagination</i> and <i>ideas</i> , but they <i>get bored quickly</i> .
CANCER ♋ 22/06 – 23/07	They seem <i>calm</i> and <i>organized</i> , but Cancers have a secret <i>sensitivity</i> . Look after them well and they will <i>look after you</i> .
LEO ♌ 24/07 – 23/08	<i>Strong</i> , <i>patient</i> and <i>skilled</i> , Leos want to be <i>bossy</i> – and they often are. They <i>have great ambitions</i> , but be careful of them if they do not get what they want.
VIRGO ♍ 24/08 – 23/09	They often live for their <i>work</i> and they are not very <i>emotional</i> people. They <i>learn quickly</i> and <i>do not need</i> a lot of <i>help</i> . <i>Calm</i> , but sometimes <i>too calm</i> .
LIBRA ♎ 24/09 – 23/10	Libras are a happy <i>balance of</i> many <i>opposites</i> : <i>imagination</i> and <i>hard work</i> , <i>patience</i> and <i>speed</i> . Other people like them.
SCORPIO ♏ 24/10 – 22/11	Their main strength is their <i>ability to change</i> . With their <i>natural intelligence</i> , they understand situations quickly and know what to do next.
SAGITTARIUS ♐ 23/11 – 21/12	<i>Honest</i> and <i>straightforward</i> in the way they work, but when things don't go well, they can <i>get worried</i> . <i>Patient</i> and <i>kind</i> to other people.
CAPRICORN ♑ 22/12 – 20/01	<i>Naturally skilled managers</i> , they are <i>independent</i> and <i>strong</i> . They are more <i>sensitive</i> than they seem and they are <i>good listeners</i> .
AQUARIUS ♒ 21/01 – 19/02	They <i>like</i> their <i>work</i> and they enjoy working with other people. They <i>do not</i> usually <i>show</i> their <i>emotions</i> . Quite <i>ambitious</i> , but they make <i>good friends</i> .
PISCES ♓ 20/02 – 20/03	<i>Intelligent</i> and <i>imaginative</i> , they have <i>good people skills</i> , but they find it <i>difficult to make</i> important <i>decisions</i> .

24

a) Match the adjectives of personality with their meaning. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

aggressive careful stylish friendly generous quiet serious



1. a _____ person is open and kind, who likes other people
2. a _____ person doesn't make mistakes or have accidents
3. a _____ person thinks a lot and doesn't make jokes
4. a _____ person doesn't talk a lot
5. a _____ person likes giving people things
6. a _____ person dresses well
7. a _____ person likes arguing and can be violent

b) What colour is your family car? Do you like the colour?

c) You are going to listen to a radio programme about car colours and personality. Listen once and write the colours in the chart. Listen again and complete the rest of the chart using the adjectives from a).

<i>your car colour</i>	<i>your personality</i>	<i>popular with</i>
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		

d) Think of three people you know who have a car. What colour are their cars? Is their personality the same as in the chart?



25

Look at the pictures. What nationalities are these people? What makes it easy for you to identify them? Do you believe in stereotypes?



26

Which adjectives in the box do you think go with the nationalities below?

hard-working
reserved
hospitable
enthusiastic
sophisticated
humorous

easy-going
emotional
sociable
quiet
well-mannered
serious

punctual
lazy
formal
tolerant
fun-loving
nationalistic

friendly
outgoing
talkative
respectful
romantic
tactful



American people are ...
British people are ...
French people are ...
German people are ...

Ukrainian people are ...
Russian people ...
Japanese people are ...
Italian people are ...



27

First read the article, translate it into Ukrainian and then write down one thing you remember about each nationality. Share the information with other students in the class. Use your active vocabulary too.

A World Guide to Good Manners or How *NOT* to Behave Badly Abroad

Travelling to all corners of the world is getting easier and easier. We live in a global village, but how well do we know and understand each other? Here is a simple test. Imagine that you are having a meeting at four o'clock. What time should you expect your foreign business colleagues to arrive? If they are **Germans**, they will be on time. If they are **Americans**, they'll probably be 15 minutes early. If they are **the British** or **the Chinese**, they will be 15 minutes late and you should allow up to an hour for **Italians**.

So, to have nice and friendly relations with foreign business partners it's necessary to learn their customs and how to behave with them.

For example:

- **The British** are happy to have a business lunch and discuss business matters with a drink during the meal; **the Japanese** prefer not to work while eating. Lunch is time to relax and get to know one another, and they rarely drink at lunchtime. **Germans** like to talk business before dinner. **The French** like to eat first and talk afterwards. They have to eat and drink before they discuss anything.
- Taking off your jacket and rolling up your sleeves is a sign of getting down to work in **Britain** and **Holland**, but in **Germany** and **France** people regard it as taking it easy.
- **American** executives sometimes signal their feelings of ease and importance in their offices by putting their feet on the desk while talking on the telephone. In **Japan** people may be shocked when they see it. Showing the soles of your feet is a very bad manner; the worst can be only blowing your nose in public.

- **The Japanese** have perhaps the strictest rules of social and business behavior. Seniority is very important, and a younger man should never complete a business deal with an older Japanese man. The Japanese business card almost needs a rulebook of its own. You must exchange business cards immediately at a meeting because it is important to establish everyone's status and position. When you hand your business card to a person in a superior position, you must do it with both hands and your partner does the same. Then you must take time to read it carefully, and not just put it into your pocket! The bow is also very important when greeting someone. You shouldn't expect the Japanese to shake hands. Bowing the head is a mark of respect and the first bow of the day should be lower than when you meet thereafter.
- **Americans** prefer to be casual and more informal. The main topic between strangers is the search to find a geographical link. "Oh, really? You live in Ohio?! I have an uncle from Ohio." **The British**, of course, are cool and reserved. The great topic of conversation between strangers in Britain is the weather – unemotional and impersonal.
- In **Arabic** countries it's impolite to bring gifts when you are invited to dinner, as it suggests you think the host is poor. In **Britain**, however, it is opposite.
- In the Chinese restaurant it is bad manners to wipe your face with a towel. **Chinese** people use it only for their hands.
- In **the Middle East** you must never use your left hand for eating, drinking or smoking. You shouldn't show that you like something in your host's home. They will feel that they have to give it to you.

28

Try this short test. Read the following situations. What are the mistakes?

1. You are in Paris on business. At a meeting it is very hot and you decide to roll up your sleeves. **2.** A sales manager in Hong Kong is angry because his workers are always 15 minutes late for work. **3.** You come to a dinner with your Arabian partners with a gift. **4.** You start speaking about financial problems in your family with your British colleague. **5.** You arrive on time when you have a meeting with an Italian. **6.** You eat with your left hand when in Cairo. **7.** You invite your Japanese partner to a restaurant to discuss some business issues. **8.** You shake hands with your Japanese partners. **9.** You are one hour late for a meeting with a German businessman. **10.** You discuss business before a lunch when in France. **11.** You say that you absolutely love your Egyptian friend's vase. **12.** You are having a meal with your Chinese colleagues. After the meal you use the hot towel to wipe your hands and your face.

29

a) Read the extract from a travel guide to Thailand with tips on social culture. Can you guess which alternative is correct for any of the tips?

- When addressing a **Thai** person it is polite to use just their *first name/surname*.
- You *should/shouldn't* shake hands – *after that/instead* clasp your hands together and lower your head and eyes.
- If you enter somebody's house, you should *take you shoes off/keep your shoes on*.
- Couples *should/shouldn't* be careful how they behave. They *may/shouldn't* hold hands or kiss in public.
- It's *acceptable/not respectful* to touch another person's head.
- In Thailand, they serve food in large bowls in the center of the table and everyone helps themselves using *a spoon and a fork/chopsticks*.
- You *should/shouldn't* treat old people with respect.
- You should *say rude things about/show respect to* the Thai royal family.



b) ☛ **Nikam Nipotam is half Thai. His colleague is going to visit Thailand, and asks him about social customs there. Listen to their conversation and check whether your answers in a) are correct. Before listening translate the following words and phrases.**

<i>social customs</i>	<i>to address people</i>	<i>to mean</i>	<i>salt</i>
<i>a formal situation</i>	<i>to call sb by their name</i>	<i>to pray</i>	<i>pepper</i>
<i>a traditional greeting</i>	<i>to hold hands</i>	<i>to forget</i>	<i>khun</i>
<i>an influence</i>	<i>to point at sth with sth</i>	<i>to invite</i>	<i>a wai</i>
<i>a bowl for the rice</i>	<i>to say a prayer</i>	<i>acceptable</i>	<i>nam pla</i>

30 ☛ **Discuss the questions in pairs.**

1. Do you agree with the saying “When in Rome, do as the Romans do”? Do you have a similar saying in Ukrainian? 2. What are the “rules” about greeting people in Ukraine? When do you shake hands? When do you kiss and hug? What about when you say goodbye? 3. Think of one or two examples of bad manners. For example, it is impolite to ask people how much they earn. 4. What do you want to recommend to someone coming to live and work in Ukraine?

31 **Write the correct comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives.**

1. lazy	_____	_____	9. smart	_____	_____
2. gentle	_____	_____	10. bad	_____	_____
3. honest	_____	_____	11. well-bred	_____	_____
4. arrogant	_____	_____	12. serious	_____	_____
5. reliable	_____	_____	13. merciful	_____	_____
6. good	_____	_____	14. talkative	_____	_____
7. clever	_____	_____	15. wise	_____	_____
8. bossy	_____	_____	16. friendly	_____	_____

32**Compare the items in terms of characteristic traits. Use your topical vocabulary.**

- Russians to Ukrainians
- a liar to a lawyer
- a professor to a student
- a criminal to an angel
- a bad student to a good student
- a kid to an adult
- a girl to a boy
- a doctor to a street cleaner
- a couple in love and two friends
- a mother to a kid

33**Read the text and fill in the blanks. Translate the text into Ukrainian.**

<i>intelligent</i>	<i>heart-shaped</i>	<i>tall</i>	<i>generous</i>	<i>sociable</i>
<i>successful</i>	<i>sparkling</i>	<i>straight</i>	<i>slim</i>	<i>shoulder-length</i>

A Famous Model

Claudia Schiffer is a very successful German supermodel. She appears on the covers and fashion pages of all the major fashion magazines and is one of the faces of Chanel.

Claudia is a very beautiful woman. She has a **1)** _____ figure and is **2)** _____ with very long legs. Her most stunning feature, though, is her attractive **3)** _____ face with her **4)** _____ eyes and **5)** _____ nose. At the moment she has **6)** _____ blond hair but its style and colour are often changed to suit each modeling assignment.

Not only is Claudia a professional model, but she is also a very **7)** _____ businesswoman. She has her own fitness video and is a partner in the new chain of “Fashion Cafés”. She is very **8)** _____, spending a lot of her time working with various charity organizations helping children in need. Claudia is **9)** _____ too, and likes being with famous people.

When Claudia is not modeling or doing charity work, she likes reading and watching old films. She also enjoys going to parties, but she rarely stays out late.

Although Claudia’s popularity as a model rises and falls with the season (as it does for all supermodels), Claudia is so beautiful, talented and most of all **10)** _____ that she will be famous for a long time to come.

**34****A magazine has asked its readers to write an article describing their favourite celebrity. Write your article (120-180 words).****Plan****Introduction:** §1: What is his/her name? How do you know this person/each other?**Main Body:** §2: What does he/she look like?

§3: What is he/she like? Give examples.

§4: What are his/her hobbies/interests?

Conclusion: §5: How do you feel about him/her?

35

a) Read the two emails and find spelling mistakes in Claudia's email. Can you correct them?

From: *Stephanie*

To: *Claudia*

Subject: *Hi from Scotland.*

Dear Claudia,

I hope you are fine.

You know, your friend Christelle wants to rent a room in my house this summer. Could you tell me a bit about her (age, personality, etc. and what she likes doing) so that I can see if she can become a friend for our family? Please, be honest!

Send my regards to your family and I hope to hear from you soon.

Best wishes, Stephanie

From: *Claudia*

To: *Stephanie*

Subject: *Hi from Switzerland.*

Hi Stephanie,

Thanks for your email.

Of course I can tell you about Christelle. She's 21 and she's studying law with me.

I think she is quite extrovert and very sociable – she has lots of friends. She's also very good to children. She has a young step-brother and several young cousins, and I know she likes playing with them. She's incredibly hard-working and responsible – she has only excellent marks at the university.

She likes going out, seeing films, and listening to music, but not rock or heavy metal – so don't worry about the noise! And she is happy to do things on her own – she is very independent, so you don't need to look after her. Her parents are divorced and she lives with her mother and stepfather, but she also sees her family regularly.

The only negative things I can think of are that she is a bit untidy – her room is usually in a mess – and that her English is, well, not brilliant. But I'm sure she can learn fast! I think she's really nice and that you and the family will get on well with her. I hope that's useful. Let me know if you need any more information about her.

Love, Claudia

PS I attach a photo of the two of us.



b) Which adjectives describe Christelle's personality? Group them into positive and negative ones. What does Christelle like doing in her free time?

36**☛ Discuss the following issues with your groupmates.**

1. Do you agree with the following statement of Oscar Wilde: *“It is only shallow people who do not judge by appearances. The true mystery of the world is the visible, not the invisible.”*? What is more important to you: a person’s looks or his/her personality?
2. Do you form your opinion of someone in the first 5 minutes?
3. What conclusions can you draw from the following information?



- a) a man who wears an earring in one ear
- b) a woman with an earring in her nose
- c) a man with a beard or moustache
- d) a woman who wears heavy make-up
- e) a 60-year-old man with long hair
- f) someone who wears lots of jewellery
- g) someone who is always laughing
- h) someone who bites their nails
- i) someone who has tattoos

4. What personal characteristics (good or bad) would you expect to find in these people? a) a nurse; b) an interpreter; c) an actor; d) a politician; e) a teacher.
5. How do you think your character has changed or developed over the years? Are there any aspects of your personality you still don’t like?
6. What features of character do pessimists and optimists have?
7. Read these sentences. What do they mean?
 - “A famous person is someone who works hard all his life to become known, then wears dark glasses so that nobody will recognize him.” (*Fred Allen*)
 - “Try not to become a man of success, but rather try to become a man of value.” (*Albert Einstein*)
 - “All that glitters is not gold.” (*William Shakespeare*)

37**☛ Act out the following situations with your groupmate.**

1. - Someone has just stolen your wallet. Go to the police and describe the person who did it.
 - *You are a police officer. Ask the victim about the details.*
2. - You call up a blind date. Ask him what he looks like and describe yourself.
 - *You call up a blind date. Ask her what she looks like and describe yourself.*



3. - Your friend tells you she is going to get married. Ask her to tell you about her fiancé.
 - *You are going to get married. Your friend hasn't seen your fiancé. Describe him to her.*
4. - You saw your girlfriend with someone yesterday. Ask her who it was.
 - *Yesterday you met with your groupmate. Tell your boyfriend about it.*
5. - You've just met the most handsome man in your life. Tell your friend what he looks like.
 - *Your friend is very impressed with her meeting. Ask her about the person she met with.*
6. - Someone was following you last night. Tell the police about it and describe this person.
 - *You are a police officer. Ask the victim about the details.*



38

a) Listen to a radio programme *Home Truths*. Two couples, Carol and Mike, and Dave and Alison talk about their partner's annoying habits. Before listening study the phrases below.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| - to drive mad about sb | - to change gears | - an argument |
| - to change channels | - to shout at sb | - a remote control |
| - to make a decision | - to change a light | - a soap |
| - to save sb's life | - to look scruffy | - round the corner |
| - to put up with sb | - to be dressed up | - old-fashioned |
| - to drop sth on the floor | - to throw sth away | - annoying |

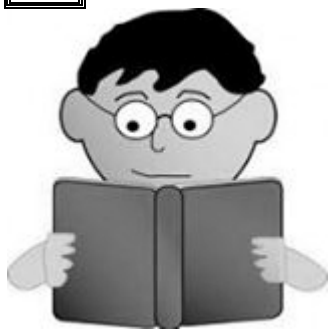
b) Write down positive and negative features of every partner in the couples. Use the words both from the listening and from your topical vocabulary.

39

Translate into English.

1. У моїй родині 3 дітей, але двоє з них вже дорослі. Це моя сестра та я. Моя сестра підліток. Вона багато читає та цікавиться мистецтвом. Вона є старанною розумною людиною. До того ж, вона гарно виглядає, дуже вихована та ввічлива. Мій молодший брат ще дитина. Йому тільки 3 роки, але він дуже товариський, веселий та відвертий, як і всі діти.
2. Є багато рис характеру, які не подобаються всім, і ніхто не хотів би мати такі риси сам. Заздрісні, безжалісні, егоїстичні люди не подобаються нікому. Важко здогадатись, якою насправді є сором'язлива, замкнена в собі, нетовариська людина. Ми завжди поважаємо високо освічених, розумних, працелюбних людей, але іноді інші люди їм заздрять.

Translate into English.



1. Мій племінник дуже розумна дитина. Він читає багато книжок, адже в книжках головний герой майже завжди наділений лише чеснотами. Він сміливий, справедливий, милосердний та рішучий. Мій племінник має саме такі чесноти. 2. Моя бабуся мудра жінка. Їй 80 років і вона знає багато цікавих історій. Її діти та онуки дбають про неї і ставляться з великою повагою та любов'ю, бо вона завжди ніжна, уважна до інших, любляча й терпляча, і взагалі, найкраща мама та бабуся в світі. 3. Мій двоюрідний брат дуже дружелюбний і сердечний. У нього багато друзів. Він працьовитий, сповнений ентузіазму, вихований та з гарними манерами. 4. Похилого віку жінка з чорним, як смола хвилястим волоссям – це моя бабуся. Вона надзвичайно лагідна, сердечна та гостинна. 5. Дуже часто діти сором'язливі та слабохарактерні. Але не можна бути слабо характерним в дорослому віці, бо нічого не досягнеш у житті. 6. Мій тато розумний та освічений чоловік. Він дуже комунікабельна особистість і може скласти гарну компанію. 7. Не будь таким безсердечним. Допоможи своїй матері.

Translate into English.

1. Це дуже роботяща дівчина. Вона вчить нові вирази і слова щодня. Крім того, вона завжди допомагає своїм батькам по дому. 2. В дошкільному віці мій старший брат був заздрисним, впертим, капризним, надійливим, а іноді й брехливим хлопчиком. 3. Моя донька трохи запальна. Вона завжди виглядає веселою та жвавою. Вона живе з батьками, ось тому вона і є така безтурботна. 4. Люди кажуть, що та дівчина



дуже груба, підла та жорстока, але я вважаю, що вона відверта та досить впевнена у собі. 5. Цей хлопчик невихований. Хто його батьки? Дітей змалку треба привчати поважати дорослих та бути ввічливими з усіма людьми. А ви завжди ввічливі? Ви завжди кажете “Добрий день” і “Дякую”? 6. Дружина мого сусіда доброзичлива, комунікабельна, спокійна і порядна, і її чоловік пишається нею. Але ця жінка дуже нещаслива зі своїм чоловіком, тому що він надзвичайно ревнивий та грубий. 7. Том людина настрою. Він може бути серйозним та стриманим, або веселим і безтурботним, як дитина. А взагалі, він приємна людина. 8. Моя маленька кузина добре вихована, приємна та люб'язна дівчинка. Вона завжди допомагає своїй мамі та бабусі по дому. Вона скромна теж. А ще вона лагідна та дружелюбна.

Translate into English.



1. Мій друг добре вихований, з гарними манерами. Він завжди допомагає літнім людям. З ним також легко спілкуватись. Він дуже довірливий та сердечний. 2. Я можу покластися на свою кращу подругу. Вона надійна, віддана, чесна особа й в скрутну годину ніколи не зраджує. Вона щира людина. Вона завжди каже те, що думає. 3. Мій батько дуже щедра людина. Він радий віддати друзям усе, що має. Він завжди зайнятий, дуже старанний і працьовитий. Вільного часу

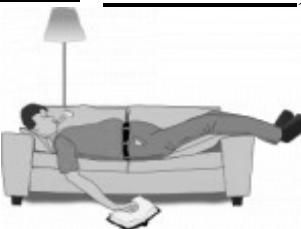
в нього ніколи немає, бо в нашій родині він годувальник. 4. Мій дядько в молодості був грубим, безтурботним, брехливим і жорстоким підлітком, але згодом він змінився й став добрим, сердечним, ввічливим із батьками та іншими людьми. 5. В наш час бути завжди веселим, життєрадісним і безтурботним дуже складно. Сучасне життя іноді жорстоке до нас, тому кожен має безліч проблем. 6. У мене спокійний характер. Я дуже комунікабельна, сердечна, віддана та серйозна, але неуважна. Я хочу зауважити, що я схожа на маму зовнішністю, але характером – на тата. 7.

Батьки повинні бути терплячими та люблячими. Кажуть, що у люблячих та великодушних батьків завжди здібні та комунікабельні діти. 8. Будьте чесними! Завжди кажіть правду. Брехливі, байдужі, нещирі та корисливі люди не можуть мати справжніх друзів, бо такі риси характеру відштовхують людей. 9. Твій друг безжалісна та жорстока людина. Ти це знаєш? Я не можу сказати, що він вихований, тому що він егоїстичний, хитрий та нечесний.



10. Часто діти у перехідному віці бувають впертими та самовпевненими. Вони часто конфліктують з батьками та вчителями. Але наш вчитель дуже спокійний. Він врівноважений і ніколи не кричить. Тому діти з ним не конфліктують ніколи. 11. Це дуже егоїстична людина. Він завжди все робить тільки для себе. А ще він дуже хитрий, не хоче нічого робити сам.

Choose the correct tense, the Present Simple or the Present Continuous, in the following sentences.



1. I *sleep/am sleeping* on Niko's sofa until I find a place of my own. 2. If you *don't listen/aren't listening* to the radio, why don't you switch it off? 3. His only bad habit is that he *talks/is talking* too loudly. 4. So in the first scene we *see/are seeing* him getting up and then he *goes out/is going*

out and *meets/is meeting* a strange woman. 5. The film *ends/is ending* with a dramatic car chase. 6. You *make/are making* goulash using meat, vegetables and paprika. 7. I never do anything I *feel/am feeling* is against my principles. 8. He *appears/is appearing* to be very friendly but I don't know him very well. 9. We *don't travel/aren't traveling* by train very often. 10. I'm sorry, I *feel/am feeling* too tired to go out this evening. 11. We *rely/are relying* on you to bring the keys with you. 12. She *always borrows/is always borrowing* from me and she *never remembers/is never remembering* to pay me back. 13. – *Do you recognize/are you recognizing* that man? – I *think/am thinking* that I have seen him before but I *don't remember/am not remembering* his name.

44

Complete these sentences using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous. Use the verbs given in brackets. Add never or always if this is also given.

- Turtles _____ (*lay; always*) their eggs on the same beach; however, they _____ (*come; never*) in winter.
- I _____ (*like; always*) to get post but I _____ (*seem; never*) to have the time to reply.
- The heroine _____ (*prefer*) to be with Paul because James _____ (*argue; always*).
- You _____ (*moan; always*) about the state of the flat but you _____ (*help; never*) me.
- Maria _____ (*forget; always*) what time the soap _____ (*start*).
- I _____ (*use; never*) my mobile phone if I _____ (*drive*).
- Whether I _____ (*go*) swimming or not _____ (*depend; always*) on the weather.
- We _____ (*smell; always*) cooking when we _____ (*pass*) your house.
- He _____ (*borrow; always*) money but he _____ (*pay; always*) me back.



45

Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.



- _____ (*you/see*) my car keys anywhere? – No, I _____ (*look*) for them but I _____ (*not/see*) them.
- What _____ (*this one/cost*)? – It _____ (*cost*) forty pence.
- I _____ (*always/buy*) lottery tickets but I _____ (*never/win*) anything.
- This book is about a man who _____ (*desert*) his family and _____ (*go*) to live on a Pacific island.
- I _____ (*think*) it is a pity you don't take more exercise. You _____ (*get*) fat.
- What _____ (*Tom/think*) of the Budget? – He _____ (*think*) it's very unfair. – I _____ (*agree*) with him.
- _____ (*you/hear*) the wind? It _____ (*blow*) very strongly tonight.
- What _____ (*usually/you/have*) for breakfast? – I _____ (*usually/eat*) a carrot and _____ (*drink*) a glass of cold water.
- _____ (*you/belong*) to your local library? – Yes, I do. – _____ (*you/read*) a lot? – Yes, quite a lot. – How often _____ (*you/change*) your books? – I _____ (*change*) one every day.
- Tom _____ (*never/do*) any

work in the garden; he _____ (*always/work*) on his car. **11.** – Why _____ (*you/put on*) your coat? – I _____ (*go*) for a walk. _____ (*you/come*) with me? – Yes, I'd love to come. _____ (*you/mind*) if I bring my dog? **12.** Mary _____ (*usually/learn*) languages very quickly but she _____ (*not/seem*) to be able to learn modern Greek. **13.** – How _____ (*Peter/get*) on at school? – Very well. He _____ (*seem*) to like the life. **14.** – This car _____ (*make*) a very strange noise. _____ (*you/think*) it is all right? – Oh, that noise _____ (*not/matter*). It _____ (*always/make*) a noise like that. **15.** – _____ (*you/believe*) all that the newspapers say? – No, I _____ (*not/believe*) any of it. – Then why _____ (*you/read*) newspapers? **16.** – _____ (*you/write*) to him tonight? – Yes, I _____ (*always/write*) to him on his birthday. _____ (*you/want*) to send any message? **17.** – _____ (*you/enjoy*) yourself or would you like to leave now? – I _____ (*enjoy*) myself very much. I _____ (*want*) to stay to the end. **18.** – How much _____ (*you/owe*) him? – I _____ (*owe*) him £5. – _____ (*you/intend*) to pay him?



46

Translate these sentences into English using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.



1. Ваш кіт нюхає рибу. Він, мабуть, голодний. Коти дуже хитрі тваринки. **2.** – У мене немає ручки. Можна мені взяти твою? – Звичайно, вона мені все одно зараз не потрібна. **3.** – Джоне, хтось стукає у двері. Відкрий, будь ласка. – Хто там? – Це ваша сестра. Вона чекає на вас. – Вже йду. **4.** – Ти чуєш запах у кухні? – Це обід так добре пахне, він, мабуть, дуже смачний. **5.** Ми завжди ходимо гуляти з нашим песиком, але сьогодні холодно, і мій пес хворий, тому я йду гуляти сама. **6.** – Стає холодно. Давай зйдемо до будинку. – Ти завжди мерзнеш! Ну, добре, дозволь мені бути турботливим братом. **7.** Шейла зараз у Нью Йорку. Вона живе у готелі “Національ”, оскільки зазвичай вона зупиняється саме там. **8.** – Що це ти шукаєш у сумці? – Я шукаю гроші. **9.** Йде дощ. Я не хочу йти ані в кіно, ані в театр. Я хочу залишитися вдома й поспати. **10.** Восени, коли йде дощ, стає дуже холодно. **11.** Цей похилого віку лисий чоловік зі стурбованими очима здається трохи незграбним, хоча він і високий та стрункий. Що це він зараз робить? Невже він намагається залізти на дерево?! **12.** Вузькоплечий хлопець з обвітреною шкірою ледь помітно посміхається симпатичній високій стрункій дівчині з оманливою посмішкою. **13.** Чому ти такий неуважний та неорганізований сьогодні? Про що розмірковуєш?

SECTION IV: JOBS

Vocabulary

an accountant; a bookkeeper	бухгалтер
an actor / an actress	актор / актриса
an advocate	адвокат
an agronomist	агроном
an ambassador	посол
an archaeologist	археолог
an architect	архітектор
an artist; a painter	митець, художник
an astronaut	астронавт
an astronomer	астроном
an attendant; a servant	обслуговуючий персонал
an auto mechanic	автомеханік
a baby-sitter	няня, що приходить доглядати за дитиною
a baker	пекар, булочник
a ballerina; a ballet dancer	балерина
a ballet master	балетмейстер
a barber / a hairdresser	перукар (чоловічий) / перукар (жіночий)
a barman	бармен
a beautician; a cosmetologist	косметолог
a biologist	біолог
a bricklayer	муляр
a builder	будівельник
a businessman/a businesswoman	підприємець / підприємця
a butcher	м'ясник
a butler	дворецький
a carpenter	тесляр
a cashier / a bank teller	касир / касир банку
a chauffeur	водій (для когось)
a driver (bus ~ / car ~ / taxi ~)	водій (~ автобуса / ~ автомобіля / ~ таксі)
a chemist	хімік
a chef / a cook	шеф-повар / повар
a civil servant	державний службовець
a clerk	клерк
a coach; a trainer; an instructor	тренер
a computer programmer; an IT specialist	програміст
a conductor / a conductress	кондуктор(ка) / диригент
a cleaner / a street cleaner	прибиральник / двірник

a custodian / a security guard	сторож / охоронець
a dancer	танцюрист, танцюристка
a decorator	маляр, декоратор
a dentist	стоматолог
a designer	дизайнер
a diplomat	дипломат
a doctor	лікар
an economist	економіст
an editor	редактор
an electrician	електрик
an engineer	інженер
an estate agent; a realtor	агент з продажу нерухомості
an executive (officer)	керівник
a farmer	фермер
a fireman; a fire fighter	пожежник
a fisherman	рибалка
a fishmonger	продавець риби
a fitter	монтер, слюсар-монтажник
a flight attendant; a steward / a stewardess	стюард / стюардеса
a florist	продавець квітів
a footballer; a football player	футболіст
a gardener	садівник
a guitarist	гітарист
a gyn(a)ecologist	гінеколог
a housekeeper	економка
a housewife	домогосподарка
an interpreter / a translator	перекладач (усний) / перекладач (письмовий)
a jeweler	ювелір
a journalist	журналіст
a lawyer	юрист
a librarian	бібліотекар
a loader; a loading workman	вантажник
a manager	менеджер, управляючий
a maid	покоївка, служниця
a mail carrier; a postman	листоноша
a mechanic	механік
a milkmaid	доярка
a miner	шахтар

a minister	міністр
a musician	музикант
a neuropathist	невропатолог
a newsagent	кіоскер
a nurse	медсестра
an obstetrician / a midwife	акушер(ка) / акушерка
an oculist; an eye doctor	окуліст
an unskilled worker; an odd-job worker	різноробочий
a pharmacist	фармацевт
a photographer	фотограф
a physicist	фізик
a physician; a therapist	терапевт
a pilot	пілот
a plumber	водопровідник
a poet / a poetess	поет / поетеса
a policeman; a police officer	полісмен
a politician	політик
a porter	носильник, вантажник, швейцар
a priest	священик
a psychiatrist	психіатр
a receptionist	секретар в приймальні
a reporter	репортер
a sailor	моряк
a sales manager	управляючий по збуту
a salesperson; a salesman; a saleswoman; a shop-assistant; a shop-girl; a shop-boy; a shop man; a shop woman	продавець
a scientist; a scientific worker	вчений
a sculptor	скульптор
a secretary	секретар
a shepherd	пастух, чабан
a singer	співак
a soldier	солдат
a military man; a serviceman	військовий, військовослужбовець
a surgeon	хірург
a tailor	кравець
a teacher / a lecturer	вчитель / викладач
a ticket inspector	контролер

a top model	ТОП-МОДЕЛЬ
a TV announcer; a TV presenter	диктор телебачення
a turner	токарь
a typist	друкарка
a vet	ветеринар
a violinist	скрипаль
a waiter / a waitress	офіціант / офіціантка
a welder	зварювальник
a writer	письменник
a worker; an employee	робітник
an employer	роботодавець
unemployed	безробітний

1

🔊 Study the phrases and then talk about someone you know using the vocabulary given below.

- What do you do? / What are you? / What do you do for a living? / What's your job?
 - I'm a banker/an engineer/a teacher. (*be + a/an + name of job*)
 - I work in marketing/a bank. (*work in + place or general area*)
 - I work for IBM/Toyota. (*work for + name of company*)



When people ask you to explain your **work/job**, they want to know your responsibilities (your duties/what you have to do), or something about your **daily routine** (what you do every day/week).

- What do you do in your job? / What does that involve?

Main responsibilities

- I'm **in charge of** all the shipments out of the factory.
- I'm **responsible for** translating financial documents.
- I usually **deal with** any complaints.
- I **run** the restaurant in the museum.
- I **manage** PR department.



Daily duties/routines

- I have to **go to/attend (formal)** a lot of meetings.
- I **meet with/visit/see** clients.
- I **do business with** a lot of businessmen.
- It **involves doing** a lot of paperwork.



to earn a living	заробляти на життя
to be in charge of	бути відповідальним за, керувати
to be responsible for	нести відповідальність за
responsible	відповідальний
to deal with	займатись, мати справу з
to run; to manage	керувати
to be out of work	бути без роботи

Model:

- He is in charge of many people.
- He is out of work.
- He does not need to earn a living.
- He has an interesting career.
- He has a very responsible job.
- He loves his/her job.
- He hates his/her job.
- He runs a big private company.
- He deals with a lot of phone calls.
- He manages a firm.

2

👉 **Study the phrases about work conditions and pay. Use the phrases from ex. 1 and ex. 2 to speak about your parents.**

Working hours

For many people working hours are 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. So people often talk about **a nine-to-five job** (regular working hours). Some people have **flextime** (they can start work earlier or finish later); and some people **work** different **shifts** (periods of time when people are scheduled to work, e.g., night shift, day shift). Some people also **work/do overtime** (work extra hours). If people work a full day, they have **a full-time job**; if they work partly, they have **a part-time job**.

Pay

Most workers **are paid regularly** (every week or month). This pay is called **a salary**. We also use the verbs **to earn** or **to make (money)**.

- **How much do you earn? / What is your salary?**
 - I **earn / make** \$40,000 a year.
 - My **salary is** \$40,000 a year.

Some people **are paid for** the hours they work; the lowest hourly pay in the country (set by the government) is called **the minimum wage**.

With many jobs, you **get (receive) vacation pay** and **sick days** (days you can take off work, with pay, when you are sick).

- **How much vacation do you get? / How many weeks' vacation do you get?**
 - I have a 2 weeks' vacation a year. Or 15 days to be more exact.



The total **amount** of money you receive from your jobs is called your **income**. You usually have to pay part of your income to the government – called **income tax**.

3

Match the verbs on the left with the words on the right. Use each word or phrase only once.

- | | |
|-----------|---------------|
| 1. earn | a) overtime |
| 2. work | b) meetings |
| 3. pay | c) a store |
| 4. attend | d) clients |
| 5. see | e) a salary |
| 6. run | f) income tax |

4 Rewrite each sentence using topical vocabulary. Keep the basic meaning the same.

- | | |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. I'm a banker. | I work ... |
| 2. What do you do? | What's ...? |
| 3. I earn \$35,000 dollars a year at my job. | My ... |
| 4. I make \$40,000 from my teaching job and another \$10,000 from writing. | My ... is \$50.000. |
| 5. I'm an engineer. | I work for ... |
| 6. I'm responsible for one of the smaller departments. | I am in ... |

5 Read the text, translate it and discuss in the class.

The World of Jobs

We spend great part of our lives at our jobs, so choosing a right career is one of the most important decisions people make in their lives. Many students finish high school and begin college without a clear idea of what they want to do in future. What do you want to be when you grow up? Centuries ago there were only a few jobs: people were farmers, bakers, butchers or carpenters. Today there are thousands of different kinds of jobs, and new ones are constantly appearing. No wonder that it is not an easy thing to make the right choice. Therefore, it is extremely important to collect as much information as you can. Many roads are open before us: technical schools, colleges and universities.



When choosing a future career, we should consider different factors. In my opinion, **money** is one of the most important factors when you make a choice. There are highly-paid jobs and low-paid jobs. For example, a film star, an accountant, or a president, are highly paid jobs. An odd-job worker, a street cleaner or a plumber, are low-paid jobs. I think everybody wants to earn as much money as possible.



On the other hand, it's good when you get **satisfaction** from your job. It is very important to choose a profession that suits your interests. So above all you must evaluate yourself and find out your interests and talents and try to concentrate on them.



Some jobs are considered to be more **suitable for men** and others **for women**. For example, the professions of a receptionist or a nurse are more suitable for women. A fireman or a pilot are more likely the jobs for men.



In my opinion, a job should be **interesting** and **socially important**. You should also decide whether you want to work **indoors** or **outdoors**.

To make the right choice, you should take into account your traits of **character**. It goes without saying that to become a good doctor you must be patient, caring and kind. A teacher's work requires love for children, profound knowledge of subjects, and the ability to explain. A secretary has to be efficient and careful in order to do her work quickly and accurately. Salespeople need to be friendly and persuasive, to get people buy their products.



There are so many **people** who **influence** us in choosing our occupation. Parents and friends play a very important role in our choices. My father works for an international company as an interpreter. It is a highly-paid job and it offers a lot of opportunities. You can travel abroad and meet different people. My father is a friendly person and he is easy to talk to. He thinks that I must choose my future profession according to my taste and preferences. I respect him and I want to become an interpreter, too. I am interested in languages and I



think I'm quite communicative and have good social skills. I have good analytical abilities and I am good at making quick decisions. So, I am good at English, French and German. Besides, I'm thinking of learning Italian, too. English is the standard language for all kinds of international business communications. To know English today is absolutely necessary for every businessman. That means if you know English well, you have high chances to be successful. It is a very difficult, responsible but interesting job.

And I know one thing for sure – if you are **the best in what you do**, people will value you as a professional no matter what you are, a dentist or a driver, a waiter or a scientist...

6

Give the English equivalents from the text above.

Обрати кар'єру, зробити вибір, важливе рішення, університет, брати до уваги, зібрати інформацію, чітка ідея, надзвичайно важливо, століття, високооплачувана/низькооплачувана робота, заробляти гроші, відповідати інтересам, тисячі професій, постійно з'являтися, отримувати задоволення від роботи, оцінити, той, що підходить, з іншої сторони, переконливий, працювати в приміщенні, само собою зрозуміло, глибокі знання, швидко та точно, пояснювати, зустрічати різних людей, до смаку, грати важливу роль, впливати, пропонувати, багато можливостей, міжнародна компанія, подорожувати закордоном, цікавитися мовами, поважати, означати.

7**Answer the questions. Discuss them with your groupmates.**

1. What is work? Apart from university or job, what else do you consider to be work?
2. What do you do now? What's your occupation? Do you like your profession?
3. What are you going to study? What do you study? How is it connected with your (future) profession?
4. What are you going to be? What do you want to be?
5. Do you have a part-time job? What does it involve? How much do you earn?
6. What does your father do? What's your mother's profession? Do they have any influence on you? Whose example do you follow?
7. Can you name three jobs that are paid very high salaries in your country?
8. What are the most prestigious (giving people respect) jobs in your country?
9. What would be your ideal job?
10. For you, what is the worst job you can imagine?
11. What are normal working hours for most office jobs in your country?
12. What age do people usually start working at in your country?
13. When do people usually retire (finish their whole career) in your country?
14. When you start paying income tax, what is the minimum amount or minimum percentage you have to pay?
15. What jobs often involve working in shifts? Is it convenient?
16. Is flexitime common in your company or in your country?
17. Is it easy right now to find a job? Why or why not?

8**Read the letter below and put the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple tense or the Present Continuous tense.**

Dear Martin,

How are you and Sally? I 1) _____ (*hope*) you're well. I 2) _____ (*write*) to give you some good news. I have got a summer job for the holidays! I 3) _____ (*repair*) telephone lines for a telephone company.

I 4) _____ (*usually/ride*) my bicycle to work because it's only a ten-minute ride from home. We 5) _____ (*start*) work at 8:30. We 6) _____ (*finish*) at 4:30 on Mondays to Thursdays, but at 2:30 on Fridays, so I 7) _____ (*have*) long weekends.



I 8) _____ (*work*) very hard at the moment. To tell you the truth, I 9) _____ (*be*) a bit nervous because my boss 10) _____ (*leave*) for Scotland next week, so I'll be on my own. Lizzie says I 11) _____ (*worry*) about it too much. She 12) _____ (*be*) probably right!

Please write with your news. Say hello to Sally from me.

Best wishes,
Richard

9 Listen and write the jobs. Translate them into Ukrainian.

- a) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____
b) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____
c) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____
d) 1. _____ 3. _____ 5. _____, _____ 7. _____ 9. _____
2. _____ 4. _____ 6. _____ 8. _____, _____ 10. _____

10 Listen and repeat the sentences. Translate them into Ukrainian.

- a) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____
b) 1. _____ 3. _____ 5. _____ 7. _____ 9. _____
2. _____ 4. _____ 6. _____ 8. _____
c) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____
d) 1. _____ 2. _____ e) 1. _____ 2. _____
f) 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____

11 a) Listen to the phrases and translate them. Say the jobs suitable to these places.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

b) Underline the correct word. Listen and check.

1. I work *for/to* a big company. 2. I'm in charge *for/of* other people. 3. I work *in/to* a restaurant. 4. I work *in/at* home. 5. I work *with/to* the public. 6. I often work *on/in* a computer.

12 Read this description of a job. What is this job?

I work for the government and I deal with ... everything! I work in a beautiful office in Washington. I work with lots of different people. It's very well-paid. It's also temporary.

What do I do?



13 a) Listen to a radio programme called *Guess my job*. Liz and Marylin guess Phil's job. What do you think Phil does?

b) Listen to the end of the programme. What is Phil's job?

c) Can you guess their old jobs? Choose from the jobs in the list. Listen and check.

aerobics teacher
English teacher

hairdresser
shop assistant

nurse
waitress

soldier
mechanic

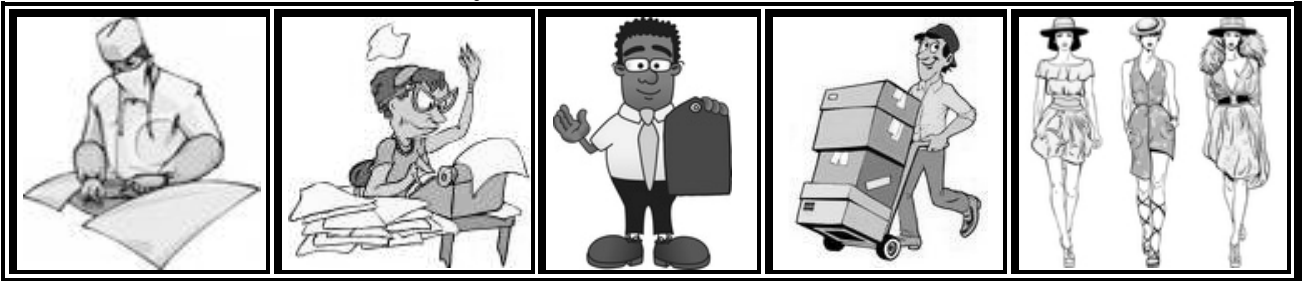
1. James Blunt was a _____. 2. Sting was an _____. 3. Jack Nicholson was a _____. 4. Jennifer Aniston and Barbra Streisand were _____. 5. Morgan Freeman was a _____. 6. Denny DeVito was a _____. 7. Lucy Liu and Calista Flockhart were _____. 8. Tina Turner was a _____.

14

☛ Think of another job and make some sentences about it. Use the sentences from *ex. 1, 2, 4, 5, 11, 12* and *13*. Ask your groupmates to guess the job.

15

Fill in the gaps with the suitable words and write the kind of worker who does each activity.



boss, time, work, letters, people, file cabinet, visitors, phone

She writes **a.** _____, answers the **b.** _____, and meets **c.** _____. She uses a typewriter every day. She puts papers away in the **d.** _____. She stands between her **e.** _____ and his **f.** _____. She helps her boss to plan his **g.** _____ and to finish his **h.** _____. She is a _____.

bags, help, guests, give, travelers

He is a hotel worker who carries **a.** _____ of the **b.** _____. He shows the hotel **c.** _____ to their rooms, and they usually **d.** _____ him some money (tips) for his **e.** _____. He is a _____.

bodies, operation, medicine, patients, sick, hospital

He is a doctor. He works in a **a.** _____. He operates on **b.** _____ people; he repairs their **c.** _____. After the **d.** _____, he prescribes **e.** _____. He watches his **f.** _____ until they are well. He is a _____.

activities, workers, things, meetings

He works in an office. He plans business **a.** _____. He prepares reports and goes to **b.** _____. He learns about buying, selling, and producing **c.** _____. He must hire **d.** _____ to help him. He is a _____.

buy, cameras, pictures, clothes
--

They show us the newest styles of clothes. They put on new **a.** _____ and stand in front of **b.** _____. **c.** _____ of them appear in newspapers and magazines. People see the pictures and want to **d.** _____ the clothes. They are _____.

16

Listen and complete the sentences about Istvan and Pamela. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Istvan is a _____ professor. Pamela's a _____.
2. He _____ from Hungary. She comes from _____.
3. He lives in a big _____, but she lives in a small _____.
4. He works _____ days a week. She works _____ hours a day non-stop.
5. He speaks _____ languages. She _____ to sick _____ on her _____.
6. He _____ his _____ and she _____ her _____ too.
7. He has a _____. She isn't _____.
8. He likes playing _____ in his free time. She _____ has free time.

17

Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. Write them into the correct columns.

1. She wears a uniform.
2. He works outside.
3. She works in a hospital.
4. He works in a hotel.
5. She travels a lot.
6. He walks a lot.
7. She helps sick people.
8. He answers the phone.
9. She speaks three languages.
10. She serves drinks.
11. He speaks four languages.
12. She works with nurses.
13. He delivers letters.
14. He works on a computer.
15. He starts work at 5.00 a.m.
16. She wears a white coat.



She is a flight attendant.



She is a doctor.



He is a receptionist.



He is a postman.

18

Read and guess these people's professions. Listen and check.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| a) A _____ flies planes. | f) A _____ writes for a newspaper. |
| b) A _____ cooks in a restaurant. | g) A _____ wears beautiful clothes. |
| c) A _____ looks after people in hospital. | h) An _____ designs buildings. |
| d) A _____ helps people in court. | i) A _____ sells things. |
| e) An _____ makes films. | |

19**Guess these people's professions.**

1. _____ someone whose job is to sell flowers
2. _____ someone who drives a car
3. _____ someone who sings
4. _____ a member of the police
5. _____ someone who takes photographs
6. _____ someone who makes paintings
7. _____ someone who writes books, articles
8. _____ someone who dances professionally
9. _____ a woman who brings food and drinks to your table in a café
10. _____ someone whose job is to help clients and sell things in a shop
11. _____ someone whose job is to look after someone who is ill
12. _____ a person who plays football professionally
13. _____ someone whose job is to build walls using bricks
14. _____ someone whose job is to give people beauty treatment
15. _____ someone whose job is to create computer programs
16. _____ someone whose job is to collect and deliver the post
17. _____ someone who cooks, cleans and washes clothes for other families

**20****Match each person on the left with the correct definition on the right.**

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| (a) an estate agent | 1. deals with office correspondence |
| (b) a violinist | 2. represents his or her country at an embassy |
| (c) a vet | 3. builds houses |
| (d) a builder | 4. acts on the stage, on TV |
| (e) a secretary | 5. helps people to buy and sell houses |
| (f) an actor | 6. types letters in an office |
| (g) a chef | 7. looks after a garden |
| (h) an architect | 8. sells newspapers and magazines |
| (i) a chauffeur | 9. treats people's teeth |
| (j) a surgeon | 10. designs buildings |
| (k) a reporter | 11. operates on people |
| (l) a typist | 12. treats sick animals |
| (m) a librarian | 13. sells meat |
| (n) a fishmonger | 14. works in a library |
| (o) a butcher | 15. sells fish from a shop |
| (p) a diplomat | 16. drives someone's car for them |
| (q) a gardener | 17. writes for a newspaper |
| (r) a newsagent | 18. plays the violin |
| (s) a dentist | 19. cooks in a restaurant |
| (t) a florist | 20. sells flowers from a shop |

21 Match a job in A with a verb in B and a line in C. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

A	B	C
A farmer	helps	fires.
A receptionist	puts out	legal advice.
An architect	repairs	medicine for patients.
A lawyer	works	guests.
A soldier	prescribes	buildings.
A firefighter	welcomes	on the land.
A decorator	fights for	the home and children.
A mechanic	provides	rooms in a house.
A housewife	designs	cars.
A shop assistant	paints	customers.
A doctor	looks after	his/her country.

22 Add a suitable suffix (-er, -ian, -ist, -or) to the following words to get the professions. You may have to change some of the words a little.

music _____	wait _____	art _____	farm _____
science _____	economics _____	build _____	manage _____
electric _____	sing _____	politics _____	photograph _____
act _____	violin _____	garden _____	biology _____
bake _____	work _____	paint _____	drive _____
sculpture _____	edit _____	report _____	design _____
football _____	write _____	dance _____	type _____
guitar _____	translate _____	journal _____	physics _____
astronomy _____	pharmacy _____	library _____	interpret _____




23 Add a suffix and put the words in the correct column. Then listen and check. Practice saying the words.

<i>act</i>	<i>compose</i>	<i>direct</i>	<i>guitar</i>	<i>photograph</i>
<i>conduct</i>	<i>design</i>	<i>cycle</i>	<i>sculpt</i>	<i>present</i>
<i>politics</i>	<i>football</i>	<i>paint</i>	<i>music</i>	<i>violin</i>
<i>lead</i>	<i>physics</i>	<i>invent</i>	<i>science</i>	

-er	-or	-ian	-ist
leader	actor	politician	physicist

24 a) Many nouns refer to both men and women, e.g. *a doctor*. Some words refer to one sex only, e.g. *an actress*. Put the words into the correct column.

- | | | | |
|------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| an actor | an uncle | a pilot | a singer |
| a chef | a model | a cousin | an artist |
| a nephew | an athlete | a stewardess | a seamstress |
| a niece | a nurse | a teacher | a brother |
| an aunt | a teenager | a midwife | a waitress |
| a child | a manager | a librarian | a photographer |
| a musician | a professor | a writer | a chauffeur |
| a madam | a translator | a poet | a mother |

Men	Women	Both
		

b) Complete the sentences with a word from the table above.

1. He is my sister's son, he is my _____. 2. I run in races, I am a(n) _____. 3. In my job I wear the latest fashion, I'm a(n) _____. 4. I serve you drinks and food in a café, I am a(n) _____. 5. I teach at university, I am a(n) _____. 6. I cook food for a restaurant, I am a(n) _____. 7. "Good evening, _____. Here is the menu." 8. I drive my boss's car for him, I am his _____.

25

Here's a list of adjectives describing qualities certain professions need. Read the sentences and fill in the correct adjective.

<i>persuasive</i>	<i>brave</i>	<i>creative</i>	<i>patient</i>	<i>intelligent</i>
<i>polite</i>	<i>accurate</i>	<i>fair</i>	<i>friendly</i>	

1. **Salespeople** need to be _____ to get people buy their products. 2. **Surgeons** must be very _____ as they should not make mistakes in their work. 3. A **shop assistant** has to be _____ even when dealing with a rude customer. 4. **Judges** should be _____ and give all the evidence equal consideration. 5. **Receptionists** should be _____ in order to make people feel welcome. 6. A **scientist** has to be _____ in order to understand complex theories. 7. **Lifeguards** have to be _____ as they often find themselves in dangerous situations. 8. **Teachers** need to be very _____ as students sometimes take a long time to learn things. 9. **Fashion designers** should be very _____ so that they can come up with new designs.

26**Give synonyms to the following words.**

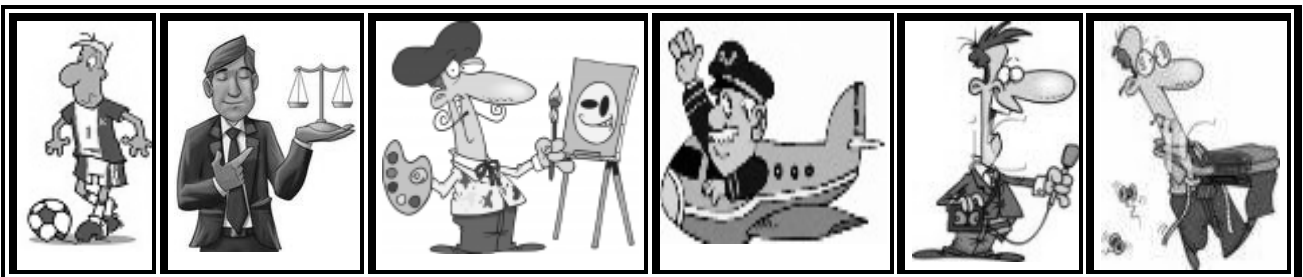
- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. footballer | 6. loader | 11. shop-assistant | 16. serviceman |
| 2. cosmetologist | 7. artist | 12. coach | 17. therapist |
| 3. bookkeeper | 8. realtor | 13. steward | 18. TV presenter |
| 4. IT specialist | 9. oculist | 14. odd-job worker | 19. servant |
| 5. midwife | 10. policeman | 15. scientific worker | 20. postman |

27**Describe the difference between the following pairs of professions.**

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. a doctor and a nurse | 10. an interpreter and a translator |
| 2. a chef and a cook | 11. an editor and a writer |
| 3. a dancer and a ballerina | 12. an astronomer and an astronaut |
| 4. a vet and a surgeon | 13. an auto mechanic and a driver |
| 5. a reporter and a journalist | 14. an architect and a builder |
| 6. a hairdresser and a barber | 15. an economist and an accountant |
| 7. a cashier and a shop assistant | 16. a typist and a secretary |
| 8. a policeman and a security guard | 17. a florist and a gardener |
| 9. a politician and a diplomat | 18. a barman and a waiter |

28**Correct the sentences.**

1. A journalist sells flowers. 2. An architect translates articles. 3. This editor teaches German. 4. Waiters and waitresses never take tips. 5. Teachers work at night. 6. To become a vet you must speak at least three foreign languages. 7. Cooks work 24 hours a day. 8. A nurse operates on people. 9. Chefs run big companies. 10. A barber works in a bar. 11. Translators announce different programmes on the radio. 12. A writer writes articles for a newspaper.

29**Describe the following professions and find them in the pictures.**

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. a footballer | 4. an artist | 7. a mechanic | 10. a designer |
| 2. a scientist | 5. an accountant | 8. a psychiatrist | 11. a tailor |
| 3. an advocate | 6. a pilot | 9. a journalist | 12. a translator |

30**☛ Discuss the questions with your group mates.**

1. Which is the easiest job: baby-sitter, dentist, footballer, teacher?
2. Which is the most dangerous: fireman, police officer, security guard, pilot or military man?
3. Which is the most boring: car park attendant, assembly line worker, shepherd, window cleaner?
4. Which is the most tiring: doctor, farmer, miner, top model?
5. Which is the most useful: journalist, market researcher, nurse, postman?
6. Which is the worst: grave digger, prison warder, soldier, toilet cleaner?
7. Are these “real” jobs: housewife, monarch, novelist, pop star, priest?
8. If the salary were the same, which job would you like to do: actor/actress, archaeologist, astronomer, chief, fashion designer, fortune teller, musician, research scientist, tourist operator?
9. If you had enough money never to have to work again, would you stop working? What would you do instead?

**31****☛ a) Read about Seumas. Translate the text into Ukrainian.****The Man with 13 Jobs**

Seumas McSporran is a very busy man. He is 60 years old and he has thirteen jobs. He is a postman, a policeman, a fireman, a taxi driver, a school-bus driver, a boatman, an ambulance man, an accountant, a petrol attendant, a barman and an undertaker. Besides, he and his wife, Margaret, have a shop and a small hotel.

Seumas lives and works on the island of Gigha /'gɪjə/ in the west of Scotland. Only 120 people live on Gigha, but in summer 150 tourists come by boat every day.

Every weekday Seumas gets up at 6:00 and makes breakfast for the hotel guests. At 8 o'clock he drives the island's children to school. At 9:00 he collects the post from the boat and delivers it to all the houses on the island. He also delivers the beer to the island's only pub. Then he helps Margaret in the shop.

He says: “Margaret likes being busy too. We never have holidays and we don't like watching television. In the evenings Margaret makes supper and I do the accounts. At 10:00 we have a glass of wine and then we go to bed. Perhaps our life isn't very exciting, but we like it.

☛ b) Answer the questions about Seumas.

1. Where does Seumas live?
2. How old is he?
3. How many jobs does he have?
4. What's his wife's name?
5. What does she do?
6. How many people live on the island?
7. How many tourists visit the island in summer?
8. What does Seumas do in the morning?
9. What do he and Margaret do in the evening?

c) Listen to the four conversations from Seuma's day. After each one answer these questions.

1. Is it morning, afternoon or evening?
2. Who are the people? Where are they?
3. What is Seuma's job?

32

a) Listen to the interview with Lord Duncan about his new job. Answer the questions.

1. Is it a difficult job?
2. Does he like it?
3. How many days a week does he work?
4. How many secretaries does he have?
5. How many days a week do his secretaries work?
6. What is he doing today?

b) Listen to the interview with Janet and Michael and complete the sentences.

1. Janet is from *Canada/England*.
2. Janet is a *police officer/security guard*.
3. Janet works with *two men/a man and a woman*.
4. Janet got the job *eleven/two* years ago.
5. Janet thinks her job is *difficult/easy*.
6. Janet's father *likes/doesn't like* her job.
7. Michael is *a doctor/an accountant*.
8. Michael works with *three/two* people in the accounts department.
9. Michael got his job *ten years ago/last year*.
10. Michael thinks his job is *boring/interesting*.

c) Listen to the interview with Sofia and give answers.

1. Where does Sofia live?
2. Who does she live with?
3. What does Sofia do?
4. What is her husband?
5. Do they like their job?
6. When does her husband work?
7. Does her husband speak English?
8. Do they speak English together?

33

Listen and complete the sentences with the information you hear.

Ali is _____. She comes from Cambridge in _____ but now she _____ in Switzerland. She works _____ a week at the Institute of Molecular Biology in Geneva. She speaks three languages: _____. She's married and has _____. She likes skiing _____ and going for walks _____.

Bob is _____. He's _____ but now he lives in _____ in the small town of Alice Springs. He isn't an ordinary _____, he is a *flying* _____. Every day, from _____ to _____ he speaks to people on his _____, then he flies to _____. He works _____ a day non-stop but he _____ his job. He isn't married. He has _____.

34

a) Read the advertisement for a job.

THE OXFORD INTERNATIONAL SCHOOL wants a **receptionist**

- Do you like working with people?
- Can you use a computer?
- Can you speak two foreign languages?
- Do you know Oxford well?

Please write to **Anne Watson, Director**

The Oxford International School
16 College Street Oxford OX2 7PT

b) Carol is interested in the job. Read the information about her and complete the letter with words or phrases.

Name: Carol Barnes

Age: 28

Address: 4 Hope Road, Oxford OX6 5PP

Present job: Tourist guide

Last job: Hotel receptionist

Languages: French, Spanish

4 Hope Road
Oxford OX6 5PP

Anne Watson
Director
The Oxford International School
16 College Street
Oxford OX2 7PT
August 19

Dear Ms Watson,

I am interested in the job of _____ in your school.

I _____ years old and I _____ in Oxford. At the moment I _____ guide, but last year I _____ a hotel receptionist. I _____ working with people very much and I _____ speak two _____, French and Spanish. I can also _____ a computer. I _____ born in Oxford, so I know it very well.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,

Carol Barnes

c) Look at the advertisement of another job and write a similar letter.



HAPPY HOLIDAYS wants TOURIST GUIDES

Please write to:

Peter Mann
Happy Holidays
Central Office
89 Brook Street
London W1 5FW

- ❖ Are you over 18?
- ❖ Do you like talking to people?
- ❖ Do you know your town well?
- ❖ Can you speak English?
- ❖ Can you speak any other foreign languages?
- ❖ Are you free from July to September?

35

☛ Discuss the statements.

- At work appearance is more important than performance.
- You should keep your private life totally separate from your work.
- People don't change much during their working lives.
- It is better to work for as many companies as possible.
- Everybody should retire at 50.
- All work and no play made Jack a dull boy.

36 🗣️👂 **In your opinion, which factors are important for getting a job? Why? Is there anything missing from the list?**

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| 1. appearance | 5. blood group | 9. age | 13. sickness record |
| 2. intelligence | 6. marital status | 10. sex | 14. family background |
| 3. personality | 7. qualifications | 11. hobbies | 15. astrological sign |
| 4. experience | 8. handwriting | 12. references | 16. contacts & connections |

37 🗣️👂 **Listen to the conversation in the SRT recruitment agency. Underline the correct information in the notes below.**

SRT

Name: Miss / Ms Ruby Tuesday
Qualifications: none / MA Philosophy
Interests: computers / cooking
Ideal job: selling hamburgers / she doesn't know!

b) 🗣️👂 Listen to the conversation again. Tick the advice that Davina gives to Ruby. Do you agree with Davina's advice? What would you say to Ruby?

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Write a longer CV. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5. Buy a smart suit. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. Study philosophy. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 6. Buy some fashionable earrings. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. Get a qualification. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 7. Have a haircut. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Improve your appearance. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 8. Arrive for interviews on time. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

38 🗣️👂 **Work in pairs. A friend of yours has some problems at work. Give your friend some advice. Use the following structures:**

Why don't you ...? I think you should ...

1. My boss never listens to my ideas.
2. I have a new job and no one talks to me in the office.
3. I want to take a day off next Friday and I don't want to tell my boss.
4. My boss is angry with me because I am late every day.
5. I have too much work to do and I'm feeling really stressed.

b) 🗣️👂 Work in pairs. Take it in turns to interview each other, using the questions. Give your partner some career advice.

1. What do you do now?
2. What qualifications do you have?
3. What are you good at? (organizing, working with people, etc.)
4. What are you interested in? (music, sport, etc.)
5. What is important for you in a job? (money, travel, working regular hours, etc.)
6. What kind of job would you like to do most?

c) Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1. Many film stars have very different **jobs/works** before they start their acting **career/jobs**.
2. I hate my **career/work** at a shop, but I need a **job/work**.
3. Brad

Pitt had a *career/job* as a dancing chicken outside a restaurant before his *career/job* as an actor. 4. I am thinking of a *career/work* in the school as I can't find a *job/work* in the university.

39 🎧👂 Listen about a company that sells dreams and answer the questions.

1. What's the name of the holiday company? 2. Who's the company manager? 3. How much do the holidays cost? 4. What are the manager's comments about normal jobs? 5. Is the company successful? 6. What are the most popular jobs?

40 🗒️ Choose a profession and describe it according to the plan.

Plan

1. necessity
2. outside/inside
3. socializing (animals/people/computers)
4. limits (weight/wage)
5. appearance (top model)
6. character
7. education (college/school/institute/university)
8. promotion
9. duties
10. average salary
11. advantages and disadvantages
12. attitude

41 Fill in the gaps with appropriate prepositions if needed.



1. I'm afraid he isn't _____ the office right now. He is _____ home, because he is sick. 2. I never drive _____ my work. I often go _____ work _____ bus. 3. Why don't you listen _____ clever doctors? 4. My colleague is fond _____ skating. 5. I'm sorry, but she is busy _____ the moment. 6. I don't like when my boss calls _____ me _____ Sundays. 7. I always have breakfast _____ 9 o'clock _____ the morning. 8. Queen Elisabeth II was born _____ London _____ 1926. 9. Do you want to go _____ the shop _____ work? 10. She was _____ the theatre _____ her boyfriend _____ Friday evening. 11. Does Rosa work _____ a hospital? 12. Where were they _____ half past nine _____ last night? 13. I stay _____ bed _____ eleven. 14. Some people work _____ big companies, some work _____ small firms. 15. Nick is a doctor _____ the local hospital. He likes working _____ there. 16. Is Peter _____ home or _____ work? I need to talk _____ him.

42

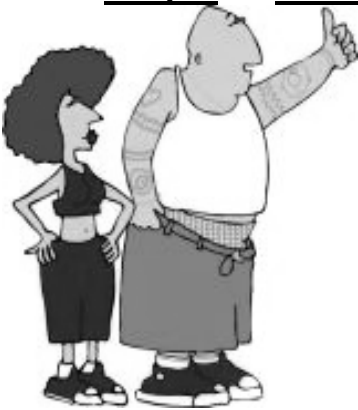
Choose the correct verb form to complete the sentences.



1. I *think/am thinking* he is a policeman and I *believe/am believing* him. 2. She *thinks/is thinking* of divorcing her husband. 3. I *want/am wanting* to go to a single-parents' meeting. 4. I *see/am seeing* what you mean. 5. I *only work/'m only working* there for a couple of months because I'm going abroad in the summer. 6. I *think/'m thinking* of doing a postgraduate degree – what *do you think/are you thinking*? Is it a good idea? 7. She *is/is being* very rude today. 8. I *think/am thinking* this is probably the best violinist. 9. This divorce *costs/is costing* me a fortune. 10. I *dislike/am disliking* people who *don't work/are not working*. 11. I *don't know/am not knowing* if my friend *thinks/is thinking* about starting a new career. 12. He *has/is having* £5 in his pocket. He is out of work. 13. He *sees/is seeing* his doctor next week.

43

Put the verbs in brackets into the necessary tense form: the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.



1. The Queens _____ (*always/quarrel*) with their neighbours! 2. My son _____ (*play*) the guitar. But he _____ (*not/be*) a guitarist. 3. He _____ (*appear*) at the *Fortune Theatre* next week. He works there. 4. I _____ (*see*) the manager this afternoon. 5. – What _____ (*you/think*) about? – I _____ (*think*) about my new job. 6. I _____ (*take*) my wife to the ballet tomorrow. 7. Can you hear what this shy shop-assistant _____ (*say*)? 8. _____ (*he/always/smile*) when he _____ (*see*) his doctor? 9. _____ (*you/like*) this ring? I _____ (*give*) it to my niece for her birthday tomorrow. 10. I _____ (*have*) dinner with my aunt the day after tomorrow. 11. Sam _____ (*always/spend*) his time watching TV. 12. My grandparents _____ (*celebrate*) their golden wedding next week. 13. I _____ (*be*) afraid I _____ (*not/understand*) my husband. 14. Tom and Mary _____ (*get*) married next Sunday. 15. My friend _____ (*fly*) from Spain next month. 16. These workmen are never satisfied; they _____ (*always/complain*). Why don't they just work silently? 17. They _____ (*start*) a new job next Monday. 18. – Why _____ (*you/walk*) so fast today? You _____ (*usually/walk*) quite slowly. – I _____ (*hurry*) because I _____ (*meet*) my mother at 4 o'clock and she _____ (*not/like*) waiting. 19. She _____ (*be*) a pilot. She _____ (*travel*) all over the world. 20. John _____ (*go*) to work at seven every day. 21. I _____ (*consider*) accepting that job. 22. My sister _____ (*wait*) patiently for her exam results. 23. – How _____ (*you/get*) to work as a rule? – I _____ (*usually/go*) by bus but tomorrow I _____ (*go*) by car.



44

Translate into English.

1. Хто твій батько за професією? Він механік, чи не так? Чим займається твій дідусь? 2. Моя мама – відомий адвокат. Зараз вона в офісі. 3. Мій батько – інженер. Він дуже хороший інженер. Зараз він на заводі. 4. Моя двоюрідна сестра зараз працює продавчиною у маленькій крамниці, а збирається стати менеджером по збуту. 5. Мій брат – також студент. Він підробляє секретарем. Він збирається займатись під-



приємницькою діяльністю. 6. Мій дядько зі сторони тата – відомий митець. Його дружина – перекладач, їх дочка – журналіст. 7. Я працюю в одній страховій компанії. Ось моя візитка, а ось номер мого телефону. 8. Моя дружина – домогосподарка. Вона завжди знаходиться вдома з дітьми. 9. Твоя сестра медсестра? Хто за фахом твій дядько? 10. Моя бабуся – пенсіонерка. Вона хатня господарка. Вона зараз знаходиться вдома.



45

Translate into English.

1. Лінда – студентка медичного університету, вона збирається стати лікарем, але зараз вона працює в лікарні медсестрою, це її підрібіток. В лікарні також працюють багато лікарів: хірурги, окулісти, терапевти, стоматологи та багато інших. 2. Мій дядько – бухгалтер, а тітка – архітектор. Їх син – кравець. Він хоче стати дизайнером. 3. Він професор в університеті. 4. Чому всі дівчата мріють стати моделями? 5. Яка професія найкраща? 6. Ми п'ємо чай та їмо цукерки та тістечка від шеф-повара. 7. Чи хоче твій двоюрідний брат стати пожежником? 8. Сім'я Сміт дуже багата, у них навіть є свій водій. 9. Художники та дизайнери зазвичай мають багату уяву та великий талант. 10. Талановиті дипломати стають міністрами, а, можливо, й президентами. 11. Я хочу стати механіком, тому що обожаю автомобілі. 12. Неважливо, чи ти репортер, чи журналіст, чи просто диктор телебачення, головне – це вміти красиво та правильно розмовляти. 13. Краще бути танцюристом чи співаком? 14. Перекладач це



важлива професія? **15.** Вчителі завжди зайняті тим, що або перевіряють тести, або їх придумують. **16.** Чи є у вас вдома дворецький? **17.** Бути продавцем квітів – дуже приємно, адже ти завжди поряд із красивими трояндами та ромашками, тюльпанами та фіалками. **18.** Нам потрібен садівник, щоб доглядати за квітами та деревами в нашому саду. **19.** Косметолог – це людина, яка робить жінок чарівними та привабливими.



46

Translate into English using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.

1. – Ти вмієш працювати з комп'ютером? – Ні, але я вчусь. Моя старша сестра вчить мене. **2.** – Ким працює твоя мати? – Вона – лікар, але зараз вона не працює. **3.** – Ганно, тебе до телефону. Дзвонить твій менеджер. – Скажи, що я не можу підійти. **4.** – Він не бачить, що я на нього дивлюся. Він уважно читає газету. – А хто це сидить поруч із ним? – Той, хто переглядає папери? – Так. – Це його брат Том. Він працює разом зі мною. **5.** Не заходьте до аудиторії! Студенти пишуть контрольну. **6.** – Де Арнольд? – У нього зараз урок французької. У нього завжди урок у цей час. **7.** – Тобі подобається твоя нова робота? – Я її ненавиджу. **8.** Марія добре співає, а її брат чудово танцює. **9.** Його батько працює по 12 годин на добу, оскільки він – годувальник у сім'ї. **10.** Кожного дня Лін встає о шостій ранку, вдягається, снідає, виходить з дому, приходить до офісу і починає працювати. **11.** Не рухайся, фотограф уже знімає тебе. **12.** – Я не бачу, що ви пишете. – Я пишу листа моєму двоюрідному брату, який живе в Москві. Ми великі друзі й часто пишемо один одному. Зараз він працює над своєю дипломною роботою. **13.** Я бачу двох студентів і чую їх голоси, але не розумію, якою мовою вони розмовляють. Очевидно, це якась східна мова, а я не знаю східних мов. **14.** Цей перекладач, звичайно, дуже гарно розмовляє англійською, але мені важко розуміти його, так як він говорить дуже швидко, а я не досить добре знаю мову. **15.** Що ви стоїте в дверях? Проходьте, ми з колегою по роботі якраз п'ємо чай. Випийте з нами чашку. **16.** – Ти розумієш про що говорить викладач? – Я його погано чую. **17.** Моя мама працює вчителем у школі. Вона досить струнка та гарна, завжди елегантна та вишукана. Вона має добре і ніжне серце. **18.** Якщо ти хочеш бути хорошим бухгалтером, ти повинен бути уважним, серйозним, чесним, працьовитим, розумним, терпеливим. **19.** Мій старший брат закінчив університет і зараз працює економістом. Давид вже одружений, він – люблячий і добрий батько. **20.** Мій племінник мріє стати пілотом та керувати величезним літаком. А ким ти хочеш стати?

V. WEDDINGS

GRAMMAR:

- The Past Simple Tense
- The *used to do* construction
- The Past Continuous Tense

Vocabulary

to make sb's acquaintance; to make the acquaintance of sb; to get acquainted with sb	(по)знайомитися з кимось
to fall in love with sb	закохатися в когось
to be head over ears in love with sb	бути закоханим в когось по вуха
to dote on sb	кохати до когось безтями
to be blind to one's faults	не бачити чиїсь недоліки
to care for sb	подобатися, любити когось
to court sb	залицятися до когось
to go out with sb; to date sb	зустрічатися з кимось
to hug	обіймати
to kiss	цілувати
to adore	обожнювати
to fancy	подобатися
to confide	довіряти
a date	побачення
a passing acquaintance; a casual acquaintance	випадкова зустріч
a passing fancy	пристрасть; примха, яка пройде
an infatuation	пристрасна закоханість, засліплення
a love affair	інтрижка
platonic love	платонічне кохання
love to distraction	шалене кохання
a steady	постійний друг чи подружка
a boyfriend / a girlfriend	друг / подружка
to propose; to pop the question (to)	пропонувати руку і серце
to accept one's proposal	прийняти чиюсь пропозицію
to turn sb down; to reject sb	відмовити комусь
to be engaged to sb	бути зарученим із кимось
an engagement	заручини
to announce one's engagement	оголосити про чиїсь заручини
to marry for love	одружитися через кохання
to marry for money; to marry money	одружитися за розрахунком

a love match	одруження по коханню
a young couple	молода пара
a stag party; a stag night	холостяцька вечірка
a hen party; a hen night	дівич-вечір
a white wedding	весільна церемонія (де наречена в білому)
newly-weds; just married	молодята
a bride; a fiancée	наречена
a bridegroom; a fiancé	наречений
a maid of honour / a best man	подружка нареченої / шафер
a wedding	весілля
a wedding ceremony	весільна церемонія
to have a civil ceremony (a marriage) at the Registry Office	засвідчувати шлюб у Рагсі
a wedding reception	весільне торжество
a toast master; a master of ceremonies	тамада
to marry sb/ to be married to sb / to get married to sb	одружуватися з кимось / бути одруженим з кимось / одружитися
to marry in church	вінчатися в церкві
a church service	церковна служба
a wedding vow	подружня обітниця
to start a family	заводити сім'ю
a marriage certificate	свідоцтво про шлюб
an illegal marriage; a civil marriage; a common-law marriage	громадянський шлюб
a bridecake	коровай
a wedding ring	обручка
to go on a honeymoon	поїхати в медовий місяць
a honeymoon couple	пара, яка щойно одружилася та проводить медовий місяць
to fall out of love with sb	розлюбити когось
to hate; to loathe	ненавидіти
to drift apart; to split up; to separate	розійтися
to divorce / to get divorced	розлучатися / розлучитися
a divorcé / a divorcée	розлучений / розлучена
a bachelor / a bachelor girl	холостяк / холостячка
a confirmed bachelor	закоренілий холостяк
a bachelor's wife	ідеальна жінка, "мрія холостяка"
a spinster; an old maid	стара діва
a widower / a widow	вдівець / вдова

single	одинак(чка); неодружений(на)
a single parent family	неповна сім'я
a separated couple	пара, що розійшлася

1 Read and translate the text. Discuss it with your groupmates.

Weddings

Weddings are associated with many traditions. The date of the wedding is very important. May is traditionally unlucky for weddings. But today many young people marry between Easter and May.



For every bride her wedding dress is very important. At most weddings brides get married in white. People think that many other colours are unlucky, for example, green, yellow and red, but a bride can be dressed in blue. They say that a bride's dress must have "something old and something new". "Old" means the past, "new" means the future. Even a modern bride will not wear her dress before the wedding. The groom mustn't see her before the ceremony in the wedding dress. The bride can't try on her veil at the same time as the dress. Many brides put it on for the first time on the day of the wedding. Some brides even believe that a wedding dress mustn't be finished until the wedding morning.



An important thing is a wedding cake. Today this cake is first cut by the bride. They say that pieces of the cake bring good luck.

2 Translate the following words.

Сучасна весільна сукня, майбутнє весілля, пов'язано з пасхою, важлива традиція, одягати вуаль (фату), нещасливий шлюб, приносити удачу, різати пиріг, приміряти весільну сукню, минуле, означати, вірити, закінчувати церемонію, наречений та наречена, день весілля, одружуватися.



3 Answer the following questions.

1. When do many young people marry in Britain?
2. What colour can brides be dressed in?
3. What are unlucky colours for the brides to wear?
4. What are traditional groom's colours?
5. What months are unlucky for weddings?
6. What are the important components of the bride's dress?
7. Can the groom see the wedding dress before the ceremony?
8. Who must cut the wedding cake?

Read and translate the text. Then transform it into *the Past Simple* tense (make logical changes where necessary).

Dating

Any **love story** is always romantic, at least in the beginning. Young people usually **get acquainted** somewhere in a public place (in a café, in the street, in a shop, in a park etc.). These days the Internet is getting more and more popular and it's quite usual to **meet your destiny** chatting with someone completely unknown. A **casual acquaintance** may result in **love to distraction**. Some people may know each other, work or study together and only after say 10 years suddenly **fall in love with** each other. They usually say they do not believe in **love at first sight**. **Love is blind** and many young people **are head over ears in love** after the first **date**. They meet every day, **hug** and **kiss** and can't imagine a single day without each other. They are happy and live in their own world. They **are blind to** their steady's **faults**.

Marriage and Wedding

It all starts with a **proposal**. Traditionally the man **goes down on one knee to pop the question**.

If he receives a "yes", the couple **are engaged**. So they **announce their engagement**. It is customary for the man to buy his **fiancée an engagement ring**, most commonly a diamond ring. **Engagements** can last for years, and if neither of the couple **breaks off the engagement**, the next step is **marriage**.

Planning the Wedding

Most **weddings** in the UK and Ukraine take the form of either a **civil ceremony**, conducted at **the Registry Office** where the newly-weds receive a **marriage certificate** or a **traditional white wedding**, held in a church. (There are also other ceremonies for different religions.) If the couple chooses a **church service**, the planning can become quite complex. At first they have to book the church, to choose and arrange flowers and so on. Other arrangements (for both traditional and civil) are to **draw up a guest list**, send out **invitations**, book a **reception venue** (for after the ceremony), choose **bridesmaids** (the girls who traditionally accompany the bride in the church) and the **best man** (the bridegroom's friend who accompanies him to the ceremony), buy the wedding dress, arrange the **honeymoon** (the holiday after the wedding), **compile a wedding list** (a list of presents that guests can choose to buy the couple) and of course, to select the **wedding rings**. Ah, by the way, shortly before their **wedding ceremony** it is the very time to have a **stag party** and a **hen party** to celebrate "the last night of freedom" or merely to spend time with their friends (boys separately from girls), who are often at the **wedding party** afterwards.

The Big Day

The **groom** and the **best man** arrive at the church first, and then the guests arrive. Last to arrive is the **bride**, normally dressed in a long white **wedding**

dress with a **train** (material from the dress that covers the floor behind her), her face covered in a **veil**, carrying a **bouquet of flowers**, and accompanied by a couple of bridesmaids in matching dresses. Usually the bride's father **walks her down the aisle** until they reach the **priest/vicar** at the **altar**. The church organ plays **the Wedding March**, and the guests **rise to their feet** to watch the procession. Once they reach the altar, the bride stands with the groom, and the **service** begins. The service lasts for about half an hour, and contains **readings** (extracts from the Bible) and a couple of **hymns** (religious songs). The priest always asks if there are any **objections to the marriage** (someone can **speak or forever hold their peace** = never have the opportunity again to object), and at the end of the service, the couple **exchange rings and are proclaimed "man and wife"**. At that point, the groom is allowed to **kiss** his wife. The guests leave and the couple then **sign the marriage register**. When they come out of the church, the guests often throw **confetti** (small pieces of coloured paper), and the photographer takes various formal photographs.

Next in the big day is the **reception**, which is often a formal lunch in a hotel. After lunch there are various **speeches**. The bride's father normally gives a speech, then the best man gives a speech (which is often a funny speech designed to embarrass the groom), and the bridegroom and/or the bride give a short speech to thank their guests. Some couples also arrange an **evening reception**, and hire a disco or band to play music for their friends. At the end of the day, the **happy couple** traditionally **leave on honeymoon**.

5

Give the English equivalents.



Дружити з кимось, знайомитись, кохати, зустрічатись з хлопцем/дівчиною, побачення, освідчуватись, залицятись, наречений, наречена, заручатись, заручини, оголошувати про заручини, одружуватись, одружуватись по коханню, шлюб за розрахунком, вінчатись в церкві, засвідчувати шлюб у Рагсі, молодята, обручка, список гостей, весільна сукня, холостяк, свідоцтво про одруження, стара діва, розлучитись, вдівець/вдова, медовий місяць, весілля.

6

Explain the difference between:

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. to be fond of and to be in love; | 7. to divorce and to get divorced; |
| 2. a mother and a mother-in-law; | 8. a fiancé and a fiancée; |
| 3. to marry for love and to marry for money; | 9. a cake and a wedding cake; |
| 4. a bachelor's wife and a bachelor girl; | 10. a stag party and a hen party; |
| 5. to court sb and to go out with sb; | 11. to separate and to divorce; |
| 6. an engagement and a wedding party; | 12. a date and a meeting. |

7

Give the equivalents to the following.

1. A woman on the day of her marriage. _____ 2. What a woman calls the man she is engaged to. _____ 3. A woman whose husband died. _____ 4. At a wedding, the bridegroom's friend. _____ 5. The cake people prepare for a wedding. _____ 6. A person at a wedding party who organizes entertainment. _____ 7. The first month after a wedding. _____

8

a) Read the words with **-ed** and write which group has /t/, /d/ or /ɪd/ sounds.

-ed=	-ed=	-ed=
arrive – arrived	book – booked	want – wanted
change – changed	check – checked	land – landed
show – showed	look – looked	wait – waited
try – tried	walk – walked	
	ask – asked	

b) Underline the word where **-ed** is pronounced /ɪd/.

- | | | | | |
|------------|----------|---------|----------|-----------|
| 1. booked | stopped | checked | wanted | walked |
| 2. painted | whistled | arrived | turned | travelled |
| 3. asked | slurped | waited | looked | worked |
| 4. called | hardened | played | landed | listened |
| 5. danced | jumped | watched | helped | started |
| 6. arrived | loved | decided | followed | lived |

c) How do you pronounce the **-ed** of these verbs? Listen and check.

- 1) ask _____, hate _____, need _____, smile _____, stay _____, talk _____.
 2) work _____, watch _____, play _____, hate _____, start _____, end _____.
 3) pack _____, open _____, watch _____, want _____, end _____.

9

Listen and repeat the examples. Translate the sentences.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| + I <i>arrived</i> early. | - I <i>didn't arrive</i> early. |
| You <i>finished</i> the book. | You <i>didn't finish</i> the book. |
| He <i>wanted</i> a coffee. | He <i>didn't want</i> a coffee. |
| The film <i>ended</i> at 7 o'clock. | The film <i>didn't end</i> at 7 o'clock. |
| We <i>studied</i> Spanish at school. | We <i>didn't study</i> Spanish at school. |
| You <i>worked</i> late. | You <i>didn't work</i> late. |
| They <i>stopped</i> at a café. | They <i>didn't stop</i> at a café. |
- ? *Did you watch* TV yesterday? ✓ Yes, I *did*. ✗ No, I *didn't*.
Did she walk to work? Yes, she *did*. No, she *didn't*.
Did they play tennis? Yes, they *did*. No, they *didn't*.

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|--------------------------|---------------|-------|--------------------------|
| 1. stay | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> | 9. make | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. buy | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> | 10. find | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. rent | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> | 11. learn | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. say | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> | 12. change | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. like | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> | 13. live | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. speak | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> | 14. meet | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7. can/can't | _____/_____ | <input type="checkbox"/> | 15. break | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8. start | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> | 16. come back | _____ | <input type="checkbox"/> |

b) 🎧 Translate the verbs. Write the Past Simple of them. Listen and check. Listen again and repeat.

is _____; are _____; begin _____; break _____; buy _____; can _____; come _____; do _____; drink _____; drive _____; eat _____; find _____; get _____; give _____; go _____; have _____; hear _____; know _____; learn _____; leave _____; lose _____; make _____; meet _____; pay _____; read _____; say _____; see _____; send _____; sit _____; sleep _____; speak _____; swim _____; take _____; tell _____; think _____; wear _____; write _____.

15 Circle the correct answer.

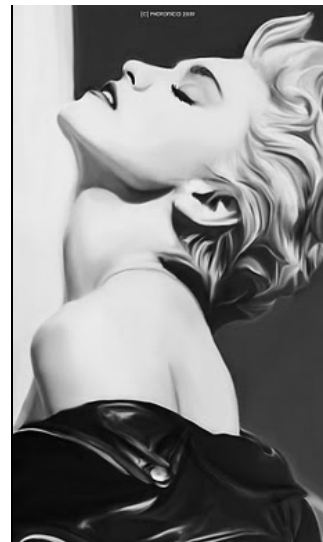
1. The wedding was *last night/yesterday night*. 2. My son was born *ago two years/two years ago*. 3. They travelled to the USA *last month/the last month*. 4. He phoned me *last morning/yesterday morning*. 5. The plane landed *two hours ago/two ago hours*. 6. Marc arrived in England *the last July/last July*. 7. I saw my parents-in-law *before two weeks/two weeks ago*. 8. Isabella booked the tickets *yesterday afternoon/last afternoon*. 9. She phoned him *yesterday/the yesterday*. 10. She saw him *ago three weeks/three weeks ago*. 11. We watched TV *last night/yesterday night*. 12. The ceremony was *in last April/last April*.

16 Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple tense.

Madonna – Her Life Story

Madonna Louise Veronica Ciccone _____ (*be*) born on 16.08.1958 in Michigan, USA. Her mother _____ (*die*) when Madonna _____ (*be*) six. Madonna _____ (*study*) acting at college and then she _____ (*go*) to live in New York in 1977. When she _____ (*arrive*) there, she only _____ (*have*) 35 dollars! Before she _____ (*become*) a singer, she _____ (*work*) as a dancer and a model.

She _____ (*make*) her first record in 1982 and in 1983 she _____ (*have*) her first hit with *Holiday*. She _____ (*meet*) actor Sean Penn at a party in Los Angeles, and they _____ (*get*) married in 1985.



The marriage _____ (*not/be*) a happy one, and they _____ (*divorce*) in 1989. Madonna _____ (*also/want*) to be a movie star and she _____ (*make*) *Evita (the story of Eva Peron)* in 1996. In 1998 she _____ (*meet*) Guy Richie, a British film director, at her friend Sting's house. On December 22nd 2000, they _____ (*get*) married in Scotland. In 2008 they _____ (*divorce*). Madonna has four children, and now she lives in London.

17

Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple tense.

1. My mother _____ (*live*) in Greece when she was a girl. 2. The children _____ (*go*) to the cinema last Saturday. 3. Mike Gabriel _____ (*study*) in Scotland. 4. Their father _____ (*work*) in a bank until he retired. 5. The lesson _____ (*start*) at 3 p.m. 6. I think he _____ (*leave*) by the 9.56 train. 7. Last year Ann _____ (*pass*) the exams at the college. 8. My grandfather _____ (*die*) 3 years ago. 9. When a child, Alice _____ (*eat*) a lot of sweets. 10. Last night Alan _____ (*arrive*) home at half past twelve. He _____ (*work*) overtime. 11. Jill _____ (*buy*) a new car two weeks ago. 12. Katy _____ (*meet*) her husband in Italy three years ago. 13. Several years ago my family _____ (*go*) on holiday to France. They _____ (*enjoy*) their time there. 14. My parents _____ (*come*) for dinner last Sunday. 15. Ben _____ (*break*) his leg last summer. 16. I _____ (*know*) the answers to all the questions. 17. We _____ (*pay*) \$20 for the dinner. 18. I _____ (*say*) hello to my teacher in the street. 19. Lily _____ (*buy*) a new coat yesterday. 20. The children _____ (*get up*) late this morning.

18

a) Give the Past Simple of the following verbs. Listen and check. Listen again and repeat.

1. go _____ 2. see _____ 3. eat _____ 4. drink _____ 5. have _____

b) Use the verbs from a) to complete the texts.

- Last year I _____ to India on holiday. It was fantastic. I went to new Delhi and Agra. I _____ the famous Taj Mahal. I _____ good Indian food and _____ chai, Indian tea. I _____ a great time.

- Last year I _____ to New York in July. On the 4th of July there was a big party to celebrate Independence Day. I *not* _____ the parades because my friends _____ a barbecue. I _____ hamburgers and _____ beer. It was a good day.

c) Rewrite the sentences in the Past Simple. Change as many words as you need. Listen, check and repeat the sentences.

1. Every year, Michael and Violeta go to Poland for a holiday. 2. They go by plane from London. 3. They go to Warsaw. 4. They see their family and friends. 5. They drink Polish beer. 6. They eat Polish food. 7. They have a good time.

d) Listen to Peter describing his holiday. Where was he? Give the details. Write or speak about your real or imaginary holiday in the similar manner. Use the vocabulary from a), b) and c).

19

a) Write negative sentences using the words in brackets.

1. Mark wanted a cup of coffee. (*tea*) – *He didn't want a tea.*
2. We watched the film on my laptop. (*on TV*)
3. We waited at the station. (*at the cinema*)
4. They opened their dictionaries. (*their books*)
5. Emma looked at her watch. (*the son*)
6. We closed the door. (*the window*)
7. The film ended at 10 o'clock. (*10:30*)
8. The teacher talked to my mother. (*my father*)
9. We met in the bar. (*pub*)

b) Complete the sentences with a verb, first in the positive then in the negative.

book paint show study help work walk play

1. Yesterday Sam _____ to work, but he _____ home.
2. I _____ French at school, but I _____ German and Spanish.
3. The teacher _____ me with the exercise, but she _____ my friend.
4. Bill _____ basketball when he was young, but he _____ football.
5. The secretary _____ a table for lunch, but she _____ a taxi.
6. We _____ the living room, but we _____ the bedroom.
7. The shop assistant _____ last Saturday, but she _____ on Sunday.
8. I _____ the photos to my sister, but I _____ them to my brother.

20

Make all possible questions to these sentences.



Model:

We lived in Kyiv in 1996.

- **General question:** Did we live in Kyiv in 1996?
- **Alternative questions:**
 - Did we or they live in Kyiv in 1996?
 - Did we live or work in Kyiv in 1996?
 - Did we live in or near Kyiv in 1996?
 - Did we live in Kyiv or in Lviv in 1996?
 - Did we live in Kyiv in 1996 or in 2005?
- **Disjunctive question:** We lived in Kyiv in 1996, **didn't we?**
- **Special questions:**
 - Who **lived** in Kyiv in 1996?
 - What **did** we do in Kyiv in 1996?
 - Where **did** we live in 1996?
 - When **did** we live in Kyiv?



1. Peter bought his favourite newspaper in the morning.
2. My friends came to see me yesterday.
3. Linda went to Paris last week.
4. They told everything about their wedding.
5. My husband worked as a translator 2 years ago.
6. She wrote him a letter on Monday.

21 a) Make general questions in the Past Simple using the prompts below.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. you / clean / car? | 6. she / see / film? |
| 2. they / often / play / Sundays? | 7. Shakespeare / write / Romeo and Juliet? |
| 3. he / watch / TV / yesterday? | 8. they / go shopping / two days ago? |
| 4. you / go out / last night? | 9. you / use / Internet? |
| 5. he / go / London? | 10. wife / prepare / dinner? |

b)  Listen to the questions, write them down and give true answers.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____

22 Make alternative questions to the underlined fragments.

1. I went out after work. 2. I watched TV. 3. Ann used the Internet to find the necessary information. 4. My son did his English homework. 5. They got home by bus. 6. We had fish for lunch yesterday. 7. I finished work at 5 on Tuesday. 8. We ate Italian food yesterday. 9. Richard went to Spain. 10. He saw his friends last night. 11. I had a good time. 12. I wanted to see you yesterday.

23 Make disjunctive questions to the sentences.

1. The girl listened to the radio last night. 2. Last year the Smiths went to London. 3. I didn't watch the concert. 4. Ann and John arrived late for work last week. 5. They didn't play together. 6. Andy saw me two days ago. 7. Peter wanted to see me yesterday. 8. The concert didn't start at 8 p.m. 9. The man went to the pub with his friends. 10. The class started at 10 o'clock. 11. They didn't have a good time.

24 Make up special questions to the underlined parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. She saw <u>your</u> brother. | 11. <u>My friends</u> visited me <u>at the weekend</u> . |
| 2. We heard <u>bad news</u> . | 12. Tom and Nancy flew <u>to New York</u> . |
| 3. <u>He</u> slept till 10:00. | 13. He broke <u>his arm</u> on Monday. |
| 4. They drank <u>all the milk</u> . | 14. <u>My</u> mother chose this house. |
| 5. John <u>read</u> the letter. | 15. They liked <u>that</u> place. |
| 6. We liked <u>that</u> hotel. | 16. Paul got up at 7 o'clock <u>in the morning</u> . |
| 7. He went <u>to the park</u> . | 17. She said " <u>Good bye</u> ". |
| 8. <u>Alice</u> printed <u>the text</u> . | 18. <u>Her</u> mother <u>worked</u> at school. |
| 9. She loved <u>him</u> . | 19. We bought <u>a new flat</u> . |
| 10. <u>They</u> wrote <u>a report</u> . | 20. They went to France <u>in July</u> . |

25 Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple tense. Make questions to get some information about John Lennon from your partner.

John Lennon



John Lennon _____ (*be*) born in 1941 and _____ (*live*) with his uncle in Liverpool. When he _____ (*be*) 12, he _____ (*learn*) to play the harmonica but he _____ (*not/want*) to be a musician – he _____ (*want*) to be a millionaire! He _____ (*be*) 18 years old when his mother _____ (*die*) in a car accident. As a teenager, he _____ (*create*) his first group, and they _____ (*be*) called *the Quarrymen*. He _____ (*meet*) Paul McCartney in 1955 and they _____ (*start*) *the Beatles* in 1960.

John _____ (*marry*) Cynthia in 1962 and they _____ (*have*) a son and _____ (*name*) him Julian. Later, John and Cynthia _____ (*divorce*) and in November in 1966 John _____ (*meet*) Yoko Ono in an art gallery in London. On March 20th 1969, John and Yoko _____ (*get*) married and on the following year John _____ (*leave*) *the Beatles* and _____ (*create*) *the Plastic Ono*. They _____ (*have*) their first hit with *Imagine* in 1971. In 1975, John and Yoko _____ (*go*) to New York and _____ (*have*) a son by name Sean. John Lennon _____ (*be*) shot outside his home in New York on December 8th 1980.

26

Put the word did in the correct place in the questions.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. What you do yesterday? | 6. They go on holiday? |
| 2. You see Marco last night? | 7. Where you go last summer? |
| 3. She phone you this morning? | 8. You hear that? |
| 4. What time he leave? | 9. They enjoy the trip? |
| 5. When you start learning English? | 10. Why you do it to me? |

27

Underline the incorrect word(s) in the following sentences. Write in the correct one(s).



1. When you bought this car? 2. I didn't went on holiday last year. 3. – Did you see Jane at the party? – Yes, I saw. 4. I'm sorry, what did you said? 5. Did you had a nice weekend? 6. Who did you met at the wedding party? 7. What time did you got up this morning? 8. Why didn't he came on time? 9. Stephen and Martin not came to work yesterday. 10. When started you to play golf? 11. How much did you paid for the wedding dress? 12. We went to the shopping center yesterday, but we didn't bought nothing. 13. What time did you had lunch? 14. What time he started work last week? 15. Did you be interested in sport when you were younger? 16. Our honeymoon didn't be in August. 17. Did you enjoyed the film? 18. I didn't born in England. 19. Where did you be? 20. He meted his wife in the cinema.

28

🔊 Listen to the questions in the chart. What two words are missing?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. What time / get up? | 6. / go shopping? |
| 2. / have breakfast? What / have? | 7. / have dinner at home? What / have? |
| 3. / go to work (school)? | 8. / watch TV? What / watch? |
| 4. Where / have lunch? What / have? | 9. What time / go to bed? |
| 5. / go to the gym? | |

29

🔊 Look at the question words in A and the answers in C. Choose the correct question from B. Listen and check.

A	B	C
1. <i>Where</i>		To the shops.
2. <i>When</i>		This morning.
3. <i>Who</i>	did you buy?	A friend from work.
4. <i>How</i>	did you go?	We drove.
5. <i>Whose car</i>	did you go with?	Joe's.
6. <i>Why</i>	did you go in?	To buy some new clothes.
7. <i>What</i>	did you pay?	A new jacket.
8. <i>How many</i>		Only one.
9. <i>Which one</i>		The black leather one.
10. <i>How much</i>		180.99 pounds.

30

Translate into English.

1. Анна принесла додому кошеня. Воно було таке миле. Чому в мене в дитинстві не було домашнього улюбленця? 2. Вчора купив авто. Витратив багато грошей. Навіщо я це зробив? 3. На весільній вечірці ми співали, танцювали та веселилися. 4. У вівторок я впав з дерева, у середу загубив паспорт, а в п'ятницю я всю ніч не спав. 5. Ти чув шум хвилину тому? 6. Минулого тижня Лінда нічого не читала, вона погано себе почувала. 7. – Скільки ви вчора випили вина? – Я нічого не пив, я взагалі не п'ю. 8. Ми не зрозуміли один одного. Що вона мала на увазі? Я нічого не зрозумів. 9. Вони провели літо в Криму, хоча мріяли про Іспанію. 10. Минулого року я кожного ранку бігав у парку. 11. Я не знайшла свою коричневу сумку. Я не знала, де вона. Як правило, я тримаю її в коридорі, але вчора її там не було. 12. Коли мій молодший брат ходив до школи, він знав багато цікавих історій та розповідав їх мені. 13. Восени стало холодно і ми поїхали до Італії. 14. Хто тобі розповів про новий фільм? Моїй мамі він не сподобався. Я також нічого не зрозуміла. 15. В дитинстві я мріяла про велосипед, але батьки купили мені ведмедика.



a) Read the introduction to the article and translate it into Ukrainian.

In our weekly “test” single people who are looking for a partner ask their mother and their best friend to help. The mother chooses one partner and the best friend chooses another. The test is to see who can choose the best partner!

This week’s single man is Richard Taylor, a 26-year-old musician from Southampton. His mother Meg chooses one girl and his best friend Danny chooses another. Then Richard goes on a date with each girl. Which girl does he prefer? Who knows him better, his mother or his best friend? Who chooses the right girl for him?



“I usually work in England but sometimes I work abroad. When I am free, I like going to the cinema and eating in nice restaurants. I’m not very sporty and I don’t do any exercise, but at least I don’t smoke.

I think I’m open and friendly, I get on well with most people, but sometimes I’m shy. For example, I don’t like going to parties. I prefer to meet friends individually or in small groups.

I like intelligent, funny women who love music and can be good listeners. Physically I prefer women with dark hair who are not taller than me.

I’m sure my friend Danny knows my taste because we often talk about girlfriends. I don’t usually talk to my family about that kind of thing. My mum always says that I look for the wrong kind of girl but that’s what mothers always say!”

b) Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Correct the false ones.

1. Richard sometimes travels with his job.
2. He is friendly and extrovert.
3. He likes music and parties.
4. He prefers women who are shorter than him.
5. He likes women who talk a lot.
6. He doesn’t talk to his family about girls.
7. His mother doesn’t think he’s good at choosing girlfriends.

c) Listen to Richard talking about what happened when he met Claire and Nina. Write down any adjectives or expressions that Richard uses to describe Claire and Nina. Answer the questions below.

- Does he like them? What are the problems?
- Who knows Richard better, his mum or his best friend? Are you surprised?
- Who do you think knows you better, your family or your friends? Why?

32

a) Tim is meeting his girlfriend Judy's parents. He wants to make a good impression. Match Tim's questions to Judy's answers.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>What should I wear?</i> | a. Don't worry, they are nice people! But you shouldn't talk about politics and religion. |
| 2. <i>What time should I arrive?</i> | b. No, you shouldn't. My parents don't drink. |
| 3. <i>Should I bring a bottle of wine?</i> | c. It's not necessary, but my mother loves plants. |
| 4. <i>Should I buy a gift?</i> | d. Your white shirt and the blue tie. |
| 5. <i>What should I talk about with them?</i> | e. About seven o'clock. We eat at half past seven. Don't be late! |

b) Imagine someone wants to make a good impression on your parents. Work in pairs. Act a dialogue and tell your partner how to make a good impression.

33

a) Read and/or listen to the text and then fill in should/shouldn't in the second part. Listen and check.

Every personal or business relationship starts with the first impression. Psychologists say that when you meet someone for the first time, they make an impression on you in less than thirty seconds.

We evaluate another person using **three Vs**: *visual* (how you look, your clothes), *vocal* (your voice) and *verbal* (what you say). When you meet someone for the first time, your body language and your clothes make 93% of a first impression. Only 7% are the words you say.

There is an expression in English: ***You never get a second chance to make a first impression.*** But what makes a good impression on you? Send us your emails. Get us on www.agoodimpression.com

- For me, eye contact. You _____ look at the other person when you meet them. I don't trust a person if he or she doesn't make eye contact. *David Hill, USA*
- You _____ wear clean and neat clothes. A dirty shirt makes a very bad impression, and so do dirty shoes. *Emma Lowry, UK*
- Your physical appearance and body language say a lot about you. Sit up straight. Your body _____ say "I'm a friendly and confident person". *Gill Lauanders, Australia*
- In Canada, you _____ shake a person's hand, man or woman. You _____ kiss them for the first meeting. It's also a good idea to use the other person's first name quickly. It's more friendly. *Michael Dobbs, Canada*
- I think you _____ wear a very long skirt for a first meeting, or an interview. It can give you the wrong first impression. For a man, I think a shirt and tie make a good impression at an interview. *Jennifer Dawson, USA*

- You _____ smile when you meet someone for the first time. A smile is the best introduction. It's friendly. A smile is universal. *Peter Cranford, USA*

b) Answer the questions.

- What are the three Vs? Which V is more important?
- What can a body language say? What can clothes say? Do you agree?
- What do the men say? Are their ideas different from the women's?

34

a) Put the sentences into the correct order. There may be more than one good answer.

- They got married.
- They fell in love.
- Wilma and Carl met at the party.
- He invited her to meet his parents.
- They chatted for a long time.
- They had two children.
- They kissed.
- They got engaged.

b) Look at the four people and discuss the questions. The people are:

- **Vincent Banks** from America.
- **Per Olafson** from Norway.
- **Debbie Grant** from England.
- **Rosa Randeiro** from Spain.



- Who do you think is who? Why?
- Who do you think are husband and wife? Why?
- How do you think they met?

c) Read the introductions to the stories of how they met. What do you think happened next?

Love on the Internet

Nowadays love on the Internet is big business. Millions try to find true love there every day. Per Olafson from Bergen in Norway, and Debbie Grant from Banbury in England, looked for love that way ...

Love in a bottle

Fisherman Vincent Banks from Cape Cod in America couldn't find a wife, so he wrote a letter, put it in a bottle and threw it into the sea. Ten years later and five thousand miles away in Spain, Rosa Randeiro found the bottle on the beach ...

d) Now study the words and listen to the people talking. Were your ideas correct?

- to exchange
- to knock at the door
- a beach
- to be worried
- immediately
- a joke

e) Answer the questions about Per and Debbie, and Vincent and Rosa.

1. When did they meet?
2. Why does Debbie like to chat on the Internet?
3. Where was Vincent's letter? What did it say?
4. Why couldn't Rosa read the letter?
5. Do both couples have children?
6. Who says these sentences? Write P, D, V, R in the boxes.
 - I'm really quite shy.
 - I was very shy.
 - I find it difficult to talk to people face to face.
 - I flew to America and we met face to face.
 - I stood on something.
 - I stood there with some flowers.
 - We chatted on the Internet for a year.
 - We wrote every week for six months.

f) ✎ Imagine you are one of the people. Tell the story of how you met your husband/wife.

g) ✎ Look at the questions. Tell a partner about you and your family.

1. Are you married or do you have a boyfriend/girlfriend? How did you meet?
2. When did your parents or grandparents meet? Where? How?

35

Put each of the following words or phrases in its correct place in the passage below.

Romance and Marriage

date *romantic* *relationship* *approve (of)* *keen (on)*
mature *break off* *drift apart* *attracted (to)* *go out*

Ann was a very **a)** _____ girl who often dreamed of love and marriage. She was especially **b)** _____ to a young man called Michael, who worked in the same office as she did, and he was very **c)** _____ on her too. They became friendly and one day Michael asked her to go out with him. Their first **d)** _____ was a visit to the cinema, and they both enjoyed the evening so much that they decided to **e)** _____ together regularly. Michael was a bit untidy and rather young, and Ann's parents didn't **f)** _____ of him at first, but Ann was a sensible, **g)** _____ girl, and they had confidence in her. For a year or so everything went well, but then somehow they slowly began to **h)** _____ until finally they decided to **i)** _____ their **j)** _____.

36

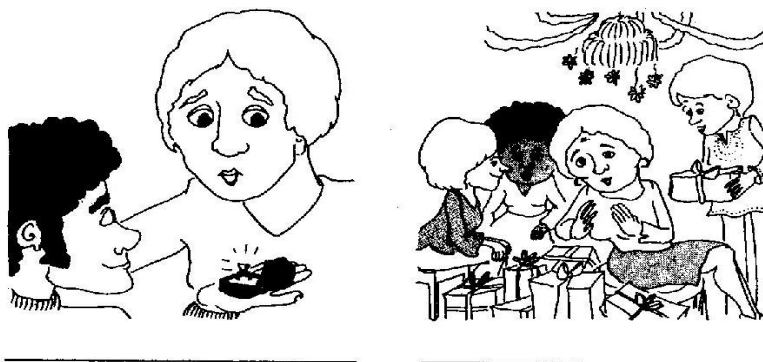
Put each of the following words or phrases in its correct place in the passage below.

bride *engaged* *bridegroom* *consent* *wedding*
civil *reception* *honeymoon* *propose* *toast*

One evening, although he was nervous, Joe decided to a) _____ to his girlfriend, Linda. She accepted his proposal, they became b) _____ and he gave her a ring. After a year they saved enough money to get married (they were both over 18, so they didn't need their parents' c) _____). Some people have a religious ceremony with a priest, but Joe and Linda decided on a d) _____ ceremony at the Registry Office. On the day of their e) _____ Linda, the f) _____, was very calm, but Joe, the g) _____, was nervous. Afterwards, at the h) _____, speeches were made and the guests drank a i) _____ to the happy couple, who finally left for a j) _____ to Spain.

37 With your partner describe what is happening in the pictures. Write a caption to each frame.

Becoming Husbands and Wives



38 Complete the description of English weddings with the words from the box. Then listen to the recording to check your answers.

<i>ceremony</i>	<i>honeymoon</i>	<i>guests</i>
<i>reception</i>	<i>registry office</i>	<i>speech</i>
<i>champagne</i>	<i>wedding cake</i>	<i>party</i>

The _____ usually takes place in a church or a _____. After the ceremony, the couple and their _____ go to the _____, where they drink _____ and eat the _____. Later on, at the wedding meal, the best friend of the groom makes a _____. The married couple often leave the _____ early to go on their _____.

39

a) Listen to Marisa speaking how she spent the previous weekend and answer the questions.

1. When did Kyle and Sue get married?
2. Where did they get married?
3. Was the wedding party romantic?
4. Was the wedding party big?
5. Was there a ceremony at the Registry Office?
6. What kind of restaurant did they have a wedding party in?
7. Who did Marisa meet at the party?
8. What did Marisa and her new friend do?

b) Read the blog and complete the gaps with the verbs in the Past Simple tense.

A Little Party!

John and Julia _____ (*have*) a party at their house last Saturday to celebrate the birth of little Angela. All their family and friends _____ (*come*) and we _____ (*dance*) all evening. The party _____ (*be*) fantastic and Sam, my boyfriend, really _____ (*enjoy*) it. The food _____ (*be*) really nice. I _____ (*eat*) lots of cake and _____ (*drink*) champagne! I _____ (*wear*) a long black dress and everyone _____ (*say*) I _____ (*look*) amazing.

Click here to see photos from the party.



c) Write questions in the Past Simple and answer them according to the information from the blog.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Where / they / go? | 5. What / they / eat? |
| 2. When / they / go? | 6. What / they / drink? |
| 3. What / they / do? | 7. What / they / wear? |
| 4. Who / they / be / with? | 8. What / they / say? |

40

You are at the wedding. Imagine that you are not you but another person at the wedding (the bride, bridegroom, bridesmaid, best friend, mother-in-law, father-in-law, master of ceremonies etc.). Write several sentences describing what you and people around are doing.

I see

I hear

I like

41

🗣️ Describe a wedding that you have been to. Use these questions to prepare what you are going to say.

- Who got married?
- Where and when were the ceremony and the reception?
- What did the bride and groom wear?
- Who did you go with?
- How many guests were there? Who were they?
- Was there any music at the wedding?
- What did you eat and drink?
- Did anyone make a speech? What did they say?
- Did anything interesting or unusual happen?



42

🗣️ Work in pairs. Read about some wedding traditions in Britain and America and discuss these questions.

- Are they the same in your country?
- What wedding traditions do you have in your country?

- ✓ The groom arrives at the wedding before his bride.
- ✓ The bride wears a long white dress and a group of young girls (bridesmaids) follow her into the church.
- ✓ The bride throws the bouquet of flowers in the air and other single women try to catch it. The woman who catches it will be the next to get married.
- ✓ The bride and the groom cut the wedding cake together.
- ✓ After the wedding, the groom carries the bride into their new home.
- ✓ A woman wears her wedding ring on the third finger of the left hand.

43

Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

wedding	ceremony	honeymoon	church	bride
groom	rings	reception	guests	head

- At a traditional Chinese _____, the _____ doesn't wear a white wedding dress, she wears a red one.
- A Swedish bride wears three _____ on her fingers.
- At the _____ after the marriage _____ in Estonia, the _____ takes off his hat and places it on the _____ of an unmarried man. The man will be the next to get married.
- In Ireland, it is traditional for the bride and groom to walk together to the _____ for the religious ceremony.
- In Venezuela, the married couple do not say "goodbye" to their _____ when they leave the reception.
- The most popular place for couples to go on their _____ is Mexico.

44

Choose the correct verb form to complete the sentences.

- A: That's my cousin Emilia on the left. She *talks/is talking* to Pete, my brother's best friend.

B: Why *does she hold/is she holding* all that money?

A: It's a wonderful tradition in my family – the guests *always give/are always giving* money to the bridesmaids.

B: *Do you see/are you seeing* her very often? You *never talk/are never talking* about her.

A: Well, she *doesn't come/isn't coming* to the UK very often. She moved abroad five years ago.

45

🔊 Read the magazine article and put the sentences *a-d* in the gaps *1-4*. Then listen to the recording to check your answers.

a) Marriage is certainly changing.

b) Marriage, said one of my professors at university, belongs to the past.

c) She sounded sure of herself and we all agreed – or, at least, nobody disagreed.

d) The simple fact is that most of us believe that marriage is good for us.

IF YOU ASK ME ... *Sue Carey disagrees with her university professor*

(1) _____ More and more people are living together and having children without getting married, she told us. The number of divorces is increasing all the time. It doesn't matter if you're single or married, she said with a smile of victory. "The prison of marriage belongs to an older generation!"

(2) _____ But now, twenty years later – is marriage dead? You do not need to think about it for long: go to any newsagent and look at the magazines on sale. On the cover of every popular magazine like *Hello!* someone is getting married. Or maybe someone is getting divorced. The stories sell the magazines and in thousands of offices around the world, people are sitting around and looking at the wedding photos of the rich and famous.

(3) _____ In the UK, people are waiting until they are older to get married, but the number of weddings is actually increasing. True, divorces are also going up, but people are getting married again, for a second, third or fourth time.

(4) _____ In the year after university, I went to the weddings of four of my friends. My own (first) marriage was two years later. We want to read about marriage, look at films and photos, and do it ourselves. It appears that we can't get enough of it. Sorry professor, but the conclusion seems clear: marriage is very much alive and well.

46

🗣️ Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- Do you agree that marriage is a thing of the past? Why or why not?
- Is marriage changing in your country? How?
- At what age do people usually get married?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of getting married?

47

Insert the prepositions.

1. Bob is going _____ Lena. 2. Bob and Lena are going _____ together. 3. He was too nervous to ask her _____. 4. She is very fond _____ him. 5. We drank a toast _____ their future happiness. 6. He fell _____ love _____ her at once. 7. He's getting married _____ Liz next month. 8. She's engaged _____ a policeman. 9. His parents don't approve _____ her. 10. Have confidence _____ me! 11. She is married _____ John. 12. The bride must be dressed _____ white. 13. My husband is _____ England.

b) ♡ Insert the prepositions. Listen and check. Translate the sentences.

1. Jane split _____ her boyfriend yesterday. 2. He was crazy _____ her. 3. They were very much _____ love. 4. They had a lot _____ common.

48

Translate into English.

1. Мої батьки побралися 26 років тому. Мій тато, високий широкоплечий брюнет, довго залицявся до симпатичної блондинки – моєї мами. Але заручились вони лише через два роки після знайомства, коли закінчили університет. 2. Анна одразу прийняла пропозицію Андрія, відмовивши багатьом іншим парубкам. Згодом вони святкували розкішне весілля. На Анні була красива біла сукня, а на Андрієві – чорний елегантний костюм. 3. На свій медовий місяць молодята поїхали відпочивати в Крим, адже вони одружились у липні. 4. Мені подобається багато дівчат, але особливо я небайдужий до однієї, яка живе в сусідній квартирі. На жаль, вона має хлопця, і я часто бачу їх разом. Я не знаю, чи це серйозно, чи просто захоплення. 5. Леся пішла в маму, така ж вродлива. Багато хлопців хотіли б зустрітись з нею, але вона всім відмовляє і чекає на свого принца. Їй вже 25, і мама каже: “Дивись, не залишись старою дівою”. 6. Свекруха терпіти не може свою невістку, тому що та не поважає та ненавидить її. Вони погано ладнають, тому що не хочуть піти назустріч одна одній. Так часто буває, коли зустрічаються люди з різними характерами, один, наприклад, впертий та стриманий, а інший запальний і нетерпимий. 7. Марина худа як тріска і дуже мініатюрна. Вона кучерява, тому й носить волосся, заплетене в коси. Їй подобаються кремезні м'язисті хлопці, вище середнього зросту, і вона мріє закохатися та піти на побачення. 8. Часто дівчата не хочуть міняти своє дівоче прізвище після одруження. Через це у них виникають проблеми з родичами зі сторони чоловіка.



49

Paraphrase these sentences to show the actions or states that have now ended with the help of used to.

1. When a student, Caroline worked in a laboratory every Thursday. 2. We often took the train into town until the line was closed. 3. A hundred years ago many people went around on horseback. 4. There was an airfield here before the war; airplanes flew over our heads. 5. On warm days we swam in the river, but it's too dirty to do that now. 6. As a child, I drew and painted pictures. 7. When a boy, I got more exercise than I do now. 8. When I was 7 years old, I loved my neighbor Cynthia. 9. My father told me and my younger brother bedtime stories almost every night. 10. Robert got to the University by metro when he studied in London. 11. When Janet was a child, she had violin lessons for six or seven years. 12. When my daughter was a child, she thought people on television could see her. 13. When we were children, we often visited the funfair. 14. In my childhood I had a parrot. 15. When a teenager, I wore my hair plaited. Now it is bobbed. 16. In my pre-school years I played hide-and-seek with my friends.

50

a) Listen and repeat the dialogue. Pay attention to was and were.

A: Where were you at six o'clock in the evening?

B: I was at work.

A: What were you doing?

B: I was having a meeting with the boss.



b) In pairs, take turns to answer the questions about yesterday.

-Where were you at... 6:00 p.m. 6:30 p.m. 3:00 p.m. 11:00 p.m. lunchtime

-What were you doing?

51

The guests were enjoying the wedding party. Suddenly the fire alarm rang. Use the words in brackets to make sentences saying what each person was doing at that time.

1. Don _____ (*have*) a chat with John. 2. Carol and Dennis _____ (*laugh*). 3. Tom _____ (*make*) a phone call. 4. George _____ (*drink*) champagne. 5. David _____ (*watch*) others dancing. 6. Mary _____ (*talk*) with her friends in the lounge. 7. Martha _____ (*wait*) for her friend. 8. Linda and Paul _____ (*quarrel*). 9. Brenda and her friends _____ (*dance*). 10. John and Ringo _____ (*have*) great fun in the yard. 11. The Whites _____ (*come*) downstairs. 12. The bride and groom _____ (*kiss*).



52

Put the verbs into the correct form, the Past Continuous or the Past Simple.

1. Tom _____ (*take*) a photograph of me while I _____ (*not/look*). 2. We _____ (*not/go out*) because it _____ (*rain*). 3. What _____ (*you/do*) at this time yesterday? 4. When Sid _____ (*be*) young, he _____ (*date*) beautiful girls. 5. When the newly-weds _____ (*arrive*), their guests _____ (*wait*) for them. 6. Ann _____ (*break*) a glass when she _____ (*drink*) wine at the party. 7. Sally _____ (*see*) her former husband when she _____ (*talk*) to her friends. 8. Last night I _____ (*read*) in bed when suddenly I _____ (*hear*) some strange noise. 9. The phone _____ (*still/ring*) when I _____ (*enter*) the room. 10. I _____ (*watch*) TV at home, when someone _____ (*come*) to the door. 11. My mother _____ (*phone*) while I _____ (*cook*) dinner. 12. When I _____ (*walk*) along the street, I _____ (*see*) an old friend of mine. 13. When I _____ (*wake up*), everyone _____ (*look*) at me. 14. Jane _____ (*see*) another guest who _____ (*wear*) exactly the same hat! 15. When I _____ (*look for*) my passport, I _____ (*find*) this old photograph. 16. John _____ (*have*) a bath when the phone _____ (*ring*). He _____ (*get*) out of the bathtub and _____ (*go*) to answer it. 17. When I _____ (*come*) in, they _____ (*sit*) near the fireplace. Mr Pitt _____ (*do*) a crossword puzzle, Mrs Pitt _____ (*knit*), the others _____ (*read*). Mrs Pitt _____ (*smile*) at me and _____ (*say*), "Come and sit down". 18. When I _____ (*arrive*), she _____ (*have*) lunch. 19. While the guests _____ (*dance*) thieves _____ (*break*) into the house and _____ (*steal*) a lot of fur coats. 20. He suddenly _____ (*realize*) that he _____ (*travel*) in the wrong direction.

53

a) 🎧 Listen to Marinette and Henri talking about their photo. Are they still in love?

b) 🎧 Listen again and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

1. They always knew that their photo was famous.
2. Marinette saw the book with their photo in a bookshop.
3. When the photographer took the photo they were laughing.
4. Marinette wanted Henri to stand near her.
5. They didn't know that the photographer was taking their photo.
6. Henri was trying to kiss Marinette.
7. Henri thinks they were arguing about their wedding.
8. They got married a year after the photo.
9. Marinette and Henri work together every day.
10. She says that she and Henri are very similar.



SECTION VI: DAILY ROUTINE

Vocabulary

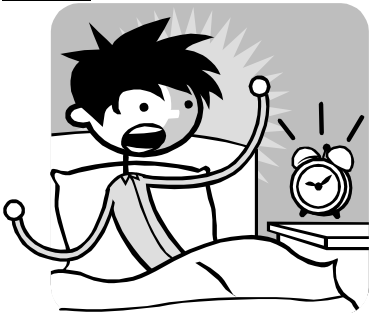
to wake up	прокидатися
to lie in bed	лежати в ліжку
to get up	вставати з ліжка
to get dressed	одягатися
to go to bed	лягати спати
to go to sleep; to fall asleep	засинати
to get to sleep	змусити себе заснути
to oversleep	проспати (встати пізно)
to stay up late	допізна не лягати спати
to stay out late	допізна не повертатися додому
to take a nap	трішки поспати вдень
to sleep in	добре поспати (виспатися)
to have breakfast	снідати
to have lunch	обідати
to take a lunch break	мати перерву на обід
to take a coffee break	мати коротеньку перерву на роботі
to have dinner	вечеряти
to have a snack	перекусити
to live alone; to live by oneself	жити самому
to feed sb	годувати когось
to take a shower; to have a shower	приймати душ
to take a bath; to have a bath	приймати ванну
to shave	голитися
to wash face and hands	мити обличчя та руки
to brush teeth; to clean teeth	чистити зуби
to leave home	виходити з дому
to leave home for work/university	виходити з дому на роботу/ в університет
to get to work/university	приходити на роботу/в університет
to leave work/university; to get off ~	йти з роботи/університету
to get home	діставатися (добиратися) дому
to stay home	залишатися вдома
to do nothing	байдикувати, нічого не робити
to go out	виходити на вулицю, гуляти
to have friends over for dinner	запрошувати друзів на вечерю
to come over	приходити в гості
to go shopping; to do the shopping	ходити в магазин, скуповуватись
to do the laundry	прати

to do the washing up; to do the dishes	мити посуд
to do the ironing	прасувати
to do the vacuuming	пилососити
to take out the garbage; ~ trash	виносити сміття
to be pretty tired	бути сильно втомленим
right away; immediately	відразу, негайно

1 Read the text about daily routines and find the facts that are the same in your routine and the facts that are different.

Daily Routines

Sleep



During the week I usually **wake up** at 6:30 a.m. Sometimes I **lie in bed** for a few minutes, but then I have to **get up** (*get out of bed*) and **get dressed**. Most nights, I **go to bed** (*get into bed*) at about 11:30 p.m. I'm usually pretty tired, so I **go to sleep** / **fall asleep** right away. Occasionally, though, I can't **get to sleep** (*succeed in sleeping*).

When that happens, I finally **fall asleep** at about 3 a.m., and then I **oversleep** (*sleep too long*) in the morning. If I **stay up late** (*go to bed very late*), I try to **take a nap** (*a short sleep, e.g., 30 minutes*) in the afternoon. The weekends are different. On Saturday and Sunday I **sleep in** (*sleep later in the morning than usual, e.g., until 10 or 10:30 a.m.*).



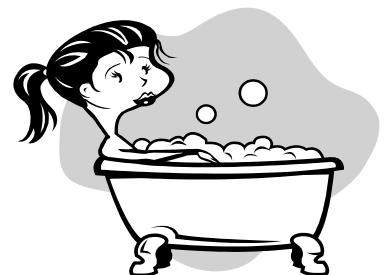
Food



During the week I **have breakfast** (*eat breakfast*) at 7:30 a.m., lunch at 1:00 p.m., and dinner at around 7 p.m. I also **have** one or two **snacks** (*small amounts of food*), e.g., cookies or fruit, during the day at work. I live **alone** / **by myself** (*without other people*), so it usually **takes me 15 minutes to make my own breakfast** (*prepare breakfast for myself*). I also have to **feed** (*give food to*) my two cats twice a day.

Staying clean

In the morning I **take a shower**, and I **wash my hair** at the same time. I usually **shave** after I **wash my face**, and then I **brush my teeth**. Sometimes I **take a bath** in the evening if I want to relax.



Work



I **leave for work / leave home** at about 8 a.m. and **get to work** (*arrive at work*) by 9 a.m. I **take a lunch break** (*stop work for lunch*) at about 1 p.m., and I **take** a couple of **coffee breaks** (*time off work for coffee or other refreshment*) during the day. I **leave work / get off work** at around 5 p.m. and **get home** by 6 p.m.

Evenings



During the week in the evenings I usually **stay home** (*don't leave home*) and relax or just **do nothing**. But at weekends I **go out** with friends (*leave the house for social reasons, e.g., go to the cinema*) and usually **stay out late** (*come home late at night*). Sometimes I **have friends over for dinner** (*invite friends to my home and cook dinner for them*), or friends come over (*visit me at the house*) to **watch videos**.

Housework



I **go shopping / do the shopping** (*buy groceries*) on Saturdays. I also **do the laundry** (*wash clothes*) and **ironing** at weekends. I **do the dishes** (*wash the dishes*) every evening and **take out the garbage / trash** every other day. I guess I don't **do the vacuuming** (*clean carpets with a vacuum cleaner*) as often as I should.

2

And now write down the facts from the text that are the same in your routine and those that are different. Mention as many facts as possible.

Same

1. I go to bed at around 11:50 p.m.
2.
3.
4.

Different

1. I never do any ironing.
2.
3.
4.

3

Put each verb in brackets into the Present Simple tense.

Andrew and Helen Brown _____ (*live*) in New York. They both _____ (*work*). Andrew _____ (*be*) a doctor. He _____ (*work*) at the hospital and _____ (*earn*) much money. The hospital _____ (*not/be*) far from home, so Andrew _____ (*not/drive*) to his work, he _____ (*walk*). He _____ (*usually/get up*) at 7 o'clock in the morning and _____ (*have*) breakfast. Mrs. Brown _____

(be) a housewife, so she _____ (not/work). She _____ (do) the house and _____ (stay) at home with their younger daughter. Her name _____ (be) Jennifer. She _____ (be) only 2 years old. She _____ (like) playing a lot. At weekends the Browns _____ (often/go) shopping. They _____ (also/be) fond of traveling. Their elder son _____ (study) at school. He _____ (want) to become an artist.

4 Put the verbs into the correct form of the Present Simple tense. Transform the text into the Past Simple.

Malcolm Tracey _____ (not/go) to work: he only _____ (leave) his home town to go on holiday in the Caribbean with his family. But Malcolm _____ (be) a millionaire. He _____ (write) books about money and how to make a lot of it. His new book is called *Easy Money: How to make money without getting out of bed*.



Malcolm _____ (live) in a large house in Bray, a town about 40 kilometres from London. He _____ (get up) at about 9 o'clock in the morning, and _____ (have) breakfast with his family. After breakfast, he _____ (drive) his children to school in his white Rolls Royce, and _____ (read) the newspaper in his garden until lunchtime. After lunch he _____ (buy) and _____ (sell) on the Internet. He _____ (finish) work at 4 o'clock when his children come home. "I have a simple system for making money," Malcolm _____ (say). "It _____ (not/work) for everybody... but it _____ (work) for me!"

5 Describe each picture. Is it true about you? Is it true about your partner?

Things we do every day



I wake up



get up



go to the bathroom



have a shower



have breakfast



listen to the radio



go to work



come home



make dinner



phone (or call) a friend



watch TV



go to bed

6

a) Listen and write down the questions.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____

b) Listen to Anna Kenyon answering the questions and tell about her lifestyle.

c) Listen to the questions again and give true answers about your lifestyle.

7

a) Listen to a man and woman talk about their weekends. Tick the phrases you hear. Listen again and give more details on each point they mentioned.

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> 1. did nothing much | <input type="checkbox"/> 4. did the shopping | <input type="checkbox"/> 7. saw the football match |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 2. went to the disco | <input type="checkbox"/> 5. saw a film | <input type="checkbox"/> 8. went away |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 3. met with a friend | <input type="checkbox"/> 6. cleaned the car | <input type="checkbox"/> 9. went to Rome |

b) Think of a typical weekend in your family. What do you do? Tell your partner.

8

a) Study the words that will appear in the listening part. Check up their meaning. Listen to the interview with Christina East and answer the questions.

Mother's Day Father's Day United Nations' Day Halloween Earth Day

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. What is Nothing Day? | 3. Why Nothing Day? |
| 2. When is Nothing Day? | 4. What do people do on Nothing Day? |

b) Would you like to celebrate this holiday? What would you do?

9

a) Answer the questions and compare with a partner.

How much time (approximately) do you spend on a weekday ...?

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| ✓ sleeping | ✓ having meals (breakfast, lunch, etc.) |
| ✓ working/studying | ✓ relaxing |
| ✓ cooking | ✓ doing sport |
| ✓ doing housework | ✓ seeing friends |
| ✓ shopping | ✓ being with your family |

b) Read the article and underline the correct phrases. Discuss it with other students. Which situation is more typical for your country?

Are You Happy With Your Work-Life Balance?

1. *Dan, project manager, software, Boston, USA*



I'm not happy with my work-life balance at all. I work at least 50 or 60 hours a week so I don't have *any time/no time* at all for myself or to see my children. I communicate with my wife by leaving messages on the fridge. We hardly ever see each other because we work different *hours/days* and I never have time to see my friends or keep fit.

I also eat very badly because my “lunch hour” (about 10 minutes) isn’t *enough long/long enough* for me to have a proper meal. OK, I earn *a lot of/a lot* money but I don’t have *enough time/time enough*. Is it worth it?



2. Amelie, lawyer, Paris, France.

I didn’t use to have *much time/many time* for anything because I was working *too much/too many* hours – 45 or more a week. But then here in France the government decided that people should only work 35 hours a week. Nowadays I have *plenty of/plenty* time for myself. I play tennis *two/three* evenings a week, and I finish work at lunchtime on Friday, so I can have long weekends. I am much happier. I think when you have time to enjoy your personal life, you work much better.



3. Nayuna, store assistant, Tokio, Japan.

Yes, I am happy with it because I have a lifestyle that I like and that gives me *quite a lot of/quite* free time. But my father, on the other hand, works more than 70 hours a week for a car company, which I think is madness. *Lots of/much* Japanese people do the same. There is an expression in Japanese, “karoshi”, which means “dying because you work *too hard/too much hard*”. A lot of people in Japan get ill or die because they work *too/too much*. I think my generation is different. We don’t want our lives to be ruled by work. I work *a few/a little* hours a day in a store – that gives me enough money to live. I spend the rest of my time seeing my friends and playing baseball.

c) You are going to hear an expert telling us five ways in which we can slow down in our daily lives. First study the words and phrases below and then listen once and complete Tips 1-5 with two words.

body and mind

to do a favour

meditation

heartbeat

to do yoga

to benefit

silence

to slow the body down

to remind of sth

Tips	Why?
1. Eat breakfast _____.	1.
2. Forget the _____. Do _____ instead.	2.
3. Go for a _____.	3.
4. Spend 10 minutes each day _____.	4.
5. Have a _____, not a _____.	5.


d) Listen again and write down any other information you can in the *Why?* column. Which do you think are the best two tips? Do you already do any of them?

10 a)  Simon works for a computer company in London. Listen to his conversation with Professor Parker. Answer the questions.


1. How many children does Simon have?
2. What time does he get up?
3. Why doesn't he have breakfast?
4. What time does he start work?
5. How many cups of coffee does he drink?
6. What does he have for lunch?
7. What time does he finish work?
8. Why doesn't he have dinner with his family?
9. What time does he get home?
10. What does he do after dinner?



b)   Listen and say what Professor Parker's advice is. Who do you think is more stressed, Louisa or Simon?

11  Answer these questions about yourself. Compare your answers with your partner (groupmates).

1. What time do you usually get home?
2. Do you usually go out or stay home in the evenings?
3. Do you have trouble getting to sleep at night?
4. How often do you have friends over for dinner?
5. Does it happen that you fall asleep in class? If so, when and why?
6. How often do you oversleep?
7. What time of day do you like best? Why?

12  Read the following phrases. Do these things normally happen in the morning, afternoon or evening? Put them in order for a normal day.



- you dream about something
- you fall asleep
- you feel tired
- you get dressed
- you get into bed
- you get out of bed
- you have a bath/shower
- you have something to eat
- you set your alarm
- you switch off the alarm
- you turn off the light
- you wake up
- your alarm goes off
- you go to university
- you come home



- What time do you usually do these things? Find out about your partner.
- How similar are your daily routines?

13 🎧 **Read the article. Decide if the sentences are about morning people or night people. Are you a morning person or a night person?**

Mornings are different for different people. For some people, mornings are always easy. They always wake up early. They eat breakfast, they read their morning newspaper and they go to work on time. These are morning people.



For other people, mornings are often very difficult. They always go to bed late at night. They sleep late and they wake up late. They sometimes drink a cup of coffee but they don't often eat breakfast (because they are usually late for work). These are night people.

You don't decide to be a morning person or a night person. It's genetic.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Mornings are easy. | 4. They eat breakfast. |
| 2. They go to bed late at night. | 5. Mornings are difficult. |
| 3. They read their morning newspaper. | 6. They don't eat breakfast. |

b) 🎧 Listen and write down the sentences. Say who is a morning person and who is a night person. Why?

Lynn is a _____ person. Ed is a _____ person.

c) 🎧 Listen to Vicky's morning and say if she is a morning person or a night person. Why?

14 🗣️ **Discuss the following questions with your groupmates.**

- Do you usually have problems falling asleep or getting up in the morning? How about other people you live with?
- What helps you fall asleep?
- What helps you wake up in the morning?

15 **a) Do you know what these scientific words and expressions mean?**

a gene DNA your "body clock" research

b) Read the article about morning and evening people. Choose a, b, or c.

1. Scientists say that if we are bad at getting up in the morning, this is because
a) we are born like that. b) we go to bed too late. c) we drink too much coffee.

2. Researchers asked people questions about
a) the way they lived. b) science. c) sport and exercise.

3. They discovered that people who have a short “clock” gene
a) are better in the morning than in the evening. b) get tired very early.
c) are better in the evening than in the morning.

4. They recommend that people who have a long “clock” gene
a) should only work in the afternoon and evening.
b) should start work early and finish early. c) should start work late.

Are You Allergic to Mornings?



Are you somebody who can't wake up in the morning? Do you need two cups of coffee before you start a new day? Do you feel awful when you first wake up?

Scientists say it's all because of our genes. How did they find this out? Researchers from the University of Surrey interviewed 500 people. They asked them questions about their lifestyle, for example, what time of day they preferred to do exercise and how difficult they found it to wake up in the morning. Scientists then compared their answers to the people's DNA.

They discovered that we all have a “clock” gene, also called a *Period 3 gene*. This gene can be long or short. People who have the long gene are usually people who are very good in the morning, but who get very tired quite early at night. People who have the short gene are usually people who are more active at night but who have problems waking up early in the morning. How does it help us to know if we have the long or short gene? Scientists say that, if possible, we should try to change our working hours to fit our “body clock”. If you are a “morning person”, then you could start work early and finish early. But if you are bad in the mornings, then it might be better to start work in the afternoon and work until late at night. So maybe, instead of nine to five it should be seven to three or twelve to eight.

c) 🎧 Listen to David being interviewed by a researcher. Is he a morning or evening person?

d) 🎧 Listen again and write down David's answers.

1. What do you do?
2. When do you work?
3. What time do you get up in the morning?
4. If you have an exam, do you study best in the morning, afternoon, or at night?
5. If you do exercise, when do you prefer to do it?
6. Do you like your working hours (school/university timetable)? Why (not)?
Would you like to change them (it)? How?

e) 🗣️ Interview your partner using the questions in d). Is he/she a morning or evening person?

16

Read and translate the text into Ukrainian. It gives advice about falling asleep and waking up. Write F next to the items about falling asleep and W next to the items about waking up.

Early to Bed, Early to Rise...

- Don't spend longer than thirty minutes trying to fall asleep. If you can't get to sleep after half an hour, get up and do something quiet, like reading. Only go back to bed when you feel tired.



- Get an alarm clock, and put it as far away from the bed as you can. If you don't have to get out of bed to turn it off, then it's no good having one. And remember that two is better than one... but set the second clock ten minutes later than the first one, and put it in the same place as the first one!

- Make sure all the clocks in the house are ten minutes fast before you go to bed (and try to forget you did this when you wake up the next morning).
- Drink a glass of warm milk fifteen minutes before you go to bed – it helps you to relax – or have a light snack. But avoid coffee, tea or alcohol: they contain chemicals which will make it difficult for you to sleep.



- Get a friend to phone you early in the morning. And hope that your friend is better at waking up than you are... and is able to have an interesting conversation at 7 a.m. to help you wake up.
- Go to bed earlier. It may be difficult at first, but they say that an hour of sleep before midnight is as good as two hours after midnight.
- Have a warm bath – it's a great way to relax. But you shouldn't stay in there too long. More than twenty minutes and you will lose all your energy. And the bath isn't the best place to fall asleep!



- Listen to some music – or even specially recorded CDs of relaxing sounds like waves. However, if you have to get up and turn the CD player off when the music finishes, it's not going to work!

- Pretend your alarm has gone off. Imagine you have to get up, have a (cold!) shower, make breakfast, etc. The more you imagine it, the more you want to go to sleep!
- Nice, calming music will make you want to stay in bed even longer... but the horrible sound of static (the electronic noise you get between stations) is enough to get anyone out of bed... to turn it off!



17

Find the English equivalents in the text from *ex.16*.

спати/бачити сни, почуватися стомленим, лягати в ліжку, вставати з ліжка, щось попоїсти, заводити будильник, вимикати будильник, вимикати світло, вмикати світло, дзвонити (про будильник), йти в університет, приходити додому, уникати чогось, переконатися, вчасно вставати в університет, втрачати енергію, прикидатися, немає сенсу/користі щось робити.

18

Look at the phrases below from the text. Match the words/phrases in bold in A with the words/phrases which mean the same in B.

A

- a. get an alarm clock
- b. have a **light** snack
- c. ten minutes **fast**
- d. get a friend to phone you
- e. **they** say that an hour of sleep
- f. it's a **great** way to relax
- g. **avoid** coffee, tea or alcohol

B

1. buy / set / switch on
2. cheap / late-night / small
3. after the correct time / at the correct time / before the correct time
4. ask / find / look for
5. people in general / your friends / your parents
6. big / expensive / wonderful
7. drink / do not have / try

19

Complete the phrases with a word from the box.

<i>about something</i>	<i>asleep</i>	<i>bed</i>	<i>dressed</i>	<i>of bed</i>	<i>off the alarm</i>
<i>shower</i>	<i>the alarm</i>	<i>the light</i>	<i>tired</i>	<i>to eat</i>	<i>up</i>

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. wake _____ | 4. turn off _____ | 7. switch _____ | 10. feel _____ |
| 2. fall _____ | 5. set _____ | 8. get into _____ | 11. have a _____ |
| 3. get _____ | 6. get out _____ | 9. have sth _____ | 12. dream _____ |

20

Dave works at night, printing newspapers. Complete the text about his routine with a suitable phrase from the previous exercise.



I started working nights two months ago, and it's a big change to my routine. Sometimes I'm so tired that I (1) _____ at work if there's nothing to do. I finish work at 5.30 a.m., go home, (2) _____ – it's quite dirty work – and (3) _____ at about 7 a.m. I don't need to (4) _____ – it's light outside by then. I

don't (5) _____ either, because I usually (6) _____ at around 1.30 p.m. because of the noise of the school children playing outside. Very often I still (7) _____ because I don't sleep well and I (8) _____ lots of strange things, like

newspapers covering the sky and making it dark all the time! I finally (9) _____ at about 3 p.m. I (10) _____ (if I can find any clean clothes) and make a cup of coffee. I don't usually (11) _____ anything _____, I'm not hungry until later.

21

a) Before listening to the article read the following proper names and make sure you know how they are pronounced.

Mrs Thatcher /'mɪsɪz 'θætʃə/

Dr Thomas Roth /'tɒməs rɒθ/

Napoleon /nə'pəʊliən/

Professor Jim Horne /dʒɪm hɔ:n/

Washington /'wɒʃɪŋtən/

Loughborough University /'lʌfbərə/

National Sleep Foundation /'næʃənəl sli:p faʊn'deɪʃn/

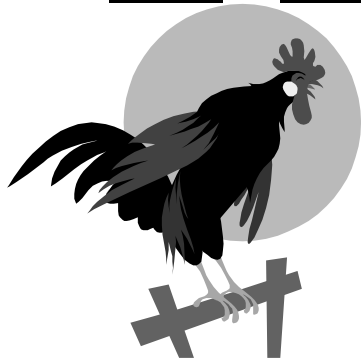
b) Do you know the answers to these questions? Listen to the article *The Secrets of Sleep* and find the answers.

- How many hours a day do babies sleep?
- How many hours should we sleep?
- Give three reasons why it is bad for you to sleep for less than six hours a day.
- How many hours do most people sleep?
- Do older people need less sleep than younger people?
- Does sleeping more than ten hours help you to wake up early the next day?



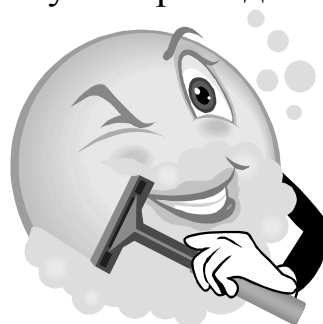
22

Translate the following sentences into English using *the Present Simple* or *the Present Continuous*.



1. Вранці я прокидаюсь, снідаю, мию посуд, одягаюсь та їду в університет. Після пар я виходжу з університету о 14:00, дістаюсь додому о 15:00, обідаю та роблю уроки. 2. Зазвичай я виходжу з дому о 7:45, бо мені потрібно біля 30 хвилин, щоб дістатись до свого університету. Я не люблю запізнюватися. Я завжди приходжу в університет за 10-15 хвилин до дзвінка. 3. Будильник дзвонить!

Вставай! Я чекаю тебе на кухні! Я готую тобі сніданок. Ти мушиш прийти вчасно на роботу! 4. Коли Мері почувається стомленою, вона відразу засинає. Але зараз вона не спить. Вона в ліжку читає книгу. Завтра неділя і вона буде відсипатися. 5. – Де Пітер? – Він у ванній кімнаті: приймає душ, миє голову, чистить зуби та голиться. В нього сьогодні побачення. Він хоче виглядати бездоганно. 6. Вони часто просипають вранці, коли засиджуються допізна ввечері. Крім того, вони ще люблять трішки перепочити вдень. 7. Сьогодні субота. Ми прибираємо свою кімнату, а



потім ми підемо на прогулянку. Спочатку ми подивимось новий фільм у кінотеатрі, а потім будемо гуляти допізна. **8.** – Ти постійно щось робиш, коли я тобі дзвоню. Ти дійсно такий зайнятий? – Ні, зараз я нічого не роблю. Я чекаю на друзів, вони прийдуть подивитися футбольний матч та пограти в шахи. **9.** Іноді взимку я люблю ще трішки повалятися. Мені не хочеться вставати з ліжка, коли на вулиці холодно. **10.** Переконайтесь, що ваш годинник поспішає на декілька хвилин, перед тим, як лягати спати. **11.** Будь ласка, вимкни світло та увімкни телевізор. Я дуже втомилася і хочу спати, але не можу заснути. Наші сусіди дуже голосно розмовляють. **12.** – Не лягай спати пізно! Тобі завтра потрібно рано вставати в університет! – Не хвилюйся! Я вже заводжу будильник, і до того ж, я завжди прокидаюся вчасно і ніколи не просипаю.

23

Translate into English.



Келлі Андерсон працює секретаркою у великій комп'ютерній компанії. Вона прокидається о 7:00 кожного ранку, бо любить ще пару хвилин повалятися (полежати) в ліжку. Потім вона встає, йде у ванну кімнату приймати душ і мити голову, щоб остаточно прокинутись і почуватися енергійною. Оскільки вона живе сама, їй потрібно лише десять хвилин, щоб

приготувати та з'їсти свій сніданок. Після цього вона одягається, причісується і виходить на роботу о 8:00. Келлі ніколи не запізнюється на роботу і прибуває десь за 15 хвилин до початку робочого дня. Вона робить собі філіжанку кави й сідає читати кореспонденцію (пошту). Цілий ранок вона друкує листи та відповідає на телефонні дзвінки. О 12:30 у Келлі обідня перерва, тому вона йде пообідати до ресторану, що навпроти її офісу. Оскільки Келлі працює за фіксованим графіком, вона закінчує роботу о 17:00 і через п'ять хвилин виходить з офісу. Іноді вона йде в кіно, або прогулятися містом зі своїми друзями, але гуляє допізна лише у п'ятницю, оскільки субота – це вихідний день і вона може виспатися. Отже в більшість вечорів Келлі приїздить додому біля шостої години, готує вечерю і потім дивиться телевізор або читає книжку перед тим, як лягти спати об 11:00. Зазвичай вона вже почувается досить стомленою пізно ввечері, тому засинає відразу.

Келлі подобається бути секретаркою. “Я люблю людей, з якими я працюю, і заробітна платня дуже гарна. Зараз я задоволена своїм життям”.

24

Writing.

A friend of yours is a newcomer in your company. Every day he/she has lots of things to do and doesn't do well at work. Write a letter to your friend giving him/her some advice how to plan a working day in order to succeed in everything.

25

Fill in the sentences with appropriate prepositions where necessary.

1. I want to apply _____ a job with British Airways. 2. Don't worry _____ anything! 3. I really don't agree _____ you. 4. Are you good _____ science? 5. I have a lot to do _____ my new job. 6. Don't argue _____ your boss. 7. Could I have a day _____ next Friday? It's my cousin's wedding. 8. I have a lot _____ duties _____ my job. Sometimes I don't finish _____ 8 p.m. 9. If you work hard, you may get promoted _____ Manager. 10. She has a good job and gets _____ a very big salary. 11. I'm going to apply _____ a job _____ a bookshop. 12. I work _____ home as a translator. 13. It takes him a lot _____ time to get up _____ the morning. 14. That man's son goes _____ my school.

26

Some of the sentences below contain errors. Correct them.

1. She was believing in Santa Claus. 2. They were having a good time at the party. 3. The box was containing several very interesting dictionaries. 4. The students were seeing their friends off to the station. 5. The guests were just appearing on the stage. 6. She is appearing to have some problems. 7. They were so close. Everybody was seeing them. 8. They were looking like American Indians in appearance. 9. We were hearing them – every word they said. 10. She was realizing that something was funny, but she was not understanding what it was. 11. He is having several companies specializing in computer business.

27

Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Continuous.

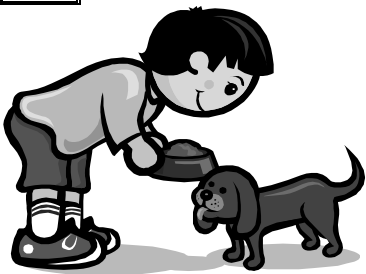
1. – Who _____ (*you/talk*) to on the telephone as I _____ (*come*) in? – I _____ (*talk*) to Mr Pitt. 2. When I first _____ (*meet*) him, he _____ (*work*) in a restaurant. 3. He watched the children for a moment. Some of them _____ (*bathe*) in the sea, others _____ (*look*) for shells, others _____ (*play*) in the sand. 4. Where _____ (*he/live*) when you _____ (*see*) him last? 5. She _____ (*stand*) at the bus stop. I _____ (*ask*) her what bus she _____ (*wait*) for. 6. From the sounds it _____ (*be*) clear that Mary _____ (*practice*) the piano. 7. He _____ (*be*) a little mad. He _____ (*always/try*) to prove that the earth was flat.

8. He _____ (*usually/wear*) sandals but when I last _____ (*see*) him he _____ (*wear*) boots. 9. While we _____ (*fish*) someone _____ (*come*) to the house and _____ (*leave*) this note. 10. It _____ (*start*) raining when he _____ (*walk*) to work. He _____ (*stop*) a taxi because he _____ (*not/wear*) a coat and he _____ (*not/have*) an umbrella. 11. We _____ (*be*) late. When we _____ (*arrive*), everyone _____ (*sit*) in the garden having coffee. 12. The station _____ (*be*) empty except for several people who _____ (*wait*) for the next train.



28

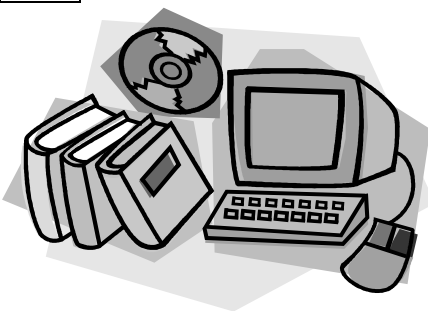
Translate into English.



1. Вони купили собаку кілька років тому. 2. Марія почала вивчати англійську ще у дитинстві. 3. Позавчора я познайомився з дуже цікавою людиною. 4. У понеділок ми писали диктант та переклад. 5. Я не бачив його на концерті. 6. Я купила цю книгу тільки вчора. 7. Вчора у мене зламалася машина й мені довелося їхати на метро. 8. Минулого року мій син пішов до школи. 9. Ти запізнилася. Потяг відправився 10 хвилин тому. 10. Я не змогла зв'язатися з ним. 11. Я не помічала, що відбувається. 12. Ми дісталися до університету за 15 хвилин. 13. Чому ти не прийшла вчора? 14. Минулого літа ми не їздили на море. 15. Він переклав статтю за півтори години. 16. Я вчилася в університеті з 1992 по 1997 рік. 17. Ми познайомилися весною минулого року. 18. Я говорив з ним про це ще у середу. 19. Додому ми їхали на таксі.

29

Translate into English.



1. Коли батьки мені подарували комп'ютер, я не знала, що з ним робити. 2. Коли він прокинувся, у кімнаті було зовсім темно. 3. Вона налила води у вазу й поставила троянди. 4. Раніше я витрачав значно більше часу на приготування домашнього завдання. 5. Вони гралися у дворі, поки не стемніло. 6. Оскільки його мати була у лікарні, йому доводилося готувати самому. 7. Коли вона почула таку відповідь, вона встала й мовчки вийшла з кабінету. 8. Мені не подобалися їхні діти, тому що вони були дуже неслухняні. 9. Ми стояли біля аудиторії, поки не прийшла наша вчителька. 10. Вона прочитала статтю до кінця і потім почала її перекладати. 11. Вона була одружена з лікарем, тому знала майже всіх сусідів. 12. Він приходив, коли ти спав.

SECTION VII: SELF-STUDY AND ADVANCED EXERCISES

Family and Family Matters

1

Read the text and translate it into Ukrainian. Describe your family tree. Try to mention all members of your family.

Your family tree



Your closest relatives are your **parents**: your **mother** and **father**; and your **siblings** (**brothers** or **sisters**). If your mother or father is not an only child, you also have **aunts** and/or **uncles**. An aunt is your mother's (or father's) sister, while an uncle is your mother's (or father's) brother. Your female child is called your **daughter**, and your male child is your **son**.

If your aunts or uncles have children, they are your **first cousins**. (In English, the word cousin is used, whether the cousin is female or male.) Your female cousin is your mother's (or father's) **niece**, while a male cousin is your mother's (or father's) **nephew**.

In-laws

When you marry, your husband's (or wife's) family become your **in-laws**. The mother of your spouse (husband or wife) is your **mother-in-law** and his or her father becomes your **father-in-law**. The term in-law is also used to describe your relationship with the spouses of your siblings. So the husband of your sister becomes your **brother-in-law**, while the sister of your husband becomes your **sister-in-law**. If you are a woman, you become the **daughter-in-law** of your husband's parents, and if you are a man, you become the **son-in-law** of your wife's parents. The same term in-law is used for all generations. The husband of your aunt is still your mother's brother-in-law, for example.

Grandparents / grandchildren

The parents of your parents are your **grandparents** – a **grandmother** and a **grandfather**. You are their **grandchildren** – either a **granddaughter** or a **grandson**. If your grandparent has a sister, she is your **great-aunt**. If your grandparent has a brother, he is your **great-uncle**. (And you are either his or her **great-niece** or **great-nephew**.)

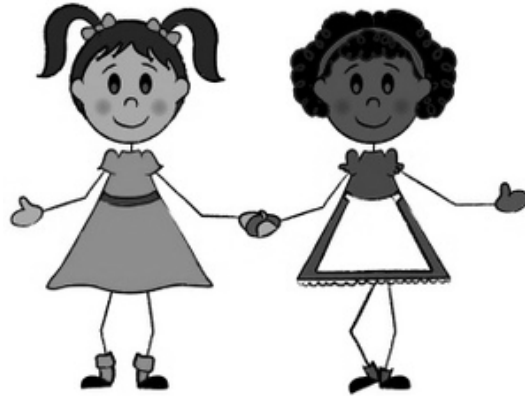
The mother of your grandmother or grandfather is your **great-grandmother**. The father is your **great-grandfather**. If you go back another generation, the grandmother of your grandmother / grandfather is your **great-great-grandmother**. The grandfather of your grandparent becomes your **great-great-grandfather**.

Second families

If your mother or father remarries, you can acquire a new family and a set of relatives. For example, if your father marries a second wife, she becomes your **step-mother**. Any children she already has become your **step-sisters** or **step-brothers**.

If your mother or father remarries and has children, they become your **half-brothers** or **half-sisters**.

You might also hear people talking about their **biological** brother/sister etc, to mean a brother who is related by blood, rather than by marriage.



2

Try this little brain-teaser. Each of the fourteen people below is married to one of the others. From the information you are given, find out who is married to whom. Note there are three generations here.

Alan is Caroline's **nephew** and Larry's **cousin**.

Barbara is Larry's **mother** and Maggie's **sister-in-law**.

Caroline is Edward's **daughter** and Maggie's **sister-in-law**.

David is Gordon's **brother-in-law** and Alan's **uncle**.

Edward is Ingrid's **grandfather** and Maggie's **father-in-law**.

Fanny is Caroline's **mother** and Alan's **grandmother**.

Gordon is Helen's **son-in-law** and Nigel's **brother-in-law**.

Helen is Barbara's **mother-in-law** and Larry's **grandmother**.

Ingrid is Gordon's **niece** and David's **daughter-in-law**.

John is David's **father** and Gordon's **father-in-law**.

Karren is Gordon's **daughter-in-law** and Maggie's **daughter-in-law**.

Larry is John's **grandson** and David's **son**.

Maggie is Larry's **aunt** and Fanny's **daughter-in-law**.

Nigel is Ingrid's **father** and Fanny's **son-in-law**.

3

Choose the most suitable word or phrase to complete the sentences below.

1. Mrs Jones had _____.

a. a trio

b. a treble

c. triplets

2. Mrs Vine had had _____ the week before.

a. quarts

b. quads

c. a quartet

3. Twins often seem to _____ a generation.

a. hop

b. skip

c. jump

4. There was a case of _____ twins in our town recently.
 a. Japanese b. Chinese c. Siamese
5. There's a _____ of twins in our family – on my father's _____.
 a. story b. geography c. history
 a. tree b. side c. line
6. I was _____ child, though.
 a. an only b. a missing c. a single
7. All the members of our football team are **related** _____ marriage.
 a. by b. to c. on
8. When mother **remarried** her second husband, my _____, gave me a new bicycle.
 a. a forefather b. stepfather c. grandfather
9. He said to me, "Look, I know you're not my own _____, but let's be friends".
 a. flesh and blood b. blood and guts c. skin and bones
10. My _____ **originated** from a tribe of Red Indians.
 a. ancestors b. ancients c. antiques
11. Not many of my own _____ relatives are still alive.
 a. blood b. skin c. heart
12. My brother-in-law **inherited** \$500,000 in his uncle's _____.
 a. will b. testament c. wishes
13. My _____-grandfather fought at the Battle of Waterloo.
 a. grand grand grand b. great grand grand c. great-great-great
14. I was left \$50 and a cat by _____ relative; I believe it was a _____ cousin – perhaps it was a _____ -aunt.
 a. a distant b. an unclear c. a long-distance
 a. double b. second c. dual
 a. grand b. great c. large
15. Peter is an **orphan**; he was _____ at the age of two.
 a. adjusted b. adapted c. adopted
16. Paul comes from a broken home; he has lived with a number of _____ parents.
 a. loan b. foster c. second-hand
17. Mary was from a **single-parent family**; now she is **looked after** by her _____.
 a. keeper b. warden c. guardian
18. I'm off to have Sunday lunch with my _____ now.
 a. outlaws b. by-laws c. in-laws



4

Match the phrases with their definitions.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>a family gathering</i> | a) a family where the members have serious problems with each other |
| 2. <i>an extended family</i> | b) to start having children |
| 3. <i>a nuclear family</i> | c) a characteristic that is common among family members |
| 4. <i>to start a family</i> | d) mother, father and children |
| 5. <i>to run in the family</i> | e) your closest relatives |
| 6. <i>single-parent / one-parent family</i> | f) your entire family |
| 7. <i>immediate family</i> | g) a family where the members have close relationships with each other |
| 8. <i>dysfunctional family</i> | h) a relative connected to you by "blood" rather than by marriage |
| 9. <i>a blood relative</i> | i) a family which only has one parent (because the parents are divorced, or because one of the parents has died) |
| 10. <i>a close-knit family</i> | j) a family in which the parents are divorced or separated |
| 11. <i>a broken home</i> | k) a meeting / celebration of family members |

5

Read these sentences and translate them into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words and phrases in bold type. Use them in the examples of your own.

1. The traditional British family unit is **a nuclear family**. 2. There are more and more **single-parent** families in the UK. 3. Only **immediate family** members attended the funeral. 4. The wedding invitations were sent to the entire **extended family**. 5. They are **a close-knit family**. 6. He comes from a rather **dysfunctional family**. 7. She's not **a blood relative**, but we're still very close. 8. She comes from **a broken home**. 9. There's a small **family gathering** next week. 10. They want to wait for a couple of years before **starting a family**. 11. Baldness **runs in his family**.

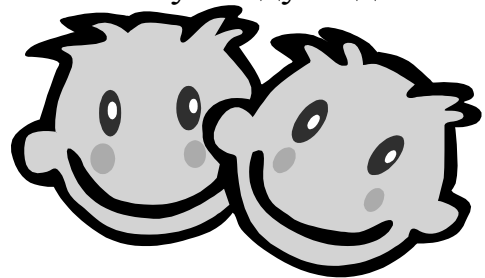


6

Translate into English.

1. Анна – моя давня подруга, але зараз вона також і моя зовиця, бо вона побралася з моїм братом. 2. Його дружина померла, тому зараз він вдівець. 3. Містер Сміт, друг нашої родини, 10 років тому всиновив

сироту і зараз це його єдиний нащадок. **4.** У Джима є дві зведені сестри, бо його батько одружився вдруге рік тому. **5.** Містер Томсон знатного роду, його пращури були дуже багатими та відомими. **6.** Наш друг дуже щасливий, тому що успадкував великий будинок у Франції від далекого родича. **7.** Я збираюся попросити батьків мого чоловіка приглянути за хлопчиком під час нашої відпустки. **8.** Її батько покинув їх дуже давно і тепер вона живе в неповній родині. **9.** Абрам походить з єврейської родини, чим він дуже пишається. **10.** Мій двоюрідний брат оженився на жінці, яка має близнюків, отже він став їх вітчимою. **11.** Цей сирота має дуже багатого опікуна. **12.** Я ніколи не страждала через те, що я з неповної родини: мене виховує лише мама. **13.** Чесно кажучи, для мене буде шок, якщо я народжу трійню. Я знаю, як важко за ними доглядати.



7

Translate into English.

1. Вчора його дідусь відсвяткував свій день народження: йому вже 80, але він ще в силі. **2.** – Як же вона могла вийти за нього заміж? Він же в три рази старший за неї! – Хіба ти не розумієш? Вона чекає, поки він простягне ноги, щоб хапнути його багатство. **3.** До 25 років у нього вже накопичився багатий життєвий досвід. **4.** Наш сусід – крихкий, старий чоловік, і я боюся, що він скоро помре. **5.** Його бабуся виглядає старою для свого віку, оскільки їй завжди доводилось важко працювати. **6.** Три роки тому він став повнолітнім. Зараз йому вже за 20 і він вже не хлопчисько. **7.** Мій дідусь – довгожитель. Він старий, як світ. Йому вже 95, але він ще тримається. **8.** Вона – акушерка й дуже любить новонароджених та немовлят. **9.** У розквіті літ я думала, що молодість триватиме вічно, але тепер, коли я починаю відчувати свій вік, я розумію, що всі ми не молодшаємо. **10.** Хлопець чи дівчина у перехідному віці весь час відчувають себе пригніченими та покинутими. **11.** Його дідусь пережив бабуся на 3 роки. Він помер рік тому. **12.** Моя мама вже не така молода, як була й має проблеми зі здоров'ям, але в неї ще збереглося її дівоче почуття гумору. **13.** Але ж тобі вже стукнуло 30, ти доросла людина, не поведься як дитина. **14.** Моя прабабуся була довгожителкою, вона пішла в інший світ у 93 роки. **15.** Зараз Мері живе в Києві, але до 32 років вона жила у Лондоні. **16.** Їхній хлопчик наближається до шкільного віку, зараз йому 5 років.



Read the text about two points of view on a family relationship.

My Daughter

James Mitford: My wife and I only had the one child. It might have been nice to have a son, but we didn't **plan a family**, we just had Amy.

I see her as **my best friend**. I think she'd always **come to me first** if she had a problem. We **have the same sense of humour**, and **share interests**. I **don't mind** animals, but she's completely **obsessed with** them, and has always had dogs, cats, horses and goldfish in her life.

We were **closest** when she was about four, which I think is a lovely age for a child. They know the parents best, and don't have the outside contacts. She must have grown up suddenly when she went to school, because I remember her **growing away from her family** slightly. And father who has a teenager daughter **comes across** an extraordinary collection of people, and there seem to be an endless stream of strange young men coming through our house. By the time I'd learned their names they'd gone away and I had to start learning a new a lot. I remember I **told her off** once **in front of her** friends and she didn't talk to me for days afterwards.



I wanted more than anything else for her to be happy in what she was doing, and I was prepared **to pull strings to help** her on her way. She went to a good school, but that didn't **work out**. She must have **upset** somebody. When she left she decided she wanted to become an actress so I got her into drama school. It **wasn't to her liking** so she joined a theatre group and began doing bits and pieces in films. She was doing well but then **gave it up**. She probably **found it boring**. Then she took up social work, and finally went to work for a designer and he became her husband. And that's really the story of her life. She must be happy with him – they're always together.

We have **the same tastes in** books and music, but it takes me a while **to get used to** new pop songs. I **used to take** her to see the opera, which is my big passion, but I don't think she likes it very much, she doesn't come with me anymore.

We are very **grateful to** Amy. She's a good daughter as daughters go. We're **looking forward to being** grandparents. I'm sure she'll have a son.

My Father

Amy Mitford: I don't really know my father. He **isn't easy to get on with**. He is quite **self-centered**, and a little bit vain, I think, and in some ways quite

unapproachable. The public must think he's very easy-going, but at home **he keeps himself for himself**.

He can't have been at home much when I was a child, because I don't remember much of him. He has always **been slightly out of touch with family life**. His work always came first, and he was always off somewhere acting or rehearsing. He loves being asked for his autograph, he loves to be recognized.

I went to public school, and because of my **total lack of interest** I was asked to leave. I tried several jobs but I couldn't settle in them. They weren't challenging enough. Then I realized what I really wanted was live in the country and look after animals, so that's what I now do.



As a family, we are not that close, either emotionally or geographically. My father and I are **totally different, like chalk and cheese**. He was **opposed to me getting married**. He was hoping we would break up. We don't want children, but my father **keeps on and on talking** about wanting grandchildren.

9 a) Answer the questions about the text from the previous exercise. There is not necessarily one correct answer only.

1. How would you describe their relationship?
 - a. It was closer when Amy was a child.
 - b. They get on well, and agree on most things.
 - c. He has more respect for her than she does for him.
 - d. They don't have very much in common.
2. How would you describe James Mitford?
 - a. He has done all that a father can for his daughter.
 - b. He isn't very aware of how she really feels.
 - c. He's more interested in himself than his family.
3. How would you describe Amy?
 - a. She is selfish and spoilt.
 - b. It took her long time to decide what she wanted to do in her life.
 - c. She found happiness in marriage that she didn't have in her childhood.

☛ **Now answer the following questions:**

- Why did she leave school?
- Is she going to have children?
- Who has more realistic view of relationship? Why?

10

Match the phrases with their translation. Use them in the sentences of your own.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>to plan a family</i> | a. бути настроєним проти чого-небудь, чинити опір |
| 2. <i>to have the same tastes in books / music</i> | b. бути людиною, з якою легко порозумітись |
| 3. <i>to share interests / ideas</i> | c. у присутності друзів |
| 4. <i>to have the same sense of humour</i> | d. бути абсолютно різними |
| 5. <i>to come to sb first</i> | e. як вогонь і вода (не мати нічого спільного) |
| 6. <i>to grow away from family</i> | f. через повну відсутність зацікавлення |
| 7. <i>to tell sb off</i> | g. бути далеким від сімейного життя |
| 8. <i>to work out</i> | h. бути самому по собі |
| 9. <i>to be to one's liking</i> | i. мати однакове почуття гумору |
| 10. <i>to pull strings to help sb</i> | j. бути зосередженим на собі |
| 11. <i>to find sth (reading) boring</i> | k. звертатися в першу чергу до когось |
| 12. <i>to get used to new songs / friends</i> | l. вважати читання нудним |
| 13. <i>to be grateful to sb</i> | m. планувати велику родину |
| 14. <i>to be easy to get on with</i> | n. віддалятися від родини |
| 15. <i>to keep oneself for oneself</i> | o. мати однакові вподобання в музиці / літературі |
| 16. <i>to be out of touch with family life</i> | p. спрацьовувати, мати очікуваний результат |
| 17. <i>because of a total lack of interest</i> | q. бути вдячним комусь |
| 18. <i>to be totally different</i> | r. засмучувати когось |
| 19. <i>like chalk and cheese</i> | s. застосовувати таємні зв'язки, щоб допомогти |
| 20. <i>in front of sb's friends</i> | t. сварити, вичитувати когось |
| 21. <i>to be self-centered</i> | u. поділяти інтереси, думки |
| 22. <i>to be opposed to sth / doing sth</i> | v. звикати до нових пісень / друзів |
| 23. <i>to upset sb</i> | w. бути до вподоби |

11

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Я вважаю маму своїм найкращим другом. З нею легко порозумітись і я завжди звертаюсь в першу чергу до неї, коли в мене проблеми.

2. Мері та Пітер абсолютно різні, як вогонь і вода. Якщо вона відкрита, легка у спілкуванні, то він завжди сам по собі. Вони ніколи не ладнають.

3. Стів дуже вдячний своїм батькам. Вони ніколи не сварять його в присутності друзів і завжди намагаються застосовувати таємні зв'язки щоб допомогти йому.

4. Мій брат далекий від сімейного життя, тому й не хоче одружуватися. Це дуже засмучує нашу матір, бо вона ніяк не може звикнути до його численних подружок. Вона весь час каже про те, що хоче мати онуків.

5. Її брати захоплюються спортом і мають однакові вподобання в музиці та літературі, але вона часто сердиться на них, адже вони вважають вивчення іноземних мов нудним.

6. Джоан та її хлопець люблять один одного, мають однакове почуття гумору й поділяють інтереси. Вони збираються одружитися й планують велику родину.



7. Моя мати була проти того, щоб я стала актрисою. Це було мені не до вподоби, але я не хотіла засмучувати її. Через повну відсутність зацікавленості я не стала вступати до медичного університету. Батьки порадили мені вступити до лінгвістичного університету, за що я зараз їм дуже вдячна.

8. Саймон далекий від сімейного життя. Декілька років тому він зовсім віддалився від родини. Його дружина звернулася до свекра та свекрухи за допомогою, але це не спрацювало.

Саймон і Шейла збираються розлучитися, оскільки вони виявилися зовсім різними, не поділяють думки та не можуть добре ладнати.

9. У мене відсутня необхідна інформація. Я не звикла працювати в таких умовах і тому чекаю з нетерпінням на твій телефонний дзвінок. Твої новини мені конче необхідні й, крім того, я хочу сказати, що я вдячна тобі за твої поради.

12

See how easily and quickly you can find the missing names in the sentences below. The answers are printed after the exercise to help you.

1. William F. Cody (1846-1917) was **nicknamed** _____.

2. Queen Elizabeth's youngest son **is called** _____.

3. _____'s **real name** is Richard Starkey.

4. Mozart's **Christian names** were _____.
5. The Idlewild Airport in New York **was renamed** _____ after this man's death.
6. A Swedish actress **by the name** of Greta Gustafsson adopted the screen **pseudonym** of _____.
7. Bach's **initials**, J. S., **stand for** _____.
8. Mrs Mark Phillips' **maiden name** was _____.



9. The newest airport in Paris **is named after** _____.
10. Most Englishmen have pretended at some time in their life to be William Younger, **alias** _____.
11. Samuel Clemens' **pen-name** was _____.
12. The stretch of coastland between Toulon in France and Spezia in Italy **is known as** _____.
13. The tallest building in Paris **takes its name from** the engineer _____.
14. Someone **christened** Adolph Schickelgruber became world-famous **under the name of** _____.
15. The film recognised as the first 'talking picture' **was entitled** _____.
16. During the seventies **a certain** Cassius Clay **changed his name to** _____.

Answers: 1. Buffalo Bill. 2. Prince Edward. 3. Ringo Starr. 4. Wolfgang Amadeus. 5. Kennedy International Airport. 6. Greta Garbo. 7. Johann Sebastian. 8. Princess Anne. 9. Charles de Gaulle. 10. Billy the Kid. 11. Mark Twain. 12. The Riviera. 13. Eiffel. 14. Adolph Hitler – the best known false name in the world. 15. The Jazz Singer. 16. Mohammed Ali.

13

Translate the following sentences into English.



1. Хлопчик на прізвисько Блискавка був найшвидшим бігуном у класі.
2. Коли дівчата виходять заміж, вони інколи не змінюють свої дівочі прізвища на прізвища своїх чоловіків.
3. Коли автори не хочуть писати вірші під справжніми іменами, вони вигадують собі псевдоніми.
4. Я не підписала листа повним іменем, а вказала лише ініціали.
5. Назва цієї станції метро походить від імені відомого російського письменника.
6. Головний університет м. Києва названий на честь



Т. Шевченка. 7. Не обзивай людей! Це образливо. 8. Мою доньку звати так само як і мою маму, отож вони тезки. 9. Станція метро Республіканській стадіон була перейменована на Олімпійську в 2011 році. 10. "ММ" означає "засоби масової інформації".

Appearance

14

Think about hair first. Read different descriptions of hair in the two life stories below.

From the Neck up

	 Him	 Her
at birth	thick (jet) black hair	a few mousy strands
aged 3	curly brown hair	hair in bunches fastened with slides, grips and ribbons
at 13	a crew cut – an early skinhead	hair in plaits, otherwise completely straight
at 16	long sideboards, spiky	in a bun
at 19	shoulder-length hair	back-combed, with a ponytail
at 23	wavy, swept-back, with a side parting 	<i>January:</i> she's a blonde <i>March:</i> she's a brunette <i>May:</i> she's a redhead (she's got auburn hair) <i>July:</i> she's an ash-blonde <i>October:</i> she's dyed in pink
at 28	neat style with a fringe	frizzy, slightly streaked
at 35	a few grey hairs	combed forward, a few highlights
at 40	his hair is receding	she's greying
at 45	he's balding	her hair is thinning, so she's experimenting with a wig
at 50	he's trying a toupee	her hair is going white fast
at 55	completely bald	the wig's matted, unmanageable so she has a blue rinse 

15

Read the advertisements and translate them.

CLOVER SHAMPOO

- ✓ For **dry, normal** and **greasy** hair
 - ✓ Gets rid of **split ends**
 - ✓ **Flyaway hair** will be a thing of the past
 - ✓ Fights **dandruff**
 - ✓ Gives your hair **body**.
- 5** good reasons to start using **CLOVER!**



AHEAD OF TIME

Unisex Hair Salon suggests:

- ✓ **Trim**
- ✓ **Cut and Blow Dry**
- ✓ **Perm(anent Waving)**
- ✓ **Razor cutting**
- ✓ **Highlights**



16

Copy the table. Then listen to the descriptions of the five people and fill in the details. Here are some of the words and expressions you will hear:

Jobs: nurse, secretary, policewoman, printer's reader, works with racehorses; part-time.

Build: slim, heavily built.

Clothes: shirt, blouse, sweater, T-shirt, trousers, jeans, skirt, ear-ring, olive-green, striped, short-sleeved.

NAME	<i>Keith</i>	<i>Sue</i>	<i>John</i>	<i>Alexandra</i>	<i>Jane</i>
AGE					
MARRIED					
CHILDREN					
JOB					
HEIGHT					
HAIR					
BUILD					

➤ Now give a short description of every person.

17

There are a lot of compound adjectives in English. Here are some common ones which are formed from the parts of the body. Mind these adjectives are used with verb to be. Look at the list of similar compound adjectives below and guess what they mean. Then complete each sentence with the appropriate adjective(s).

<i>left-handed</i>	<i>double-breasted</i>	<i>narrow-waisted</i>	<i>cold-blooded</i>
<i>big-headed</i>	<i>right-footed</i>	<i>pot-bellied</i>	<i>red-faced</i>
<i>round-shouldered</i>	<i>sour-faced</i>	<i>cross-eyed</i>	<i>knock-kneed</i>
<i>slim-hipped</i>	<i>light-fingered</i>	<i>strong-willed</i>	<i>bow-legged</i>
<i>empty-handed</i>	<i>dark-skinned</i>	<i>fair-haired</i>	<i>broad-minded</i>

1. My boss is terribly _____, walking around as if he were holding his salary cheque between his knees. His wife's quite the opposite: _____, as if she had just got off a horse.
2. I used to wear _____ suits until I decided that one button was far more suitable for _____ people such as myself.
3. My sister is so _____ and _____ she reminds me of one of those long thin wine bottles.
4. He's Scandinavian, so he's _____ and _____, and looks far better in jeans than I do.
5. It looked as if United were going to return home _____ until Bradfield scored with an incredibly powerful _____ shot from outside the penalty area.
6. Off we go on holiday with visions of returning _____ and beautiful, forgetting that we always come back _____ and with peeling backs.
7. Hoskins, if you go on staring at that magazine any longer, you'll go _____. Now either be _____, dear boy, and put it away or give it to me until the end of the lesson.
8. My boss is so _____, always looking as if he knew tomorrow was going to be the end of the world. And his wife is so _____; I have to keep a careful eye on my things when they come round to the house, or they just disappear.
9. Most _____ tennis players seem to win more easily against right-handers. Talking of tennis players, aren't those professionals a _____ bunch, shouting all the time about how great they are?
10. A lot of liberal, _____ people find it difficult to accept that there is such a thing as a _____ murder.



18

Complete each sentence with the appropriate word from the list below. Note that they are all adjectives made from parts of the body, and that '*bloody*' is a frequently used and not very rude swear word.

<i>hairy</i>	<i>cheeky</i>	<i>bloody</i>	<i>leggy</i>	<i>handy</i>
<i>nosey</i>	<i>heartly</i>	<i>skinny</i>	<i>heady</i>	<i>chesty</i>

1. _____ congratulations on your success!
2. I could watch those _____ women high jumpers for hours.

3. That sounds like a rather _____ cough you've got.
4. The shops are quite _____ – only two minutes' walk.
5. No, you can't borrow my girlfriend for the evening! Don't be so _____!
6. It's nothing to do with you what we're doing tonight! Don't be so _____!
7. She's so _____ that when she turns sideways, she's almost invisible!
8. Did you know he's got a _____ chest? Like a doormat, it is!
9. I reckon you'd have to be a _____ fool to want to learn this _____ stupid language!
10. I feel quite _____ after getting all those right. Or perhaps it's the champagne.

19 You will hear four people describing their friends. Complete the table.

Name	Donna	Colin	Janet	Robert
Age				
Height				
Hair colour				
Hair style				
Face				
Eyes				
Complexion				
Distinguishing features				
Dress				
Personality				

20 Speaking



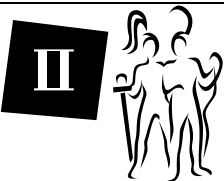
- Think and describe the best friend of yours.
- Describe one of your relatives having the most distinguishing appearance.
- Think about one of your group-mates, give a detailed description, let them guess who this person is.

Character and Personality

21 Make a class survey and find out how many people believe in horoscopes and their Zodiac Signs.

Star Game

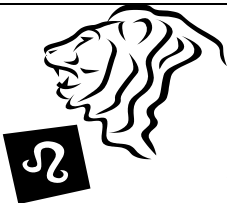
Are we the kind of people we are because of the time of the year we were born? See if you can complete the adjectives below. Each one has a clue beside to help you and a dot for each letter that you need to add.

	ARIES (Mar 21 – Apr 20)	
You won't find him in the corner at the party		o.tg.i.g
That's her doing the can-can on the table		ex...v.rt
She has no problems		c..ef . ee
He never frowns		l...t-h.a.t.d
She tells no lies		t.u.hf..
He has few secrets		o..n
He'll tell you if he doesn't like your make-up		c.n.id
She'll tell you if she doesn't like your after-shave		f...k
He's the person to ask for that five pounds you are owed		e.y-g...g
	TAURUS (Apr 21 – May 20)	
He knows what he wants and he usually gets it		s.r.n.-wi..ed
She never gives up without a fight		d.t.r.i.ed
He knows he is good		s.l.-as.u..d
She knows she's as good		s.l.-co..i..nt
She likes to be the boss, the one on top		d.m.n.nt
He wants to be even bigger, even better – the best		am..t.o.s
and expects high standards of performance from others		d.m.n.i.g
He works 18 hours a day, jogs, and plays squash		e.e.ge..c
She hates to lose, in business or at tiddlywinks		c.mp...t..e
	GEMINI (May 21 – Jun 20)	
She thinks she's good		p.o.d
He thinks he's superior to everyone		a.r.g..t
“As the most experienced and sensible person present, I...”		p.mp..s
“Of course, I could have beaten him even more easily, but I wanted to give him a chance”		b..stf.l
She won't share her presents with her sister		s..f..h
He spends half the day in front of the mirror		v..n
She thinks the whole world revolves around her		s..f-c.n.r.d
He thinks he's the center of the universe		e.oc..t..c
She looks down on anyone who hasn't got a heated indoor swimming pool at home		s.o.b..h



CANCER (Jun 21 – Jul 20)

She seems to enjoy finding fault with others	c.it...l
He'll take off marks if you don't dot your i's	p.t.y
She can only ever see one side of things	na...w-m.n..d
He always likes the fat taken off his bacon	f.s.y
He's like a donkey	s.u.b.r.
She's like a mule	o.s.in.t.
He loves money, loves having "things"	m.t.r.a.i.t.c
Oh yes, he'll help you – if you make it worth while	m.r.en.ry
She never lets her husband out of her sight	p.ss.ss.e



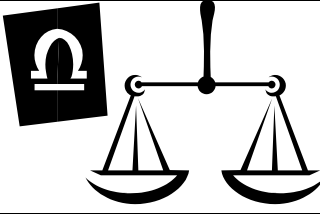

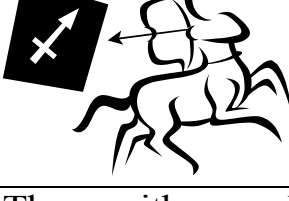
LEO (Jul 21 – Aug 21)



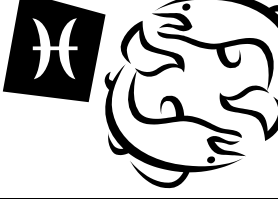
You never know what he's going to do	u.p.ed.ct..le
He never knows what he's going to do	i.d.c.s.ve
There are two things I don't like about her – her face	t.o-f...d
Be careful what he's saying about you behind your back	h.po.r.t.c.l
Be careful what she's doing while your back is turned	d.sh.n..t
He behaves like the weather in April	cha.g.a.le
She behaves like the proverbial prima donna	t.mp.r.m..t.l
He says what I want to hear, not what he thinks	i.s.nc.r.
He never does all the things he says he'll do	u.r.l.a.l.



VIRGO (Aug 22 – Sep 22)

Other people's points of view always impress him	i.p.e.s.on..le
She'd believe you if you told her pizzas grew on trees	g.ll.ble
She lacks will-power	w..k-w....d
He lacks courage	c.w..d.y
He doesn't do much – he just sits back and watches	p.s..v.
She'll do what she's told	ob.d...t
You never know what he's thinking	s.cr.t..e
"It was an honour just to be on the same court as McEnroe.	h.mb.e
How I beat him 6-0, 6-0, 6-0? It was just luck	m.d..t

 LIBRA (Sep 23 – Oct 22)	
He uses his common sense	s.n.i.le
She never does silly things under pressure	l.v.l-h..d.d
She's like the Libran symbol of the scales	w..l-b.l.n.ed
She'd solve all the problems on a desert island, and nothing would upset her	p.ac..c.l c..m
He'd be a good judge or referee	f..r-m..d.d
She's got both feet on the ground and is really down-to-earth	r.al..t.c
His heart rarely rules his head	r.t..n.l
I think, therefore I am. That's my approach	l.g.c.l
 SCORPIO (Oct 23 – Nov 22)	
Keep out of her way when she loses her temper	a.gr..s.v.
He's always the first one to put his fists up,	v..l.nt
And he's quick to use them – to the full	b.u.al
He may even add a boot or two for good measure	v.c.o.s
She won't let anything stand in her way	r..hl..s
He has no principles about hurting other people	u.sc.u.u.ous
He almost seems to enjoy causing trouble	m.l.c.ous
She's a strong believer in an eye for an eye,	sp.t...l
and a tooth – or, in her case, teeth – for a tooth	v.n.i.t.ve
 SAGITTARIUS (Nov 23 – Dec 20)	
Those with some Latin blood in their veins	p.s.i.n.t.
They are fiery and emotional	h..-bl..d.d
She's not afraid to go mountain climbing,	c.ur.g...s
Or to join a mountain rescue team	b.a.e
He wants to go to wild places	a.v.nt.r..s
They are vivacious, like champagne bubbles	l.v.l.
She puts her heart and soul into her profession	d.d.c.t.d
On the sinking ship, the dog never left his master	d.v.t.d
These friends do not desert you in crisis	l.y.l

 <p style="text-align: center;">CAPRICORN (Dec 21 – Jan 19)</p>	
He'd always stop to help a disabled person across the road	c.ns.d....e
That's her on the beach wiping oil off the sea-birds' feathers	t.nd..
She wouldn't hurt a fly	g.nt..
He leaves \$10 tips	g.n.r..s
He wouldn't mind if she dyed her hair green	t.l.r..t
She lets him sleep when he gets back from work	u.d.rst.n.i.g
He defends her in any argument	p.o.ect.ve
She kisses him on the cheek every minute or so	a.f.c.i.n.te
She always sends a card on her parents' anniversary	th..g.tf.l
 <p style="text-align: center;">AQUARIUS (Jan 20 – Feb 18)</p>	
If she likes you, she'll fling her arms around you	i.p.l.i.e
He jumps into the bath without testing the water	i.p.t.ous
Lose your way with her in the car? You'd better not!	i.p.t.e.t
He's constantly like a child on Christmas Eve	ex.i.abl.
He's a typical "angry young man"	r.b.l.i.us
She's Trotsky, Castro and Guevara all rolled into one	r...lut.o..ry
He's got a memory like a sieve	f..g.tf..
If she gets an idea in her head, there's no stopping her	u.c.n.r.l.a.l.
 <p style="text-align: center;">PISCES (Feb 19 – Mar 20)</p>	
There she is, over there, on her own in the corner	s.y
He's afraid that the whole world is looking at him	s.l.-c..s..ous
She peeps round her front door like a mouse	t.m.d
He's always the last to introduce himself	r.s..ved
Be careful not to upset her. It's easily done	s.n.i..ve
He can see beauty in a pile of rubbish	i..gin....e
He can then turn the pile of rubbish into a work of art	c.e.t.v.
I was moved to tears by the beauty of his sculpture	em.t....l
He doesn't know who he is, where he is, what to do or why	u.sta.le

22 Which of these traits of character do you most dislike in a partner? Place them in order.

vanity	hypocrisy	pomposity	stubbornness
obstinacy	selfishness	dishonesty	pettiness
arrogance	snobbishness	timidity	possessiveness
shyness	meanness	rashness	aggressiveness

23 Which of these qualities is most important to you in a partner? Place them in order of importance.

compassion	vivacity	frankness	self-assurance
tolerance	patience	generosity	ambition
sincerity	imagination	passion	humility
modesty	sensitivity	courage	creativity

24 We often use prefixes to form the opposite of an adjective. The most common prefixes are un-, in-, im-. Complete the columns. Write one opposite adjective using a prefix and another opposite adjective, which is a different word from the box.

<i>sad</i>	<i>out of date</i>	<i>stupid</i>	<i>ugly</i>	<i>arrogant</i>	<i>cheap</i>	<i>cruel</i>
	<i>strange/rare</i>	<i>casual</i>	<i>rude</i>	<i>boring</i>	<i>wrong</i>	
Adjective	Opposite (<i>adj+prefix</i>)		Opposite (<i>different word</i>)			
happy						
polite						
expensive						
interesting						
correct						
attractive						
fashionable						
intelligent						
usual						
kind						
formal						
modest						

25 Substitute the sentences with one of the adjectives from the box.

<i>easy-going</i>	<i>gentle</i>	<i>witty</i>	<i>frank</i>	<i>courageous</i>
<i>open-hearted</i>	<i>generous</i>	<i>merry</i>	<i>good</i>	<i>self-determined</i>
<i>sincere</i>	<i>skillful</i>	<i>greedy</i>	<i>timid</i>	<i>a man of character</i>
<i>reliable</i>	<i>energetic</i>	<i>handy</i>	<i>kind</i>	<i>weak-willed</i>
<i>cheerful</i>	<i>ambitious</i>	<i>humble</i>	<i>shy</i>	

1. Peter always has a ready answer to every remark.
2. Ann always has her own way in everything.
3. I know that he never let his friend down.
4. His gloomy remarks and sad face would spoil the mood of any company.
5. Her father never grudges her anything.
6. He often doesn't know how to react to her remarks.
7. I don't think there's anything he's afraid of.
8. He often promises and never keeps his word.
9. You can rely upon Maggie. She never lets the cat out of the bag.
10. Becky easily won the hearts of all those who met her.
11. Tom never dropped any work half-way.



26

Fill the gaps with an adjective from the box. Use each word once only.

*selfish bad-tempered tough crafty sensitive sensible strict
trustworthy dull shy mean reliable stubborn silly nice
cheerful sympathetic clumsy loyal gentle*

1. Janet is incredibly _____. She always arrives on time and does her job well.
2. It's impossible to say anything to his grandmother. One word and she starts crying. She is so _____.
3. I wonder why he is so _____? He's got lots of money but he hates spending it.
4. When she was a child, her parents were incredibly _____. Whenever she did the smallest thing wrong they would send her to bed.
5. Ann is such a _____ girl. She is always laughing and smiling.
6. You can't go on a country walk wearing high heels. Do be _____ for once.
7. I'll give you a lift home if you're _____ to me.
8. She was so _____. When I told her my problems, I immediately felt better.
9. In westerns the hero is always _____. He always beats his enemies and can put up with any hardship.
10. That's the second plate you've broken this week. Why do you have to be so _____?
11. I think he is an extremely _____ boy. He laughs at stupid things and never concentrates in class.
12. Children are often really _____. They hind behind their mothers when guests come.
13. Don't be _____, Cathy. You've got to learn to share things with other children.
14. She is 100% _____. I'd leave my money, car, anything, for her to look after.
15. When I broke my leg, the nurse was so _____ that she hardly hurt me at all.
16. Why do you get angry all the time? You are so _____.



17. Bob is my best friend. He remained _____ through all my problems.
18. He is such a _____ person with his boring little job and his boring little wife.
19. He is terribly _____. Once he has made up his mind, it is impossible to get him to change it, even if it's obvious that he's wrong.
20. The general was really _____. Just when the enemy thought they had won the battle, he played his best card.

27 Use the word in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.

Jack's Real Character

How easy is it to understand another person's character? My friend Jack, was once a rather (1) _____ person. He was always getting into trouble at school because he was so (2) _____. In class he was very (3) _____ and never stopped making jokes. The teachers all told him he was (4) _____ because he interrupted them. When I met him he was very (5) _____ and didn't want to talk to me at all. People told me that he stole things and that he was (6) _____. His school work was terrible. He didn't take any (7) _____ in his writing, he never spent enough time doing his homework, and he was not at all (8) _____. One day he saw a gang of boys attacking an old man. Jack hated (9) _____ and he fought them all until they ran away. He was awarded a medal for (10) _____. After that, people changed their minds about him.

- ANNOY
OBEY
TALK
POLITE
FRIEND

HONEST
PROUD

CONSCIENCE
VIOLENT
BRAVE

28 Choose the most suitable word or phrase to complete each sentence.

- You can't tell what someone is like just from their _____.
a) character b) appearance c) personality d) looking
- I was born in Scotland but I _____ in Northern Ireland.
a) grew up b) raised c) brought up d) rose
- Edward was named after one of his father's distant _____.
a) family b) brothers c) members d) relations
- Jane and Brian got married a year after they got _____.
a) divorced b) proposed c) engaged d) separated
- Graham works well in class, but his _____ could be better.
a) rudeness b) behaviour c) politeness d) acting
- Julie had a terrible _____ with her parents last night.
a) row b) discussion c) argue d) dispute
- I got to _____ Steve well last year when we worked together.
a) introduce b) know c) meet d) sympathise

8. Is Brenda married or _____? I don't like to ask her.
 a) spinster b) alone c) bachelor d) single
9. Parents and teachers have to try hard to understand the younger _____.
 a) generation b) people c) adolescents d) teenagers
10. My father likes to be called a "senior citizen", not an old age _____.
 a) person b) relative c) gentleman d) pensioner

29

Complete each sentence with one suitable word.

- After a few days they realised they were _____ love.
- I went _____ with a very interesting girl last week.
- Andrew acts as _____ he was the most important person in the room.
- After two years, their marriage broke _____.
- John discovered that he was related _____ his next door neighbour.
- My parents keep treating me _____ a child, but I'm not one!
- I was brought _____ by my aunt after my parents died.
- It was very kind _____ you to give me a lift.
- Teachers should be patient _____ small children.
- James was very disappointed _____ his new job.
- It's very _____ of character for Bill to behave like that.
- Most famous people behave quite normally _____ private.



30

Complete each sentence by replacing the words underlined with one of the verbs in the list. Use each verb once only.

call in turn up put up with take after look up to
fall out count on get on well with turn down give away

- The wedding was cancelled when the bride failed to arrive.
- Susan feels that her boss is someone to respect.
- I'm sorry, but I just can't stand your behaviour any longer.
- My brother and I really have a good relationship with our parents.
- Why don't you visit my house on your way home from the shops?
- Tony felt that he could rely on his friend Mary.
- The millionaire decided to make a present of his money to the poor.
- Paula and Shirley are good friends but sometimes they quarrel.
- Jean decided to refuse Chris's offer of marriage.
- All three children behave like their father and are very sociable.



31

Complete each sentence with a word from the list. Use each word only once.

Ann Johnson – A Confidential Report



Ann Johnson has worked at this college for three years. She is a (1) _____ employee, and (2) _____ on well with the other members of the department. We have all found her to be an excellent (3) _____. She has always been (4) _____ for her _____ lessons, and is an extremely (5) _____ member of staff who is able to work independently. I can always (6) _____ on her to organise the end of term play, and she has put on some extremely (7) _____ productions.

Her students often tell me how (8) _____ she is, always ready with a smile, and she has been very (9) _____ to many of them. In (10) _____ she is not very talkative and seems rather (11) _____ at first, and might not show her true (12) _____ in an interview. Her work is excellent, and she is (13) _____ to succeed. She is also quite (14) _____, and has applied for two other positions as Director of Studies. I think that you can count (15) _____ Ann to make your school a success and I recommend her for the post of Director.

- | | | | | |
|-----|------------------|-----------------|------------------|--------------|
| 1. | a) conscientious | b) conscience | c) consciousness | d) conscious |
| 2. | a) goes | b) carries | c) gets | d) likes |
| 3. | a) colleague | b) adult | c) employer | d) fellow |
| 4. | a) timed | b) late | c) hourly | d) punctual |
| 5. | a) greedy | b) reliable | c) stubborn | d) lazy |
| 6. | a) request | b) concentrate | c) take | d) rely |
| 7. | a) imaginary | b) imagination | c) imaginative | d) imagined |
| 8. | a) tempered | b) cheerful | c) frank | d) proud |
| 9. | a) kind | b) aggressive | c) polite | d) mean |
| 10. | a) first | b) times | c) usual | d) private |
| 11. | a) but | b) shy | c) however | d) alone |
| 12. | a) person | b) behavior | c) character | d) part |
| 13. | a) used | b) determined | c) had | d) supposed |
| 14. | a) obedient | b) disappointed | c) grateful | d) ambitious |
| 15. | a) on | b) for | c) with | d) to |

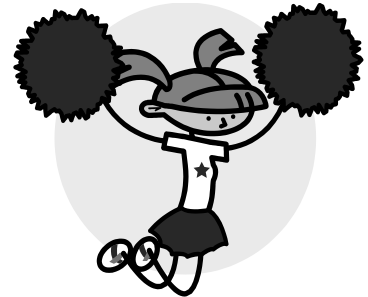
32

☛ There are some questions that are similar in form but not the same in meaning. Look at these questions.

- a. What does she like?
- b. What is she like?
- c. What does she look like?
- d. How is she?

➤ **Say which answer (1, 2, 3, 4) goes with each question (a, b, c, d), and discuss the difference between the questions.**

- 1. She is not very well, actually. She's got a bad cold.
- 2. She's really nice. Very friendly and open, and good fun to be with.
- 3. She likes swimming and skiing, and she is a keen football fan.
- 4. She's quite tall, average build, with straight brown hair.



33 🎧 **You are going to hear ten short tapes. Each one is the answer to one of the questions in ex. 32 (a, b, c, d). Listen to the tapes and decide which the most appropriate question is.**

- | | | | | |
|------|----|----|----|-----|
| 1. b | 3. | 5. | 7. | 9. |
| 2. | 4. | 6. | 8. | 10. |

34 🎧 **Listen to these people describing someone. Who do you think they are describing? A relative? Someone they know professionally?**

Some words and phrases to remember:

to curse sb – лаяти, сварити когось;

to twist sb round one's finger – обвести когось навколо пальця;

unadventurous – неспіливий, не відчайдушний, не ризикований;

predictable – передбачуваний;

to wear expensive after-shave – користуватися дорогим лосьйоном після гоління.

Attitudes and Relationships

35 **Read through the text below to check on some of the language we use to describe our feelings for other people – from *adoring* them to *tolerating* and to *hating* them.**

Tim and Lenny **can't stand each other**. They **loathe** each other; **hate the sight of** each other. Lenny seems to **envy** Tim his stripes and Tim **is envious of** Lenny's spots. We all **have great respect for** Leo; **respect mingled with fear**. Sammy **frightens** everyone. Even Tim and Lenny **keep out of his way**, and Leo admits to being **slightly afraid of** him. The chickens are **terrified of** him and the rabbits are **petrified**; they **nearly have a heart attack** if you just group



behind and hiss.

Clarence always seems **to have a chip on his shoulder** – as if he **has a grudge against** the whole world. The others **ignore** him. Everyone **looks up to** George.

Zoe and Pat are **very close**. They seem to **enjoy each other's company** and **get on** very well together. I suppose they **have a lot in common**: same taste in clothes, etc. Penny, who has a love-hate relationship with Pat, is getting **jealous**, though. Percy makes everyone feel a bit **uneasy**; none of us can **relax in his company**. We all remember his past pricks and so **are wary of** him.

Nobody **trusts** Charlie; they say you never know what he is thinking. Dear Henry **is amused by** everything and everybody.

Everyone **keeps their distance from** Ronny.

Everyone **admires** hardworking Sarah. She **impressed** us all last autumn particularly.

Oswald **is** very **badly treated**. Everyone **looks down on** him; even wise old Orville **regards** him **with contempt**. The poor chap, he's **developed** quite an **inferiority complex**, just because he can't fly.

There's **general sympathy for** Harry. I'm not sure whether we **pity** him **for** his ugliness or **feel sorry for** him having to carry all that weight around.

We're all **fond of** Donna, but she seems quite **indifferent to** us. (I get the feeling that she's only **in love with** herself, just sitting around all day singing protest songs about Love and Peace and things.) It's difficult **to get through to** her.

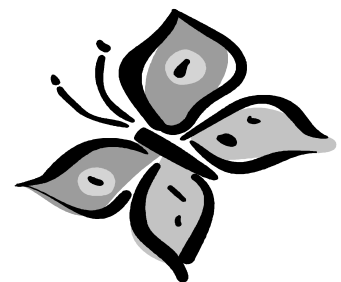
Gordon is **fascinated by** the butterflies, absolutely **captivated**. They seem **to find him pretty intriguing** too.

To a man, we're **all bored stiff by, fed up with** and **sick to death of** Polly, who goes on all day about nothing in particular.

We **detest** and **despise** Valerie for giving us all a bad name.

Everybody **despairs of** Lou and his friends, throwing themselves off cliffs like that. We **resent** Bruin's and Bunny's popularity with children; their dressing up in people's clothes is definitely **frowned on**.

Secretly, I think we all still **miss** Dudley.



36

Use each of the expressions below to say a true statement about the way you relate to people you know. You will need to add a preposition with each expression.



Model:

to be in love _____

I'm *in love with* my neighbour and I don't know how to tell her about that.

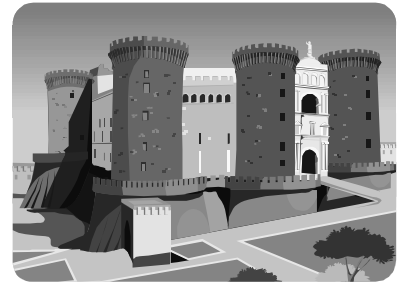
- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. to feel sorry _____ | 8. to have a lot in common _____ |
| 2. to hate the sight _____ | 9. to be fascinated _____ |
| 3. to be terrified _____ | 10. to feel indifferent _____ |
| 4. to have great respect _____ | 11. to be fed up _____ |
| 5. to can't get through _____ | 12. to be very fond _____ |
| 6. to be wary _____ | 13. to look up _____ |
| 7. to get on well _____ | 14. to look down _____ |

37 Complete this letter with the correct form of *the Present Simple* or *the Present Continuous*. Use each verb in the list once. The first (0) is given as an example.

*stand seem write be make shine stay
taste look cost feel*

Dear Jill,

I (0) *am writing* to you from Granada where everything (1) _____ to be going just fine; we (2) _____ nice and relaxed. We (3) _____ in a gorgeous hotel just down the road from the Alhambra, which (4) _____ an old fortress built by the Moors. It (5) _____ at the top of the hill just opposite our hotel and



we can see this wonderful building through our window. It (6) _____ absolutely magnificent! The hotel is lovely, but unfortunately it (7) _____ a lot to stay here! Eating out is great. Have you heard of gazpacho? It's a cold cucumber and tomato soup which they (8) _____ with oil, vinegar and garlic and it (9) _____ delicious.

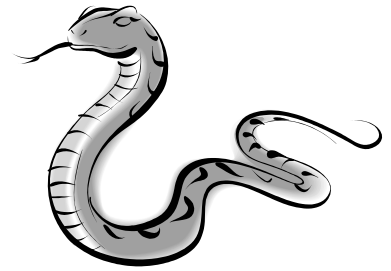
Well, outside the sun (10) _____ so I'm off to get a bit of a suntan; I hope everything's OK back in Birmingham.

Lucy.

38 Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Simple* or *the Present Continuous*.

1. Hardly anyone _____ (*wear*) a hat nowadays. 2. – I'm afraid I've broken one of your coffee cups. – Don't worry. I _____ (*not/like*) that set anyway. 3. When the curtain _____ (*rise*), we _____ (*see*) a group of workers. They _____ (*picket*) a factory gate. 4. – It _____ (*save*) time if you _____ (*take*) the path through the wood? – No, it (*not/matter*) which path you take. 5. This is our

itinerary. We _____ (*leave*) home on the 8th, _____ (*arrive*) in Paris on the 9th, _____ (*spend*) the day in Paris, and _____ (*set*) out that night for Venice. – That _____ (*sound*) most interesting. You must tell me all about it when you _____ (*get*) back. **6.** This story is about a boy who _____ (*make*) friends with a snake which he _____ (*find*) in his garden. Then he _____ (*go*) away but he _____ (*not/forget*) the snake and some years later he _____ (*return*) and _____ (*look*) for it. He _____ (*find*) the snake who _____ (*recognize*) its old friend and _____ (*coil*) round him affectionately. But, unfortunately, the snake is by now a full-grown boa-constrictor and its embrace _____ (*kill*) the poor boy. – _____ (*the snake/feel*) sorry about this? – I _____ (*not/know*). The story _____ (*end*) there. **7.** – How _____ (*you/end*) a letter that _____ (*begin*), “Dear Sir”? – I _____ (*always/put*), “Yours truly”, but Tom _____ (*prefer*) “Yours faithfully”. **8.** – What _____ (*the word “catastrophe”/mean*)? – It _____ (*mean*) “disaster”. **9.** – What _____ (*you/wait*) for? – I _____ (*wait*) for the shop to open. – But it _____ (*not/open*) till 9.00. – I _____ (*know*) but I _____ (*want*) to be early, as their sale _____ (*start*) today. **10.** – Why _____ (*you/smoke*) a cigar, Mrs Pitt? You _____ (*not/smoke*) cigars as a rule. – I _____ (*smoke*) it because I _____ (*want*) the ash. This book _____ (*say*) that cigar ash mixed with oil _____ (*remove*) heat stains from wood. **11.** – Who _____ (*own*) this umbrella? – I _____ (*not/know*). Everybody _____ (*use*) it but nobody _____ (*know*) who _____ (*own*) it. **12.** – _____ (*you/mind*) if I _____ (*ask*) you a question? – That _____ (*depend*) on the question. – It _____ (*concern*) your brother. – I _____ (*refuse*) to answer any question about my brother. **13.** – I _____ (*wish*) that dog would lie down. He _____ (*keep*) jumping up on my lap. – I _____ (*think*) he _____ (*want*) to go for a walk.



39 Complete the gaps using the verbs from the box. Each verb is used once as a stative verb and once as a dynamic verb.

<i>think</i>	<i>admire</i>	<i>be</i>	<i>appear</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>expect</i>
	<i>see</i>	<i>weigh</i>	<i>look</i>	<i>represent</i>	

1. They don't really like living here. They _____ of moving. **2.** We _____ dinner at the moment so I'll phone you back in half an hour if that's O.K. **3.** Harry's been in his room for ages. He _____ at all his old photos. **4.** I really _____ Helen. She's an excellent manager. **5.** Penelope Fitzgerald _____ in a new production of Oliver in London's West End. **6.** I'm quite happy for your children to come to the party because I know they _____ very well-behaved. **7.**



The snake in this picture _____ the forces of evil. **8.** – How much you _____? – About 60 kilos. **9.** _____ you that man over there with the grey suit on? He’s my brother. **10.** I’m really looking forward to this holiday. The hotel _____ lovely in the photos. **11.** I can’t come out tonight because I _____ Paul. **12.** I’ll do it if I can, but I not _____ much time today. **13.** What you _____ of the management’s new proposals? **14.** – What are you doing in here? – I _____ just this painting. I think it’s really beautiful. **15.** – Where’s the baby? – They _____ her. Look, there she is on the scales.

16. I haven’t spoken to him much but he _____ to be a very nice man. **17.** Look at Nick out in the garden. He _____ really nice to the younger children. **18.** So Peter’s still not here. I _____ he’s forgotten about the meeting. **19.** – I hope you’ve got a good lawyer. – Yes, Alison Medley _____ me at the trial. She’s the best lawyer in town.

40

Put the verbs in the appropriate tense form.

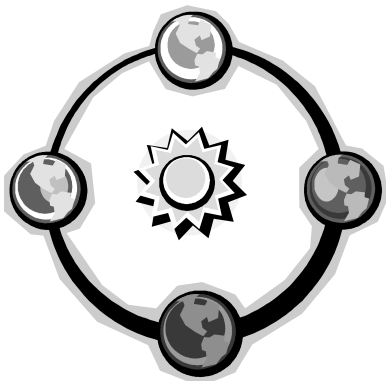
1. Debby _____ (*work*) as an administration at the university. She _____ (*organize*) all the timetables and teaching schedules. She _____ (*work*) very long hours at the moment because it’s the start of the academic year but she _____ (*go*) on a short holiday at the end of the month.
2. Simon and Sylvia _____ (*stay*) in a cottage in the Yorkshire Dales this month. The cottage _____ (*belong*) to a cousin of Sylvia’s but the cousin is away: she _____ (*cycle*) around Norfolk for a few weeks. Simon and Sylvia often _____ (*use*) the cottage when Sylvia’s cousin is away. They really _____ (*enjoy*) being in the middle of the countryside.
3. The International School for Languages _____ (*do*) very well at the moment. About two hundred students _____ (*take*) evening classes this term. Many of them _____ (*need*) to learn a new language to improve their job prospects but some of them _____ (*learn*) a new language purely for pleasure. The European languages _____ (*be*) very popular but Japanese and Russian _____ (*get*) more popular too. The school _____ (*provide*) good learning facilities and _____ (*organize*) a range of study tours.
4. The world population still _____ (*increase*) rapidly. Many people in the world already _____ (*starve*) and many more _____ (*suffer*) from malnutrition. The population _____ (*grow*) fastest in the poorest countries where people _____ (*need*) to have children to look after them in their old age and where many of their children _____ (*die*) at a very young age.



41

Translate into English using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.

1. Ну що ти сидиш? Поквапся! Вже йде автобус, і я не бажаю на нього зазімлюватися. 2. Ніл впадає у Середземне море. 3. Дивись, твій син лізе на дерево. Він може впасти. 4. Він слухає музику в навушниках, і більш ніхто її не чує. 5. – Ти знаєш, я купила нові парфуми. – Цікаво, а як вони пахнуть? – О, в них чудовий запах. – А можна понюхати? 6. – Чому ти не куштуєш суп? – Мені здається, він пахне часником, а я не люблю спеції. 7. – А де

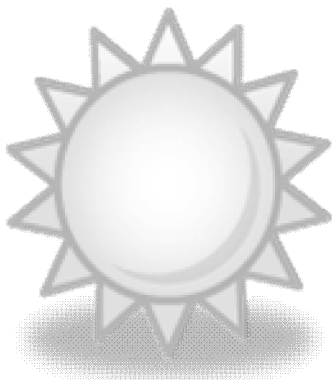


Роберт? – Я його теж не бачу. – Кажуть, він зараз зайнятий, готується до іспитів. 8. – Ти чуєш цей шум? – Я слухаю уважно, але нічого не чую. – А зараз я чую крики. – Тепер і я чую. 9. Земля обертається навколо Сонця. 10. Дощ все ще йде. Я бачу краплі дощу на склі. 11. Ці люди на вас так витріщаються. Ви їх знаєте? 12. Як називається журнал, який ви переглядаєте? 13. – Що ти слухаєш? – Я слухаю новий диск. 14. Я не люблю

таких людей, як він. Він завжди мріє, але нічого не робить, щоб здійснити свої мрії. 15. Зателефонуй на вокзал, будь ласка, і дізнайся, коли приходить потяг із Харкова. 16. Дістаньте ваш квиток. Контролер перевіряє квитки. 17. Ви помилились, ви передаєте мені гірчицю, а не перець. 18. Вона завжди жаліється на свого сина, коли б я її не зустрів. 19. Ви кажете, що скоро від'їжджаєте. Може, ви побудете тут, поки він не приїде? 20. Не заходьте до цієї кімнати, він проявляє пливки.

42

Give the comparative and superlative of the following adjectives if possible.



Hot, polite, glad, complete, grey, honourable, shy, dry, just, free, merry, uncomfortable, joyful, happy, thin, accurate, narrow, real, sweet, right, wicked, yellow, wooden, slender, little, low, quick, pleasant, funny, big, sad, good, old, patient, electric, stony, sudden, faithful, dear, monthly, ironic, deep, close, woolen, secure, clever, modest, well-known, fine-looking, short-sighted, good-natured, wide-spread, old-fashioned, well-read, strong-willed, narrow-minded.

43

Choose the right word to fill in the blanks.

1. a) The _____ Age is the earliest known period of human history. b) The ground here had always been _____. c) There came _____ silence. (*stone, stony*).

2. a) He was born with a _____ spoon in his mouth. b) There is a _____ birch under my window. c) Meryl was wearing a long _____ dress. d) From the hall there came the _____ chime of the old clock. (*silver, silvery*).

3. a) We need some _____ candles. b) Old Nancy had a _____ complexion. (*wax, waxen*).



4. a) Let's built a _____ man. b) We went to see him one _____ day in London. (*snow, snowy*).

5. a) I worked _____ - up to _____ - down. b) You have a wonderful _____ tan. c) It was a _____ day. d) Bob has a _____ disposition. (*sun, sunny*).

6. a) I think I'll buy this _____ scarf. b) This girl has _____ lashes. c) Her hair was very long and _____. (*silk, silky, silken*).

7. a) There are _____ daisies in the grass. b) He won a _____ medal. c) Sue wore a tiny _____ cross. d) These are _____ rules. e) The princess was a beautiful girl with _____ hair. f) They stopped before the _____ altar (*gold, golden, gilded*).

8. a) He was dressed in a good _____ suit. b) My Granny knitted a pair of long _____ socks for me. c) Betty had a _____ cap on. (*wool, woolly, woollen*).

9. a) They have a _____ house. b) He had a _____ head. (*wood, wooden*).

10. a) There was a _____ jug on the table. b) She is tired of her husband's _____ love affairs. (*brass, brazen*).

44

Choose the right words to fill in the blanks.

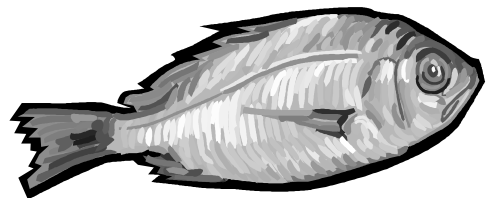
1. a) When Scott reached the _____ Pole, he saw the Norwegian flag already there. b) Antarctica is in the _____ Hemisphere. (*south, southern*).

2. a) This novel is based on a _____ story. b) I think Linda is a _____ person. (*true, truthful*).

3. a) It was a great, yes, it was a _____ change for the country. b) They played their part in the _____ process. (*historic, historical*).

4. a) He rents a flat in _____ London. b) These cliffs and grounds are in the _____ Hemisphere. (*north, northern*).

5. a) This fish is so bony! I find it _____! b) These beautiful fungi are _____. They are poisonous. (*uneatable, inedible*).



6. a) – John is as _____ as a girl. – Yes, he is very touchy. b) – On the other hand, he is a _____ boy. – Yes, I would say he is intelligent. (*sensible, sensitive*).

7. a) The country is having great _____ difficulties. b) This car is very _____. It needs little petrol. (*economic, economical*).

8. a) This chronicle gives a _____ presentation of events. b) The discovery of penicillin was a _____ event. (*historic, historical*).
9. a) The handwriting was _____, but I recognized it as Mark's. b) It may be a good novel, but I find it _____. (*unreadable, illegible*).
10. a) In our new flat we have an _____ cooker. b) Accumulator gave off a sudden _____ discharge. (*electric, electrical*).



45

Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Continuous tense.



1. The house _____ (*be*) in great disorder because he _____ (*redecorate*) it. 2. The director _____ (*not/allow*) the actors to travel by air while they _____ (*work*) on the film. 3. The car _____ (*have*) nobody in it but the engine _____ (*run*). 4. Two children _____ (*play*) on the sand and two fishermen _____ (*lean*) against an upturned boat. 5. He _____ (*have*) a bad fall while he _____ (*repair*) his roof. 6. He _____ (*say*) that he _____ (*be*) the captain of a ship which _____ (*sail*) that night for Marseilles. 7. Are you going to Rome? I thought that you _____ (*go*) to Milan. 8. My wife and I _____ (*talk*) about you the other day. 9. When I first _____ (*meet*) him, he _____ (*study*) painting. 10. There _____ (*be*) a strong smell and the sound of frying. Obviously Mrs Jones _____ (*cook*) fish. 11. Tom ate nothing for lunch because he _____ (*diet*). He said that he _____ (*try*) to lose 10 kilos. 12. While he _____ (*learn*) to drive he _____ (*have*) twenty-five accidents. 13. As she _____ (*climb*) the ladder it _____ (*slip*) sideways and she _____ (*fall*) off it. 14. There had been an accident and men _____ (*carry*) the injured people to an ambulance. 15. – Two men _____ (*fight*) at a street corner and a policeman _____ (*try*) to stop them. – What they _____ (*fight*) about? – Nobody _____ (*seem*) to know. 16. Tom _____ (*sit*) in a corner with a book. I _____ (*tell*) him that he _____ (*read*) in very bad light. 17. I _____ (*go*) into the garden to see what the boys _____ (*do*). James _____ (*weed*) and Alexander _____ (*cut*) the grass. 18. They had taken off the wheel of the car and _____ (*mend*) the puncture. I _____ (*ask*) when it would be ready. 19. When I _____ (*arrive*) at the meeting, the first speaker had just finished speaking and the audience _____ (*clap*). 20. The traffic _____ (*make*) so much noise that I _____ (*can/not*) hear what he _____ (*say*).

46

Underline the correct verb form in the sentences below. Explain your choice.

1. She *studied/was studying* in England last year.
2. He still *worked/was working* at seven.
3. They *belonged/were belonging* to the same group.
4. He *doubted/was doubting* that she would come.
5. The structure *consisted/were consisting* of several blocks.
6. The sofa *did not fit/was not fitting* into the corner.
7. They *knew/were knowing* what was going to happen next.
8. It *did not matter/was not mattering* in that situation.
9. The weather *seemed/was seeming* to change for better.
10. She *did not suspect/was not suspecting* anybody. Why should she?



47

Underline the correct word or phrase in the sentences below. Explain your choice.

1. She managed to see him *as/while* she was passing by.
2. At *that time/the moment* she came in, everybody started cheering.
3. They had their breakfast half an hour *after/late* their arrival.
4. He always called her *by the time/whenever* he arrived in town.
5. He was writing *while/when* she was reading.
6. They were traveling by train *while/when* he decided to leave.
7. They could not afford a car *until/up to* 2004.
8. We were finishing the preparations *while/when* an e-mail message came.
9. The weather was changing *while/when* the situation was not.
10. They were making grand plans *as/while* the new law was adopted.



48

Translate into English.



1. Коли він складав цю мелодію, то думав про свою кохану.
2. Коли він лагодив дах, то поранив собі руку.
3. Він бачив, що вона дуже старалася.
4. Поки Джеймс плавав у басейні, Мері засмагала.
5. Поки ми повторювали правила, учитель писав завдання на дошці.
6. Коли вона намагалася заснути, то рахувала до ста.
7. Коли ми спустилися східцями, ми зустріли сусідів.
8. Коли вона переказувала текст, то зробила кілька помилок.
9. Весь минулий рік він будував дачу.
10. Коли вона читала лист із дому, сльози текли по її щоках.
11. Вона сиділа у найзручнішому кріслі в будинку й плела шкарпетки онуку.
12. Вчора цілий день вона прибирала в квартирі.

49

Translate into English.

1. Пиріг був такий смачний, що я не міг від нього відірватися. 2. Колись у дитинстві я захоплювався плаванням. 3. Коли вона побачила, який він брудний, вона розсміялася замість того, щоб посварити його. 4. Він часто пропускав уроки, тому вчителі були ним дуже незадоволені. 5. Після обіду вона, зазвичай, виходила у садок, щоб залишитися на самоті. 6. Віктор був дуже

молодий, тому начальник не сприймав його всерйоз. 7. Вона окинула кімнату поглядом, вимкнула світло і замкнула двері. 8. Вона зробила нову зачіску, причепурилася і пішла до театру. 9. У кімнаті було так багато іграшок, що ніде було стати. 10. Чашка вислизнула з її рук, але, на щастя, не розбилася. 11. Вона мила посуд, поки не скінчилася гаряча вода. 12. Вона прибирала у коридорі, доки все не стало зовсім чистим. 13. Оскільки не було жодного сенсу починати працювати так пізно, він пішов спати. 14. У тій ситуації вона вирішила нічого не відповідати.

50

Get ready for your exam. Speak on the suggested topics.**Revision Topics**

1. About myself.
2. My family.
3. An only child in a family.
4. My parents and me. (Our relationships.)
5. My friend's appearance and disposition.
6. Appearance is deceitful.
7. The way I see myself.
8. My daily routine.
9. People I like and dislike.
10. My groupmates and me.
11. My favourite actor.
12. My idea of ideal spouse-to-be.
13. A love story.
14. Meeting new people.
- 15.*Generation gap.



MODULE TWO: THERE IS NO PLACE LIKE HOME

SECTION I. EXTERIOR

GRAMMAR:

- The Future Indefinite Tense

Homes



semi-detached house (BrE)



duplex (especially NAmE)



town house (BrE)



row house (NAmE)



terraced house (BrE)



block of flats (BrE)



fire escape

apartment building (NAmE)



bungalow (BrE)



thatched cottage



mobile home (especially NAmE)



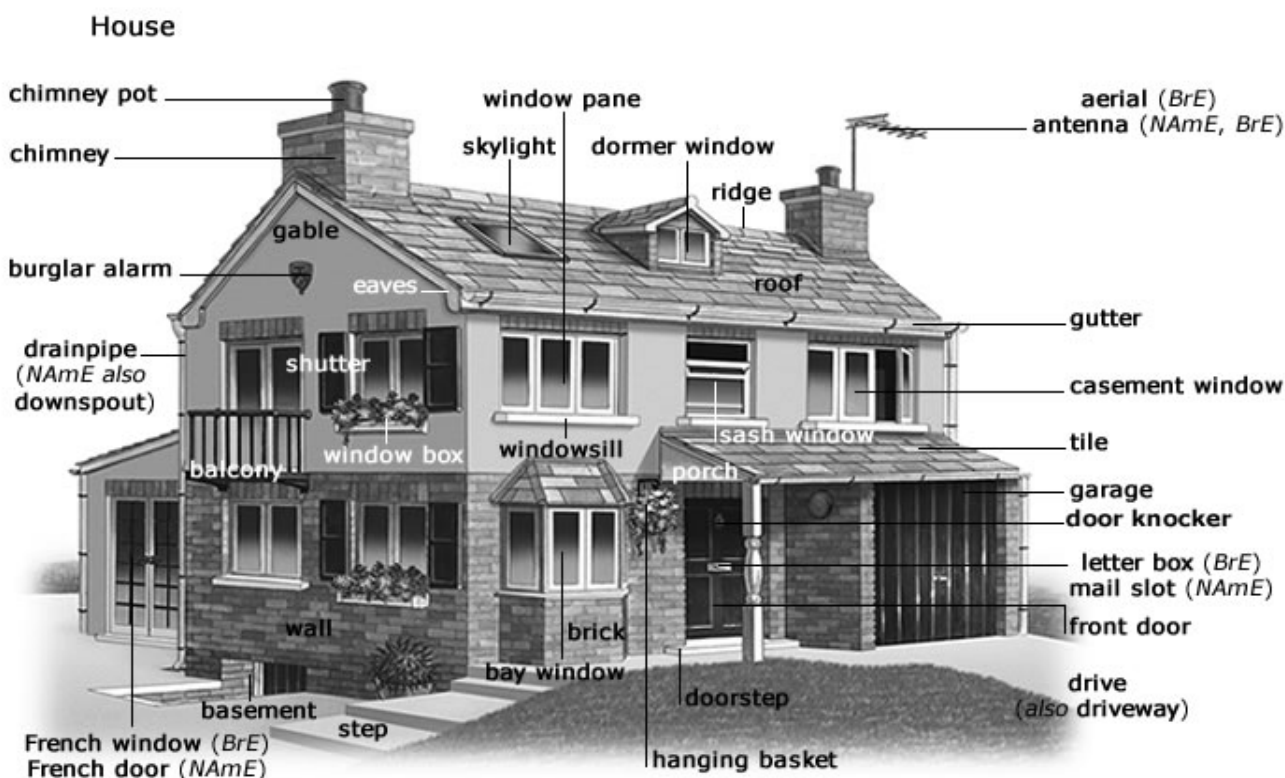
houseboat

Vocabulary

accommodation	житло
residence; a place of residence	резиденція, місце проживання
permanent residence	постійне місце проживання
temporary residence	тимчасове місце проживання
a dwelling	житло, будинок, оселя
an address	адреса
a housing estate; a residential area	житловий масив
a building	будівля
a skyscraper	хмарочос
a multistoried building; a multistory ~	багатопверховий будинок
a block of flats; an apartment building	багатоквартирний будинок

a flat; an apartment	квартира
a bedsitter; a bed-sitting room	гостинка, однокімнатна квартира
a two-room flat	двокімнатна квартира
a house (a brick ~; a panel ~; a stone ~; a wooden ~)	будинок (цегляний ~; панельний ~ кам'яний ~; дерев'яний ~)
to be made of brick (~ stone; ~ wood; ~ prefabricated blocks)	бути зробленим з цегли (~ каменю, ~ дерева, ~ блоків)
a private house	власний (приватний) будинок
a cottage	котедж, сільський будинок
a country house	дача, заміський будинок
a week-end house; a summer house	літній будиночок, літня кухня
a maisonette	маленький будиночок
a bungalow	одноповерхова дача, будинок із верандою
a detached house	особняк
a semi-detached house	один із двох особняків, що мають спільну стіну
a duplex house	двоквартирний будинок на двох поверхах із внутрішніми сходами
a row house; a terraced house	будиночок у ряді однакових будиночків зі спільними стінами
a hostel; a dormitory	студентський гуртожиток
a house-warming party	новосілля
a floor	підлога, поверх
<i>the ground floor</i>	<i>перший поверх (BrE)</i>
<i>the first floor</i>	<i>другий поверх (BrE)</i>
<i>the second floor</i>	<i>третій поверх (BrE)</i>
a floorspace	площа
to be 25 feet (meters) long by 15 feet (meters) wide (1 foot=30,48 cm)	бути 25 футів (метрів) у довжину на 15 у ширину
a design	проект, план
an aspect	вид
to face (overlook) the street / ~ the yard	виходити вікнами на вулицю/двір
to look south / ~ north / ~ east / ~ west	виходити вікнами на південь / ~ північ / ~ схід / ~ захід
a layout	розміщення, планування
to be situated	бути розташованим
• <i>in the centre of</i>	• <i>в центрі</i>
• <i>due west of the centre</i>	• <i>точно на захід від центру</i>
• <i>in half an hour's drive / walk from</i>	• <i>у пів години їзди / ходи від</i>

the district is	район знаходиться
• <i>within easy reach of the downtown</i>	• <i>поблизу центру міста</i>
• <i>at a considerable distance from the city centre</i>	• <i>на значній відстані від центру міста</i>
• <i>on the outskirts</i>	• <i>на околиці</i>
• <i>in the suburb</i>	• <i>у передмісті</i>
• <i>in a very remote part</i>	• <i>у дуже віддаленій частині</i>
• <i>just a stone's throw from the centre</i>	• <i>рукою подати від центру</i>
• <i>on a convenient traffic route</i>	• <i>на зручному транспортному маршруті</i>
a bill / payment for the conveniences	рахунок / плата за ком. послуги
a rent	плата за квартиру
electricity	електрика
gas	газ
central heating	центральне опалення
hot and cold running water	гаряча та холодна вода
a chute; a garbage disposal	сміттєпровід
an air conditioning system	кондиціонер
an entrance; a block; a driveway	під'їзд
clean	чистий
comfortable	зручний
cosy; cozy	затишний
modern	сучасний
impressive / imposing	вражаючий / величний
pleasant-looking; attractive	привабливий
repaired	відремонтований
redecorated	після косметичного ремонту
restored	відбудований, відновлений
in good repair	гарно відремонтований
in good condition	у гарному стані
well-kept	у гарному утриманні
well-appointed	гарно обладнаний
well-furnished	гарно мебльований
old	старий
shabby	занедбаний
dilapidated	напівзруйнований
lacking in space	такий, де не вистачає місця
cramped	тісний
roomy; spacious	просторий
having all modern conveniences	такий, що має усі сучасні вигоди



Parts of the house

a room	кімната
an entrance hall; a hall	передпокій
a bedroom	спальня
a sitting room; a living room; a lounge	вітальня
a kitchen	кухня
a dining room	їдальня
a study	кабінет
a toilet; a lavatory	вбиральня, туалетна кімната
a bathroom	ванна (кімната)
a larder; a pantry; a closet; a utility room	комора, комірчина
a tile(d) roof / a slate(d) roof	черепичний дах / шиферний дах
an attic	горище (жиле)
a loft	горище (нежиле)
a chimney	димохід
an antenna; a television aerial	телевізійна антена
a satellite dish	супутникова антена
a dormer window	слухове вікно
a skylight	вікно на даху, засклений дах
a balcony	балкон
a lift (BrE) / an elevator (AmE)	ліфт
a landing	площадка сходів

a casement window	створне вікно
a sash window	підйомне вікно
a bay window	еркер, вікно з виступом (“ліхтарем”)
a French window; a French door	скляні двері (замість вікна)
a frame	рама
a drainpipe	дренажна (водостічна) труба
a fixed frame	кватирка
shutters	віконниці, ставні
a Venetian blind; blinds; jalousies	жалюзі
the front door	вхідні двері, парадні двері
a back door	чорний хід
to lock the door with the key	замикати двері ключем
a porch	ганок
a cellar	підвал (нежилий), погріб
a basement	підвал (як майстерня, гараж і т.д.)

Near the house we can see

in the premises	на прилеглий до будівлі ділянці (території)
a court; a yard	двір
a patio	патіо (відкритий внутрішній дворик)
a sports ground; a playground	спортивний майданчик
a lawn	газон
a path	доріжка
a flower bed	клумба
a vegetable garden; a kitchen garden	город
a garden / an orchard	сад / фруктовий сад
a conservatory; a green house	теплиця
an arbour	альтанка (бесідка з зелені)
a garage	гараж
a fence / a hedge	паркан / жива огорожа
to be enclosed by a fence / ~ a hedge	бути огороженим парканом / ~ живою огорожею
a gate	ворота
a stile	приступки (в огорожі), турнікет
a wicket	хвіртка
a kennel	собача конура
a stable	стайня
a hayloft	сінник
a shed	повітка, сарай

1

Read and translate the text.

Where We Live

I would like to tell you a few words about my home. To begin with, I want to tell you that I live in Kyiv, one of the largest and oldest cities in Europe. It is one of the most ancient cities located on the picturesque banks of the Dnieper river.



Our family lives in a new flat in one of the largest **newly-built residential areas**. We moved into our flat seven years ago. It is a **three-room flat on the fifth floor** of an **eight-storey building**. It consists of a **living room**, a **study**, a **bedroom**, a **kitchen**, a **bathroom**, a **hall**, two **larders** and a **lavatory**. There are two **balconies** in our flat, the first one is in the living room, the second is in the bedroom. Our flat has all **modern conveniences**: **central heating**, **cold and hot running water**, **electricity**, **telephone** and **gas**. Besides, there is a **lift** and a **garbage disposal** in our **block of flats**. The **layout** is very nice, I must admit. The rooms are light, though not very large. In my opinion, it's quite a **modern-looking** flat. The windows **face** the park in front of the building and the **view** is really wonderful.

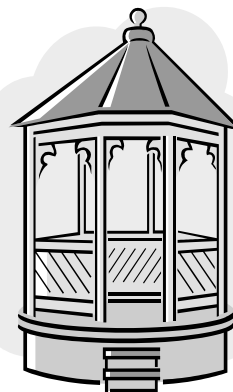
We like our flat very much. It is important that our house is quite close to the underground station and we can easily get to any place we like.

Many families in Kyiv live in flats but people may live in **semi-detached** and **terraced houses**, **bungalows** and **maisonettes on the outskirts**. We also have a **detached two-storied brick house in the Kyiv suburb**. It is an **imposing, well-furnished, in good condition cottage** that **faces** the main country road and is **at a considerable distance from the city center** but **on a convenient traffic route**.

In front of the house we have a small **lawn** and a **flowerbed**, abundant with flowers of various kinds. At the back of the house there is a **conservatory** and a **garden** with many trees. At the side of the house there is an **arbour** and a **garage**, where we keep our car. The house is **enclosed by a fence** with a **gate** in it. The **tiled roof** with a few **dormer windows** covers the house. There is an **attic** under the roof and there are two **chimneys** and an **aerial** on the roof.

On the ground floor we can see a **living room**, a **kitchen**, a **hall**, a **bathroom**, a **pantry** and a **toilet**. On the first floor there are also four bedrooms.

When I retire, I think I will buy a **country house** or a **bungalow** and go to live in a peaceful place somewhere **in the countryside**.



2

a) Listen to a girl talking about where she lives. Underline the words you hear.

I live in a *small/big* flat on Herbert *Street/Avenue*. It's in the *center/suburbs* of *Dublin/Belfast*. It's a *lovely/horrible* flat, but the *street/avenue* is *noisy/quiet*. I *don't like/like* it.

b) Answer the questions about your place of living.

1. What kind of house do you live in? What is the house made of?
2. Is it your permanent or temporary residence?
3. Is the house new or old, large or small? Is it kept in good condition?
4. Is it nice and well-appointed?
5. Where is it situated? What's your address?
6. What is there near your house?
7. What can you see in the premises?
8. What are the other parts of the house worth mentioning?

3

a) Listen to Giovanni talk about life in Rome. Give the answers to the following questions.

1. Are the people friendly?
2. Is it an expensive place?
3. Is it dangerous to walk on the streets at night?
4. Can you visit interesting things in your city?
5. Is it very noisy?
6. Are there any beautiful or historical buildings?
7. Is the air polluted?



b) Listen to Sofia and Nick talking about life in different capital cities around the world. What capital cities are they talking about? Use the chart to help you describe the cities.

Sofia:

	_____ (1 st city)	_____ (2 st city)
small/big		
good/expensive life		
hot summer/cold winter		
many children		

Nick:

	_____ (1 st city)	_____ (...)
fast life		
noisy/dirty/polluted		
much money/entertainment		
big/good stadiums		
friendly people		

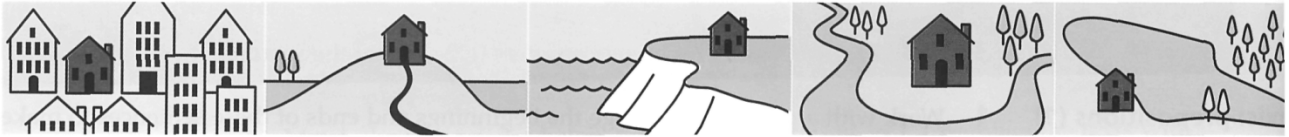
4

a) Listen to Joel and Andy comparing city and country life. Do you agree? Which position is true for you?

b) Listen to Andy and Joel's conversation one year later. Who moved to the village of Appleton? Who stayed in London? Give more details.

5

a) Where do you want to live? Answer the questions. Compare your answers with a partner.



in the city

on a hill

by the sea

near a river

next to a lake

- Do you like living in a house or would you prefer to be on the top floor of a modern block of flats?
- Do you like living in the city, or would you prefer to live on a hill in the country?
- Do you want to live in the mountains or by the sea?
- Do you want to live near a river or next to a lake?

Apparently, it all depends on your star!

b) Work with your partner. Read and complete the horoscopes with appropriate prepositions. How accurate is your horoscope description?

♈Aries

20th Mar. – 19th Apr.

You love living _____ the city because you want to be _____ the shops.

♉Taurus

20th Apr. – 20th May

You'd like to have two homes: a flat _____ the city and a weekend house _____ the country.

♊Gemini

21st May – 20th Jun.

You can't decide! You like living _____ the city, but you also like being _____ the country or _____ the sea.

♋Cancer

21st Jun. – 22nd Jul.

You love water – you want a house _____ a lake or a river.

♌Leo

23rd Jul. – 22nd Aug.

You want to be _____ a big house _____ a hot country.

♍Virgo

23rd Aug. – 22nd Sep.

You want to live _____ the top floor of a modern flat _____ a nice, clean part of town.

♎Libra

23rd Sep. – 22nd Oct.

You want a beautiful house _____ a lake _____ the country.

♏Scorpio

23rd Oct. – 21st Nov.

You want to leave the city and live _____ an island.

♐ **Sagittarius**

22nd Nov. – 21st Dec.

You like both the city and the country, so you want to live _____ the city _____ a park.

♑ **Capricorn**

22nd Dec. – 19th Jan.

You want to live _____ a small village _____ the mountains.

♒ **Aquarius**

20th Jan. – 17th Feb.

You want to live _____ a big house _____ a hill with a lot of light.

♓ **Pisces**

18th Feb. – 19th Mar.

You're happy when you're _____ the sea.

c)  **Work in small groups. Discuss the questions.**

- Do you agree with the description for your star sign?
- Do you usually read your horoscope in magazines?
- Are your horoscope predictions usually accurate?

6

Fill in the missing words and phrases in the letter below.



Hello! My name is Bob. Do you want to know where I live? OK. I live in a _____ house which means I have to share it with another family, the Stars. Our street is not very long, but still you can see some _____ houses (for well-off people); some _____ houses (built in special rows) and even _____ houses (for those who are having rest). A little bit farther there is a big _____ that has many apartments.

Our house _____ stone. I can't say it is in bad condition. It looks _____ and _____.

Unfortunately, the house isn't situated in the centre of the town; we live on _____. It is _____ from the city centre, but I don't feel unhappy – I can enjoy the quietness of the nature in a _____ district.

I love my place of living and try to make it more _____ which means people would be amazed by it.

There is enough space for everybody in our house, that's why I consider it _____. It has all modern conveniences, such as _____, _____, _____ and _____.

Speaking about the things outside my house, I can mention a _____ which is at the back of the house. In front, we have a green _____ and several _____, abundant with flowers of various kinds. The house is enclosed by a _____ with a _____ in it. In general, it looks really _____.



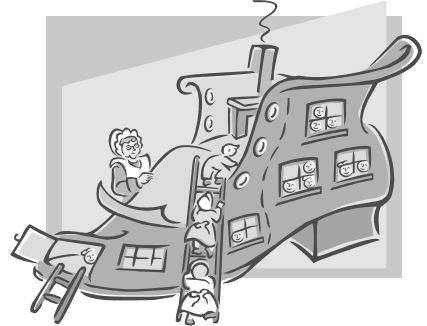
Now you have to know what it looks like. Come to visit me!

Have a nice day 😊

Yours, Bob.

7 Complete the sentences below with suitable words from your vocabulary.

1. We share the house with another family. We live in a(n) _____. 2. My friend lives in a small house in the countryside. He lives in a(n) _____. 3. Look at this building that has several floors. It is a(n) _____. 4. What a huge building it is! I guess it has about 40 floors. It's a(n) _____. 5. I've been living here since 1972. It's my _____ residence. 6. I'm not going to live here till the end of my life. It's only my _____ residence. 7. If the house is very old, we can say it is _____. 8. We do not need to go out to empty the garbage bin. We have a(n) _____. 9. In front of our house there is a charming place where there are a lot of flowers. It's a(n) _____. 10. At the back of the house there is some space for growing vegetables. It is our _____.



11. I've got a darkroom in the _____ where I develop films. It's perfect because there are no windows down there. 12. We keep our skis up in the _____ during summer. 13. I want to move to a(n) _____ now as I see I can't manage the stairs any more at my age. 14. You can find the garden-chairs in the _____ at the bottom of the garden. Bring them up as we want to have a drink on the _____ and watch the sunset.

8 Underline the best variant.

1. She stayed at *house/home* with her parents. 2. You don't earn money being a *house/home*husband! 3. Fiona sometimes works away from *house/home*. 4. We share the *house/homework*. 5. I look forward to the day when my daughter comes *house/home*. 6. The *house/home* is really nice but the neighbours make a lot of noise. 7. What is your *house/home* town like? 8. At what age do people usually leave *house/home* in your country? 9. What do you feel like when you are away from *house/home*? 10. Is your mother a *house/homewife* or does she have another job? 11. How much *house/homework* does your teacher usually give you? 12. How do you usually get *house/home* in the evenings? 13. Who does most of the cleaning and the other *house/homework* where you live?

9 Listen and write down the rooms you hear. Practice saying them.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____

10 Listen to the conversations and say what parts of the house they mention. Add the details.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____

11 a) Say where in a typical house you would look for the following things.

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a rake | 4. a coat-hanger | 7. a power point |
| 2. knives | 5. suitcases | 8. cups and glasses |
| 3. dental floss | 6. a washing machine | 9. old empty boxes |



b) Listen and repeat the words you hear. Translate them and say what rooms they can be found in.

- | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 3. _____ | 5. _____ | 7. _____ | 9. _____ | 11. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 4. _____ | 6. _____ | 8. _____ | 10. _____ | 12. _____ |

12 Write where you would expect to find the following rooms in a house and what they would normally be used for.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| 1. an attic | 3. a cellar | 5. a lavatory / a toilet | 7. a lounge |
| 2. a basement | 4. a loft | 6. a larder / a pantry | 8. a study |

13 Match the definition with the correct part of a house.





- | | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------------|
| <i>an attic</i> | <i>a chimney</i> | <i>a pantry</i> | <i>a gutter</i> | <i>a French window</i> |
| <i>a hall</i> | <i>a skylight</i> | <i>a patio</i> | <i>a lounge</i> | <i>central heating</i> |
| <i>a shed</i> | <i>a landing</i> | <i>a cellar</i> | <i>a study</i> | <i>a utility room</i> |
| <i>a loft</i> | <i>a basement</i> | <i>a porch</i> | <i>a kitchen</i> | <i>a sash window</i> |

1. A window consisting of two sashes placed one above the other so that one can slide over the other to open it _____.
2. A half-pipe along the edge of the roof to carry away rainwater _____.
3. A window in the roof _____.
4. Used in modern houses instead of open fires _____.
5. A flat area at the top of a staircase _____.
6. A roofed entrance built onto a house before an entrance door _____.
7. Doors made of glass which usually open out onto the garden _____.
8. A hollow passage often rising above the roof of a building which allows smoke and gases to pass from the fire _____.
9. An underground room without windows, usually used for storing goods _____.
10. A comfortable room for sitting in _____.
11. A room, usually just for a washing machine, a freezer, etc. _____.
12. A small building separated from the house, usually for storing garden tools _____.
13. Space in the roof of a house, usually used only for storage _____.
14. A room for studying, reading, writing in _____.
15. A paved area between a house and a garden for sitting and eating, etc. _____.
16. An underground room with windows for living, working in _____.
17. A large cupboard, usually big enough to walk into, for storing food _____.
18. A room where people cook and eat _____.
19. A wide passage just as you come into a house off which the rooms open _____.
20. A room immediately below the roof of a house (can be lived in) _____.



14

Listen to the four people and complete the chart. Write a paragraph about where you live.

				
	<u>Candy & Bert</u>	<u>Alise</u>	<u>Kwan</u>	<u>Manola</u>
Where from?				
House or flat?				
Old or modern?				
Where?				
How many bedrooms?				
Live(s) with?				
Extra information				

15

Listen to the speaker, make notes and answer the questions below.

1. Where is the house?
2. Is it old or new?
3. How many rooms are there?
4. What is nearby?
5. Who lives in the house?
6. What is the best thing about the house?



16

You are going to listen to two friends talking about their home life. Ali lives with his parents and two brothers. He wants to go to live with Charlie, who shares a flat with four friends. Study the words below before you listen. Translate and use them in your own sentences.

- a guest
- cash
- to drive sb mad
- to mean
- grim
- definitely
- to put sb off
- it's my turn

Look at the statements below. Who do you think is speaking: Ali or Charlie? Listen to the conversation and check the answers.


- Ali/Charlie 1. There's nothing to eat.
 Ali/Charlie 2. I get no peace and I can't do any work.
 Ali/Charlie 3. There's no space in the house.
 Ali/Charlie 4. We don't go to bed early.
 Ali/Charlie 5. I can't have any friends in the house.
 Ali/Charlie 6. The kitchen is a bit dirty.



c)  **Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.**

1. What do you think Ali should do?
2. What are the advantages and disadvantages of living at home when you are a student?
3. Do most students live at home in your country?


17

 **Sandra Richway is talking to an estate agent. Listen to the dialogue and fill in the missing information. Finally, in pairs, read the dialogue aloud.**

- A: Hello. 1) _____?
- S: Yes. I want to rent a flat 2) _____.
- A: Okay, let me see. There is a very nice flat to rent quite 3) _____.
- S: 4) _____ rooms has it got?
- A: It has got a 5) _____, 6) _____, 7) _____, 8) _____ and 9) _____. So that's six rooms.
- S: And how much is it?
- A: It's quite a good price – £300 10) _____.
- S: That sounds perfect. 11) _____?
- A: It's 14, Oakfield View.
- S: 12) _____?
- A: Yes, it's O-A-K-F-I-E-L-D ... V-I-E-W.
- S: 13) _____ see it?
- A: Of course. I can take you there right now. 14) _____?
- S: Yes. That's great.
- A: Okay. I've got the keys here, so 15) _____.



18

 **Listen and repeat. In pairs, act out similar dialogues using the prompts below.**

- A: What's your address, please?
- B: *14, Milcote Road, Birmingham.*
- A: Can you spell the street name, please?
- B: *M-I-L-C-O-T-E*
- A: Thank you. Have you got a telephone number?
- B: *Yes. It's 4204188.*



- 12, Longhurst Lane, Reading (tel.: 535602)
- 17, Morrison Avenue, Bath (tel.: 334589)
- 21, Preemrose Street, Crewe (tel.: 750559)

19

a) Paul, Jenny and their two children want a cottage for their summer holiday. Read and translate the advertisement. Is this place suitable for them? Why (not)?

Sunnybank Farm, the Lake District

Come and stay in this beautiful old farmhouse in the center of the Lake District. It has three comfortable bedrooms with beautiful views, and two bathrooms. There's a big kitchen and a living room with an open fire. There's a digital TV and music system, and a dishwasher. The house has a lovely big garden with trees and flowers and it is on Lake Coniston. There is a small boat on the lake. This is a perfect place for a relaxing family holiday!

Phone 01228 525459 Email sunnybankfarm@lakedistrict.co.uk

* DIGITAL TV * BOAT * OPEN FIRE * LAKE * GARDEN *



b) Listen and complete the conversation.

Jenny: Paul, look at this _____ in the _____ District! Isn't it _____?

Paul: Yes, it is. But how _____ is it? How many _____ are there?

Jenny: There are _____. And there are two _____!

Paul: Great! What about the _____? And is there a _____?

Jenny: Yes, there is. The kitchen's _____ and there's an _____ fire in the _____ room.

Paul: Nice. Is there a _____?

Jenny: Yes, there is. It's _____ and there are trees and _____. And, listen to this! It's on _____ Coniston. And there is a _____ boat on the lake!

Paul: That's _____ for the children. When do we want to go there?

Jenny: _____, I think.

Paul: OK. Is there a phone _____ in the advertisement?

Jenny: Yes, there is. And there's an email _____ too.

Paul: OK, then!

c) Complete the sentences about Sunnybank Farm with some, any, a, an, or – (nothing).

1. Is there _____ garden? 2. There are _____ beautiful views. 3. The farm has _____ digital TV. 4. Are there _____ good lakes near the farm? 5. Does the kitchen have _____ dishwasher? 6. Are there _____ trees and flowers in the garden? 7. There's _____ open fire in the living room. 8. Upstairs there're _____ two big bathrooms. 9. There is _____ small boat on the lake. 10. There's _____ phone number and _____ email address.

20

Complete the dialogue with some, any, no. Give a brief summary of it.

A: I'm phoning you about the flat you advertised in the newspaper. Are there _____ rules I should know about?

B: Er, yes. You can't have _____ pets. _____ dogs, _____ cats. We had _____ problems with animals in the past.

A: Oh, fine. I have _____ friends coming to visit me at the weekend. Is that OK?

B: *That's _____ problem. Visitors are very welcome until ten o'clock.*

A: And after ten?

B: *No. You can't have _____ in your room after ten. House rules, I'm afraid.*

A: Do you have _____ other rules like that?

B: *There are _____ other little things, but nothing important.*

A: OK, well, I'm going to look at _____ other flats this afternoon. I'll give you a call this evening.

B: *OK, speak to you later.*

21

a) Louis and Annie Walker are at the Lemmington Estate agency. They would like a new flat. Listen to the dialogue. What is the problem?

b) Listen again and decide if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

1. The flat is in the city center.
2. There are three schools in the neighbourhood.
3. There are three parks.
4. There is no hospital nearby.
5. Public transport is cheap.
6. The flat is new.



22

Mark wants to rent a flat. Listen and describe the main advantages and disadvantages of the flat.

Advantages:

Disadvantages:

23

a) You want to rent a place for a two-week holiday. Read and translate the first advert from a website. It's about the house in Canada. Highlight any adjectives which help "sell" the house.




Four-bedroom house, Alberta, Canada.

Would you like to stay in this beautiful house in the heart of the Canadian rocky mountains?

It's a spacious house with four bedrooms, a living room, a large kitchen, two bathrooms, and a store room. There are breathtaking views of the mountains from all the windows. It has a large balcony, which is ideal for eating outside in summer. The house has wooden floors, a Jacuzzi, cable television, and the Internet.

It's a quiet, safe neighbourhood and the neighbours are very warm and friendly. The house is a walking distance from stores and restaurants in the local town and a short drive from areas with excellent skiing and hiking. In the area around the house you can see amazing wildlife such as bears, wolves, deer and mountain goats.

This house is perfect for families or two couples. It's a no-smoking house and, sorry, no pets.

- b)  Now read about the New York apartment. Which one would you prefer? Why? Improve the description by replacing the word *nice* with one of the adjectives from the list below the text. Very often there is more than one possibility.

Two-bedroom apartment, Manhattan, New York City



Rent this nice two-bedroom apartment. It's perfectly situated between 43rd Street and 8th Avenue, five minutes from Time Square and most of the theatres, and a fifteen-minute walk from Central Park.

It's a nice 150-square-metre apartment on the 19th floor of a new building. It has two bedrooms, a nice living room with a huge balcony, a kitchen/dining room and two bathrooms. The flat has very big windows, so during the day it's very light and at night you have a nice view of downtown Manhattan, especially on the 4th of July when you can see all the fireworks!

The neighbourhood is colourful, and it's nice for people who like eating out or going to the theatre and clubs. There is a subway station on the street and it's a ten-minute walk to Grand Central train station. JFK airport is less than half an hour away by taxi.

This apartment is nice for couples. Sorry, no children or pets and definitely no smoking.

magnificent ideal superb gorgeous splendid awesome terrific

- c) Write a description of your house/flat (real or imaginary) for a website.

Plan what you are going to write.

Para 1 A brief introduction. What kind of house/flat is it? Where is it exactly?

Para 2 Describe the house/flat. What rooms does it have? Does it have any special characteristics?

Para 3 Describe the neighbourhood. How far is it from places of interest, public transport, etc.?

Para 4 Say who the house/flat is suitable for. Are there any restrictions?

24

a) Complete the definitions with a word from the box. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

pretty
complimentary
book

restaurant
friendly
lounge

meal
rural
available

warm
bathroom
parking

1. Someone who is **f**_____ is nice and helpful to other people. 2. If something is **w**_____, it is hot in a comfortable, pleasant way. 3. If something is **c**_____, then it's free. 4. A **m**_____ is a time when you eat, such as breakfast, lunch or dinner. 5. If something is **a**_____, then you can use, take or get it. 6. A **r**_____ is a place where visitors can eat and drink. 7. If something is **p**_____, it is beautiful and nice. 8. **R**_____ location is in the countryside, far from noisy towns and cities, crowded streets. 9. If you want to take a shower, you should use a **b**_____. 10. A **l**_____ is a room for relaxation and rest, you may entertain guests, drink a cup of warm tea or coffee in a comfortable armchair in it. 11. To reserve a room in a hotel is to **b**_____ it. 12. A **p**_____ area is where you can leave your car for some time.



b) Complete the text with the words from a).

O'Brian's.



Welcome to O'Brians! It is a very _____ old pub in the _____ location in Britain. Come in and enjoy a _____ welcome from our _____ staff and get your _____ drink absolutely for free! Our _____ is open from 11 a.m. to 11 p.m. all year round (including Christmas and New Year). _____s are _____ from 12 p.m. to 2 p.m. and from 7 p.m. to 10 p.m.

c) Listen to the two advertisements for hotels in Stratford and write *S* for the Shakespeare Guest House, *C* for the Stratford Central Hotel or *SC* if the sentence is true for both of the hotels.

- 1. It's an old house.
- 2. It's good for business travelers.
- 3. You can have breakfast in the hotel.
- 4. You can have dinner in the hotel.
- 5. It is open every day.
- 6. Children can play in the garden.
- 7. You can smoke in the hotel.



25

Listen to the three texts and tick the correct place. Listen again and give more details on each question.

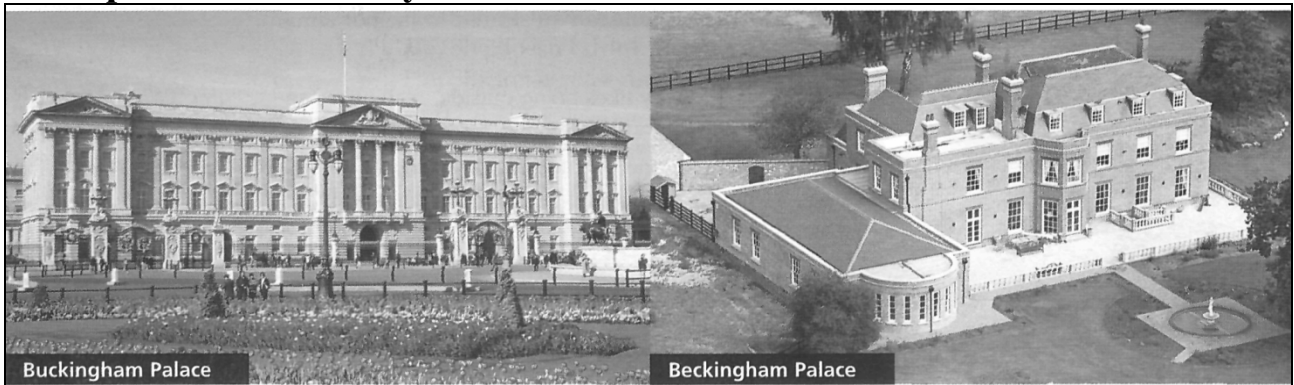
		Treetops	Sanders B&B	The Ox Hotel
1.	Which place is 100+ years old?			
2.	Which place is close to restaurants?			
3.	Which place has traditional food in its restaurant?			
4.	Which place is good for people with pets?			
5.	Which place has lots of rooms?			
6.	Which place is not good for people who smoke?			
7.	Where can you park your car for free?			
8.	Which place offers free breakfasts?			

26 a) Listen and tick the words you hear from the list. Are the people happy?

- a lamp a radio a telephone a chair a pen
 a bed a desk a television a key a book

b) Listen to two people who arrived at a hotel on an island in Scotland. Are they happy with the hotel and with their room? Why (not)?

27 a) Look at the photographs below. Which one is a real royal palace? What do you know about it?



b) Match the two articles below with the photographs in a). Complete the texts with *Beckingham* or *Buckingham*.

_____ *Palace* was built in 1703. It is situated in the centre of London. Queen Elizabeth II lives and works there most of the time. She invites more than 50,000 guests to the palace every year. In August and September the Queen stays in Scotland, and part of the palace is open to the public.

“_____ *Palace*” was built in 1930 and belongs to the Beckham family. Victoria Beckham (Posh Spice) was a member of a pop group called the Spice Girls. She is married to England football player, David Beckham. They have four children. At their wedding reception in Ireland they sat on red and gold thrones. After that, the press named their house “_____ *Palace*”.

c) **Read the articles again. Are the following statements true or false?**

1. Buckingham Palace is in Scotland.
2. Queen Elizabeth II lives in Buckingham Palace all year round.
3. Tourists can only visit Buckingham Palace in August and September.
4. David and Victoria Beckham got married in Ireland.
5. David and Victoria named their house “Beckingham Palace”.

d) **Work with a partner. Read the following information. Which sentences do you think describe Beckingham Palace and which ones describe Buckingham Palace?**

1. There’s a recording studio.
2. There’s a bathroom dedicated to the actress, Audrey Hepburn.
3. There are 609 rooms.
4. There’s a children’s playroom.
5. There are paintings by Rembrandt, Rubens and Vermeer.
6. There’s an indoor swimming pool.
7. There’s a ballroom.
8. There’s a throne room.

e) **Work with a partner. Student A, read the rest of the article about Beckingham Palace. Student B, read the rest of the article about Buckingham Palace. Check your answers to d).**

Student A

In the entrance hall of Beckingham Palace, there are two thrones – one for Victoria and one for David. Victoria and David often invite guests to Beckingham Palace, so there are seven bedrooms. Victoria’s a singer, and David’s a football player, so there’s a recording studio for her and a football pitch for him! There’s a bathroom dedicated to Audrey Hepburn, because Victoria is a fan of the actress. There’s a children’s playroom for their children – all their favourite Disney characters are on the wall. It’s easy to keep fit at Beckingham Palace because there’s a gym and an indoor swimming pool.

Student B

Buckingham Palace is the Queen’s official residence. There are 609 rooms, and 700 staff work at the Palace. Tourists can visit the Palace in August and September and see paintings by Rembrandt, Rubens and Vermeer. Visitors can also enjoy a walk in the garden with its beautiful 19th century lake. The largest room in Buckingham Palace is the ballroom. It’s 37 metres long, 18 metres wide and over 13 metres high. The Queen uses the throne room for special occasions and royal ceremonies.

f) **What things in Beckingham or Buckingham Palace would you like in your house?**

a) **Study the words below and listen about the house at 1600 Pennsylvania Avenue. Answer the questions.**

palace - палац, офіційна резиденція
golf course - майданчик для гри в гольф
bowling alley - майданчик для гри в кулі
available - що є в наявності



1. What is the name of the house?
2. Where is it?
3. Who lives there?
4. How old is it?
5. How many rooms are there?
6. When are public visits available?

b) 🎧 🎧 Listen about the house in Britain and answer the same questions.

c) 🗣️ Discuss the following questions about Ukraine.

1. Does the President or Prime Minister of Ukraine have a famous house? Where is it? Do you know any details about it?
2. Are there any other famous houses or flats in Ukraine? Where are they?

29

Translate this dialogue into English.

A: *Привіт. Як поживаєш?*

B: Привіт. Дякую, добре. А ти?

A: *Непогано, дякую. Не бачив тебе вічність.*

B: Річ у тому, що в мене є нова квартира. Ми збираємося переїздити на квартиру завтра.

A: *Вітаю. Сподіваюсь, що ти і твоя дружина щасливі.*

B: Звичайно, як щодо того, щоб прийти до нас і самому подивитись квартиру? Між іншим, які твої плани на п'ятницю? Ми збираємося святкувати новосілля.

A: *Шкода, але у мене зустріч у п'ятницю ввечері.*

B: Добре, а як щодо суботи?

A: *Охоче, я вільний в суботу.*

B: Добре, домовилися, ми чекаємо на тебе в суботу о сьомій вечора.

A: *Де знаходиться твоя квартира?*

B: Недалеко від центру, близько 20 хвилин ходи або 10 хвилин автобусом.

A: *Який номер твоєї квартири?*

B: 27.

A: *На якому поверсі вона?*

B: На п'ятому поверсі дев'ятиповерхового будинку.

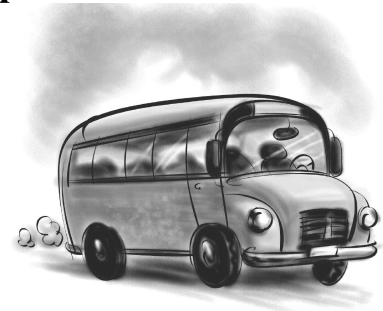
A: *Квартира зручна?*

B: Так, дуже, хоча не дуже простора.

A: *Моя квартира зручна також, хоча далеко від центру міста.*

B: Добре. До зустрічі.

A: *Побачимося.*



30**Translate into English.**

Наша сім'я живе в новій 3-кімнатній квартирі 16-поверхового будинку, що знаходиться в новому житловому районі. Квартира не велика, але затишна й зручна. Площа квартири 80 метрів квадратних. Моя квартира складається з вітальні, спальні, кухні, передпокою, ванни, туалету та комірчини. У квартирі є також два балкони. Раніше ми жили в окремому бу-

динку на околиці міста, а тепер ми переїхали в інший район. Хоча це не дуже сучасно й зручно, але все ж ми живемо не в віддаленій частині міста, а в 10 хвилинах їзди від центру. Я витрачаю півгодини, щоб дістатися до роботи. Звідси майже рукою подати до головної вулиці, та й до того ж, будинок має сучасні вигоди: центральне опалення, електрику, газ, сміттепровід та ліфт. Поряд із будинком знаходиться дитячий садочок. На першому поверсі розташована крамниця. Квартплата висока. Ми платимо 3 тисячі гривень, включаючи плату за газ та електрику й плату за всі вигоди.

31**Translate into English.**

Сім'я Петренків має власний приватний будинок на околиці Києва. Він розташований у віддаленій частині, на тихій вулиці, на зручному транспортному маршруті й виходить на сільську дорогу. Звідси рукою подати до гарного торгового центру. З будинку відкривається чудовий вид на річку. Це новий, цегляний, добре спланований, у гарному стані двоповерховий котедж із усіма вигодами. Стіни дому побілені. Будинок має червоний черепичний дах із декількома слуховими вікнами. Під дахом просторе горище, на даху розташовані антена та димар. У будинку є погріб, який вони використовують для багатьох цілей. Будинок огорожений парканом із воротами. Перед будинком невеликий зелений газон та квітник із безліччю квітів. За будинком знаходиться двір, теплиця та город, де сім'я вирощує овочі. Поряд із котеджем садок і бесідка. Ліворуч від дому гараж, де сім'я Петренків тримає своє авто. З іншого боку знаходиться собача конура, сінник і стайня. Від ганку до воріт веде доріжка з гравію.

**32****Translate into English.**

1. Містер Спліт переїхав до цього маєтку кілька років тому. Спочатку споруда виглядала занедбаною, але господар доклав усіх зусиль, щоб зробити його досить привабливим і величним.

2. Я студент і живу у гуртожитку. Це моє тимчасове помешкання. Ті, в кого є постійне помешкання, мають більше можливостей зареєструватися у місцевій бібліотеці чи звернутися до лікарні.



3. – Про який будинок ти мрієш? – Звісно, я мрію про просторий, гарно облаштований та в доброму стані приватний будинок, котрий буде моїм постійним, а не тимчасовим житлом. Він буде зроблений з цегли, а дах – з черепиці. Мені також потрібен підвал, щоб тримати там драбину, швабри, віники та інші речі. На території будинку буде бесідка, фруктовий сад та газон з клумбою.

4. В українців є звичай огороджувати двір парканом. Мені подобається, коли цей паркан не кам'яний і не дуже високий. А взагалі-то, мені більш подобається англійська жива огорожа.

5. Люди завжди приділяють багато уваги умовам проживання. Нехай то буде палац чи замок, мотель чи вілла, або розкішний готельний номер, люди прагнуть відчуття затишку й спокою, залишаючись там.

6. Перед будинком місіс Томсон є чудовий зелений газон і доріжка з гравію, що веде якраз до входних дверей. На жаль, вона не може собі дозволити побудувати теплицю. Вона б дуже хотіла вирощувати там різноманітні овочі та квіти.



33

👂👄 Listen to the contractions and repeat them after the speaker.
Make up six sentences with each of them.

- I'll
- it'll
- there'll
- we'll
- what'll
- you'll

34

Choose the correct form to complete the dialogues.

- A: Do you have a single room for two nights?
B: I think so. I'll *just/m just going to* check.
- A: Would you like a room with a view? It's a bit more expensive.
B: No, thanks. I'll/m *going to* have the cheaper room.
- A: Do you want to book a room for tomorrow?
B: No, thanks. I'll/m *going to* stay at my friend's.
- A: Could you give me a wake-up call in the morning?
B: Yes, sir. We'll/are *going to* do that for you.
- A: Do you need a taxi?
B: No, thanks. A friend *will come/is coming* to pick me up.



35

Complete the dialogue between a guest and a hotel manager with will or the correct form of be going to. Then listen and check your answers.

Guest: Excuse me, I _____ visit the old part of town this afternoon. Can you tell me the way?

Manager: Yes, no problem. I _____ give you a map.

Guest: Is it far?

Manager: No, not far. Do you want to walk or take a bus? It's a nice walk.

Guest: Oh, well, I _____ walk, I think.

Manager: Or, if you like, I _____ take you in my car. I _____ do some shopping this afternoon.

Guest: That's kind of you. Thanks. When _____ (you) leave?

Manager: About four o'clock.

Guest: Great. I _____ see you here at four o'clock.

Manager: OK. I _____ see you later.

36

Translate into English using the Future Indefinite tense.

1. Не буду це їсти. Піду в магазин і куплю ще яблук. 2. Куплю собі приватний будинок у селі та буду вирощувати там квіти. 3. Думаю, що він не захоче поїхати з нами на дачу. Він буде на роботі. 4. Можливо, передача закінчиться о 8, але я не впевнена. 5. Алекс не буде юристом, він буде лікарем. 6. Присягаюсь, що більше так не буду робити. 7. Я буду чекати відповіді. Він точно напише мені на цьому тижні. 8. Прийде зима й сніг буде йти кожен день. Дошу не буде.



9. Сподіваюсь, цей песик більше ніколи не буде скучати. 10. В цей день в актовій залі буде святковий концерт. Студенти будуть співати та танцювати. Буде весело. 11. Ми поговоримо про це в понеділок. В мене буде більше вільного часу. 12. Я впевнена, що вона зробить переклад швидко та без помилок. 13. Обіцяю, що вивчу всі правила завтра. Я буду старатися. 14. Марія буде рибу. А я візьму м'ясо з овочами. 15. Побачимо, хто переможе. Я вірю, це буде Ірина. 16. Добре, Андрій перекладе ці документи й відправить їх вам у четвер. 17. Вона приїде в липні, напевно. У неї буде відпустка. 18. Завтра буду спати до обіду. Не піду нікуди. Буду просто відпочивати. 19. Піду принесу газети. Потім прочитаю про цікаві факти. 20. Ми обов'язково зустрінемося якось. Мені буде дуже приємно. 21. Незабаром ми купимо новий двоповерховий будинок. 22. Я скоро прийду, не хвилюйся. 23. Ми обговоримо це питання з Марком. 24. Ніхто не прийде, я думаю. Завтра субота, всі захочуть відпочити вдома.

37

Translate into English using the Future Indefinite tense.

1. Коли ти прийдеш додому? Що ти принесеш? Ти купиш молока? 2. Ким ти станеш через рік? Ти будеш дизайнером, чи не так? 3. Ти зателефонуєш?! А де ти візьмеш мій номер телефону?! 4. Ви будете пити каву? Принести вам каву з молоком чи без? 5. У січні будуть іспити? Хто отримає «п'ятірки»? 6. Коли ти кинеш палити? Допомогти тобі це зробити? 7. В коридорі не темно? Увімкнути світло? 8. Прочитаєте цю статтю завтра чи післязавтра? 9. Вона прийде сама чи з перекладачем? Ти залишишся з нами? 10. Ви знаєте куди вони поїдуть? Вони повернуться до нас? 11. У неділю приготуєш курку з яблуками? Купити зелених чи червоних яблук? 12. На вечірці буде весело? Хто ще прийде туди? 13. Будете в офісі о 10? Мені зайти в офіс чи зателефонувати вам? 14. Поговориш зі своєю сестрою? Вона погодиться допомогти пофарбувати двері? 15. Де ви проведете свої вихідні? З ким ви їх проведете? 16. Заспіваете? Дати вам мікрофон? Що будете співати? 17. Вона зайде в понеділок? 18. Зателефонуєш Марині після обіду?



38

Choose the correct tense form.



1. The plane *arrives/will arrive* at 10.00. 2. I *send/will send* the letter. 3. The train *doesn't stop/won't stop* at Oxford. 4. I *write/will write* soon. 5. What time *does/will* the concert *end*? 6. He *plays/is playing* football tomorrow. 7. I *stop/will stop* smoking after Christmas. 8. *Shall/will* I *switch* the light on? 9. My husband *comes/will come* round after seven. 10. Do you think the talk *is going to be/will be* interesting? 11. I *am having/will have* a lecture at 9.00 tomorrow. 12. The doctor says I *am going to have/will have* a baby! 13. According to this timetable, the bus *is going to arrive/arrives* at 6.00. 14. Can you call me at 7.00, because I'm *leaving/'ll leave* tomorrow? 15. We *are going to buy/will buy* a new car. 16. Look out! That tree *is going to fall/will fall*! 17. We *are getting/will get* married in March. 18. When *does/will* school *start*? 19. We *go/are going* to Spain for some time soon. 20. You *go/will go* next door for the tickets. 21. Where *do/will* I *go* for my interview? 22. I *post/will post* the letters. 23. How *do/will* I *switch* this on? 24. *Are you going to watch/Will you watch* the football on TV this evening? 25. The exams *are/will be* in June. 26. It's *going to be/will be* more difficult for young people to buy a house. 27. New kinds of modern houses *are going to make/will make* our life more comfortable. 28. Great news! Jean and Chris *are coming/will come* to stay with us. 29. Why *is she going to live/will she live* in Japan? 30. You *are never going to see/will never see* a better flat.

Fill in the gaps with *the Future Simple*, *the Present Simple*, *the Present Continuous* tenses or *be going to*.

1. I _____ (*play*) poker with Tom and Ann tonight. 2. Our class _____ (*start*) German next month. 3. It's very cold. I _____ (*close*) the windows. 4. He _____ (*have*) an operation next week. 5. – What _____ (*you/tell*) the police? – I think I _____ (*tell*) them the truth. 6. I _____ (*spend*) some days in London next week. 7. We _____ (*have*) some friends to lunch tomorrow. 8. I hope I _____ (*find*) a new flat. 9. The Town Council _____ (*build*) a new school here. 10. Perhaps he _____ (*arrive*) in time for lunch. 11. The Prime Minister _____ (*speak*) on TV tonight. 12. I _____ (*remember*) this day all my life. 13. We _____ (*take*) the children to the seaside this summer. 14. I guess this shop _____ (*close*) down next week. 15. – When _____ (*your train/leave*)? – I hope it _____ (*depart*) on time, that is at seven. 16. I _____ (*try*) on my wedding dress this afternoon. 17. _____ (*he/wash*) his car? 18. I am sure I _____ (*recognize*) him. 19. He _____ (*ring*) me up tonight. 20. What _____ (*you/do*) with the money? 21. She _____ (*see*) the specialist next week. 22. I _____ (*pick*) you up at 6:30. Don't forget. 23. I am sure that you _____ (*like*) our new house. 24. – Where _____ (*you/go*) tonight? – I _____ (*go*) out to the movies with Peter. 25. Do you think he _____ (*remember*) me? 26. She _____ (*sing*) in her first big concert next month. 27. I _____ (*know*) the results in a week. 28. I _____ (*see*) you on Saturday. 29. _____ (*you/have*) time to help me tomorrow? 30. It is dark outside. It _____ (*rain*). 31. I _____ (*travel*) around the world after my studies. 32. I _____ (*stay*) at a friend's house next week because they are painting mine. 33. I _____ (*make*) the dinner tomorrow. 34. That looks very heavy. _____ (*I/carry*) it for you? 35. We _____ (*meet*) some friends after work tonight. 36. We _____ (*go*) on a diet after Christmas. 37. Look at the traffic! I don't think we _____ (*arrive*) on time. 38. Isn't Tom here? I _____ (*call*) him and ask where he is. 39. _____ (*we/go*) out tonight? 40. – Would you like to play tennis with us tonight? – I can't. I _____ (*go*) to the cinema. – That's a pity. What _____ (*you/do*) on Friday evening, then? 41. I _____ (*probably/go*) to the hospital alone. Don't worry. 42. _____ (*she/clean*) her room? 43. We _____ (*call*) you tomorrow. Bye! 44. What _____ (*you/do*) next Sunday? _____ (*you/come*) to the theatre with me? 45. When _____ (*his train/depart*)? 46. Stella _____ (*see*) the dentist on Friday. 47. Do you think John _____ (*recognize*) me? 48. Perhaps I _____ (*write*) him a letter. 49. I hope Ann _____ (*buy*) a new flat this summer. 50. He _____ (*come*) and _____ (*tell*) everything. Wait a little bit.



SECTION II. INTERIOR

GRAMMAR:

- **WHEN and IF Clauses**

ENTRANCE HALL

Vocabulary

a hall; an entrance hall	передпокій, хол
the front door / a back door	парадні двері / чорний вхід
an armored door	броньовані двері
a doorbell	дверний дзвінок
an intercom	домофон
a door handle	дверна ручка
a door plate	табличка на дверях
a spy hole	вічко в дверях
a doorstep	поріг
a doormat	килимок біля дверей
a coat rack	вішалка
a coat hanger	плічки
a coat hook	гачок для одягу
an umbrella stand	підставка для парасольок
a chest of drawers	комод
a bureau; a dresser	комод з дзеркалом, трюмо
a shoe cabinet	тумбочка для взуття
a shoe horn	ріжок для взуття
shoe polish	крем для взуття
a shoe brush	щітка для взуття
a mirror / a full-length mirror	дзеркало / дзеркало в повний зріст
a standard lamp / a floor lamp	торшер / напольна лампа
a staircase / the principal staircase	сходи / центральні сходи
to go downstairs	спускатися сходами
to go upstairs	підніматися сходами
a handrail	перила, поручні
a landing	площадка сходів
papered	поклеєний шпалерами
painted	пофарбований
wooden	дерев'яний
parquet	паркет, паркетний
linoleum	лінолеум

1

Read and translate the text into Ukrainian.

Our Entrance Hall

Let's enter my flat. We are in the **entrance hall**. The **principal staircase** leads from the entrance hall to the **landing** on the first floor and there are **wooden handrails** above it. In the hall we have a **stand for hats and umbrellas** and a **coat-rack**. There is a big **full-length mirror** on the wall and a **floor lamp** near it. The floor is **parquet**. I would also like to buy a vinous **Persian carpet** and put it on the floor. Our **front door** is made of red wood, it has a **spy hole** and a nice **door handle**. The hall is



not very spacious but the nice pictures on the walls and a lot of flowers make it cozy and comfortable.

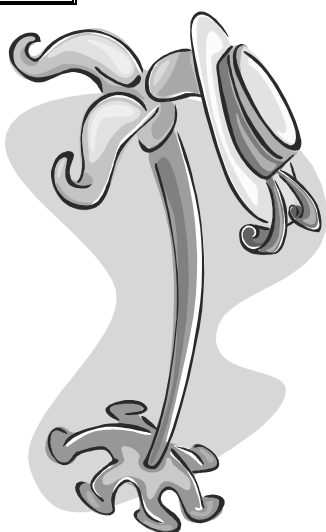
2

☛ Translate these phrases into English and then use them to describe your entrance hall.

Передпокій, ключ, поріг, м'який килимок біля дверей, вішалка для одягу, табличка на дверях, вічко, дверна ручка, східці, дверний дзвінок, крем для взуття, дерев'яне перило, щітка для взуття, центральні сходи, чорний вхід, спускатися сходами, підніматися сходами, площадка сходів.

3

Translate the text into English.



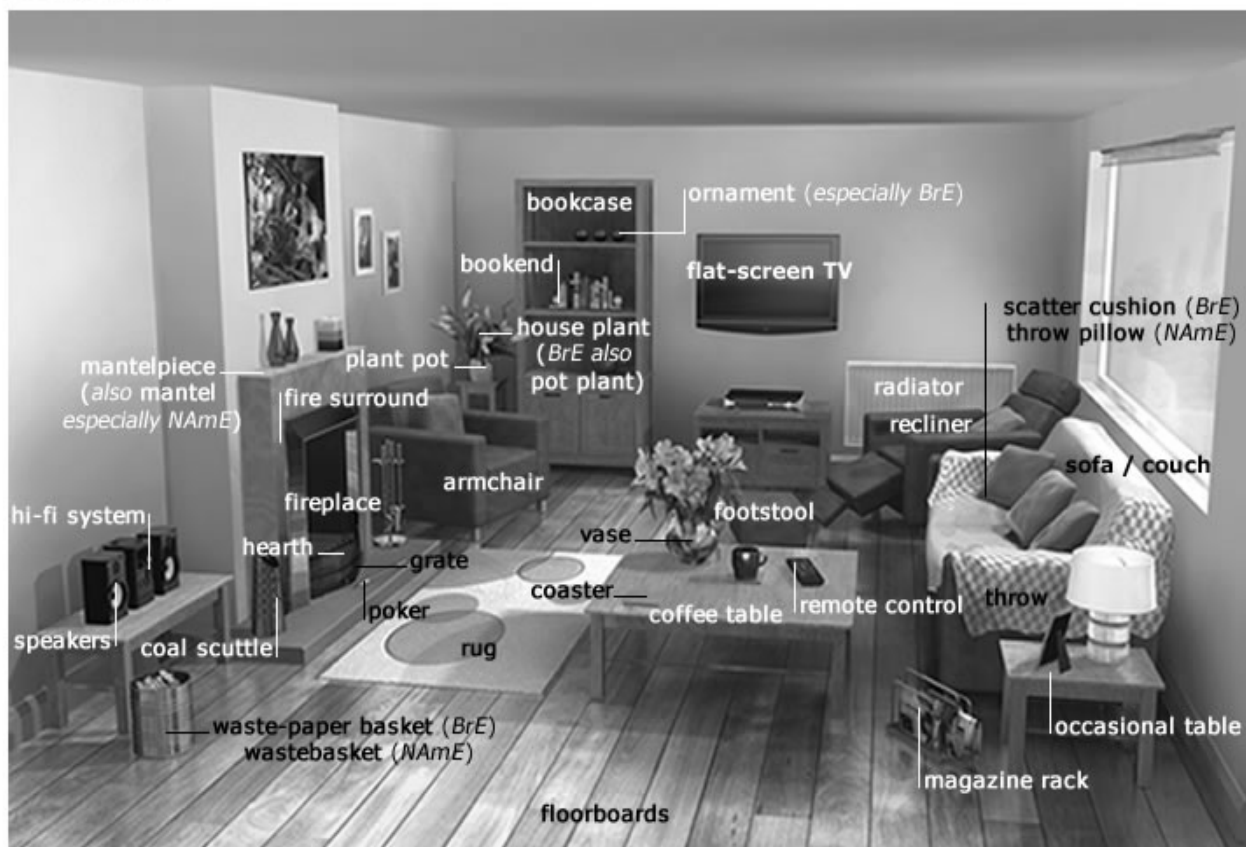
Я не можу сказати, що наш передпокій просторий, але в ньому є місце для вішалки для пальто, дзеркала та комоду з багатьма шухлядами. У шухлядах ми зберігаємо парасольки, рукавички, шапки, взуття, шарфи та сумки. В окремій шухляді ми тримаємо крем, ріжок та щітку для взуття. В лівому кутку стоїть вазон на квітковій підставці. Оскільки наш хол не дуже світлий, ми поклеїли там шпалери світлого кольору. На паркетній підлозі лежить килимове покриття. Вхідні двері до нашої квартири мають блискучу ручку, замок, табличку з номером квартири, вічко та дзвінок. Двері зроблені з дуба й полаковані. Біля порога лежить невеличкий килимок овальної форми, де ми витираємо взуття. Загалом, наш хол красивий та затишний.

4

Open the brackets using will or the be going to form.

1. – _____ (*you/open*) the door for me, please? – Yes, certainly. 2. – Your exam results are terrible. What _____ (*you/do*) about it? – I promise I _____ (*work*) much harder next year. 3. – _____ (*you/have*) another cup of coffee? – No, thank you. 4. _____ (*you/come*) and see me after the class? I want to discuss your work with you. 5. – _____ (*you/buy*) stamps? – Yes, I am. – Then _____ (*you/buy*) some for me, please? 6. – _____ (*you/give*) me \$10, please? – Yes, here you are. _____ (*you/make*) a telephone call? 7. – _____ (*you/bath*) your dog? – Yes, _____ (*you/help*) me? 8. _____ (*you/have*) some of this cake? I made it myself. 9. _____ (*you/sign*) here, please? 10. – I feel quite tired this evening. – Don't worry. I _____ (*make*) us some dinner and you can go to bed early. 11. – Do you know where to go this summer? – Yes. We _____ (*spend*) two weeks touring Australia, although we don't know the exact dates or places yet. – Wow! That _____ (*be*) great! 12. – _____ (*you/do*) something for me? – Yes, of course, what is it? 13. – _____ (*you/do*) the washing-up tonight? – No, I think it can wait till tomorrow.

LIVING ROOM



Vocabulary

furniture / built-in furniture	меблі / вбудовані меблі
a piece of furniture	частина меблів
a wall unit	меблева стінка

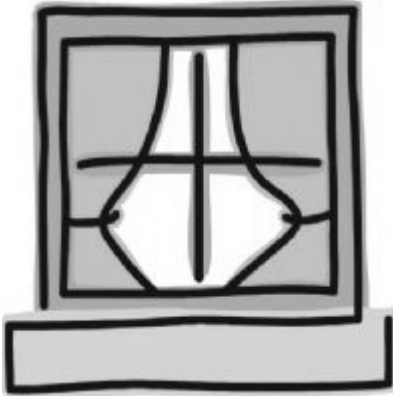
a bookcase	книжкова шафа
a display cabinet; a cupboard	сервант
a drinks cupboard	бар
an upholstered suite	гарнітур для вітальні чи передпокою
a suite of soft furniture; a seating group	м'який куточок
a settee / a sofa; a couch	маленький диван / диван, канапе
a scatter cushion; a throw pillow	декоративна подушка
an armchair	крісло
a pouffe; a pouf	пуф, м'який табурет
a small table; a coffee table; a low table; an occasional table	журнальний столик
a dressing table; a vanity table	туалетний столик
an ashtray	попільничка
a knick-knack	дрібничка
a fireplace / a mantelpiece	камін / камінна поличка
a mantel clock	годинник на камінній поличці
a grandfather clock	високий годинник у дерев'яному футлярі з циферблатом (стоїть на підлозі)
a carpet	килим
a fitted carpet; a wall-to-wall carpet	килимове покриття (на всю підлогу)
a rug	невеликий килимок
a crystal chandelier	кришталева люстра
a lampshade	абажур
a standard lamp	торшер
a sconce	бра
a fluorescent lamp	лампа денного світла
a candlestick / a candelabrum	підсвічник / канделябр
drapes / curtains	порт'єри, гардини / занавіски
a net curtain	тюль
blinds; Venetian blinds; jalousies	жалюзі
a television set; a TV set	телевізор
a remote control	пульт дистанційного управління
a loudspeaker	гучномовець
a fan	вентилятор
leather	шкіряний
textile	текстильний
upholstered	оббитий тканиною
to decorate / ~ with wallpaper	прикрашати / оклеювати шпалерами
to furnish	умеблювати

5

☛ Read and translate the text. Compare it to your lounge.

Our Living Room

Our **living room** is quite a big room of **about 35 square metres**. As you come into the room you can see several **wall units** against the wall. There are beautiful china plates in the **cupboard**, crystal glasses and bowls in the **display cabinet unit**, a lot of interesting books in the **bookcase**. Of course, there is a **colour TV set** and a **hi-fi system** with **loudspeakers** in the living room. On the extreme left there is a large **window** surrounded by the floor-length striped curtains. Opposite the window there is an **upholstered suite** comprising a **four-seater sofa** with **cushions, pouffes, armchairs**, and a **low table** with an **ashtray** and a **standard lamp** on it.



The large **Persian carpet** is on the top of the **polished parquet floor**. The tastefully selected **reproductions**, my luxurious **chandelier** and different **knick-knacks** make the room cozy and comfortable. We eat, watch television, and spend most of our time in this room. We like entertaining our guests here. We sit and chat about our life and enjoy the time spent together.

6

☛ Fill in prepositions and answer the questions below the text.

Our Sitting Room

Let's have a look _____ this picture of our sitting room. As you come _____ the room you notice a piano with a low music-stool _____ front _____ it. There is a tall bookcase standing _____ the wall next to the piano. There is a large window _____ the left. Under the window there is a radiator, but you can't see it because it's _____ the settee. There are two cushions _____ the settee. The fireplace is at the other end _____ the room. There's an armchair on each side _____ the fireplace.



There's a clock _____ the centre of the mantelpiece and there is an oval mirror _____ it. _____ the right you can see a standard lamp. Opposite the fireplace you can see a small table _____ an ashtray and some newspapers _____ it. There is a small chair by the low table and a radio-set _____ the extreme right. The floor is covered _____ a beautiful thick carpet. An electric lamp hangs _____ the middle _____ the ceiling. _____ night when it gets dark, we switch _____ the light and draw the curtains. During the day, the light comes _____ the window.

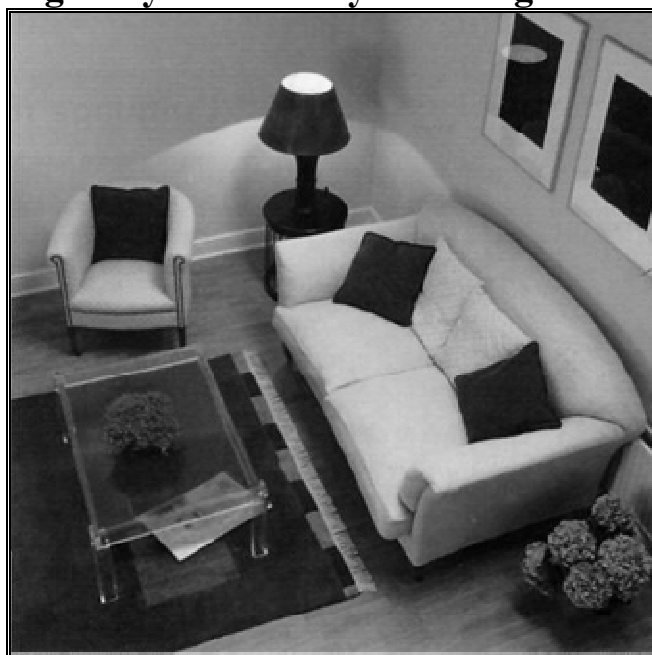
- What room do you entertain your guests in?
- What can you notice first of all as you come into your living room?
- How many windows are there in your sitting room?
- Do you have a mirror in your living room? Where is it?

- What is there in the middle of the ceiling?
- What is there on the table?
- Where is the clock?
- What can you see on the settee / sofa?
- What is there on the floor?

8

👁️ Look at the photo of the living room. Underline the things that you can see in the picture. Which things do you have in your living room?

armchair	curtains	rug
bathtub	lamp	mirror
bed	coffee table	picture
blinds	cooker	plant
bookcase	walls	radiator
carpet	wardrobe	shelf
fireplace	cupboard	stereo
fridge	cushions	toilet
shower	television	washbasin
sink	newspaper	floor
sofa	flowers	computer
bags	vase	books
knife	pouffe	front door
sconce	ashtray	staircase



9

👂 Listen to Nicole describing her living room. Say if the sentences are true or false. Give additional information.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Her living room is small. | 6. There are many books. |
| 2. Nicole likes her living room. | 7. There's a CD player and two CDs. |
| 3. There is an armchair and two sofas. | 8. There are no pictures on the wall. |
| 4. There are three chairs at the table. | 9. There is a lamp in the living room. |
| 5. There's a small table with a radio on it. | 10. The room is very comfortable. |

10

a) 👂 Listen to Tom describing the living room. Take notes and draw the picture according to the information you hear. Then be ready to describe it using your picture.

b) 👂 Listen to Betsy describing her living room. Draw the picture according to her description.

11

Translate into English.

Моя вітальня маленька, але красива, затишна, світла й гарно вмебльована. Розкішний персидський килим на паркетній підлозі м'який та різнокольоровий. Яюсь я збираюся підібрати гарне килимове покриття.



Справа стоїть комп'ютер, а зліва – шафа для одягу. Відразу ж біля комп'ютера знаходиться письмовий стіл, а над ним – декілька книжкових полицок. На столі стоїть красивий торшер персикового кольору. Зліва, поруч із шафою, знаходиться м'який шкіряний куточок, який складається з великого дивану та двох крісел із білими декоративними подушками на них.

Поряд із диваном камін. У мене є ваза з квітами та попільничка на журнальному столику, що знаходиться між кріслом та шафою. А на підвіконні декілька вазонів із квітами. Я обожаю білий колір, тому квіти білі. В мене немає туалетного столика, тільки дзеркало та багато різноманітних картин на стінах. Стіни поклеєні шпалерами персикового кольору, в тон торшеру. Занавіски на вікні різнокольорові – вони підходять до килима. Взагалі-то, я планую придбати білосніжну тюль та персикові гардини. Моя найулюбленіша річ в кімнаті – це розкішна люстра, бо я купила її в Італії. Згадайтеся, якого вона кольору?

12

Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Continuous.

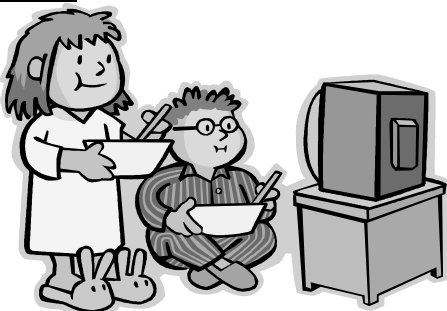


1. I _____ (*be*) alone in the house sitting in front of the fireplace at that time because Mr Jones _____ (*work*) in the garage and Mrs Jones _____ (*shop*). 2. It _____ (*start*) raining when he _____ (*walk*) to work. He _____ (*stop*) a taxi because he _____ (*not/wear*) a coat and he _____ (*not/have*) an umbrella. 3. We _____ (*be*) late. When we _____ (*arrive*), everyone _____ (*sit*) in the garden having coffee. 4. The station _____ (*be*) empty except for the people who _____ (*wait*) for the next train.

5. He _____ (*be*) very polite. Whenever his wife _____ (*enter*) the room, he _____ (*stand*) up. 6. You _____ (*look*) very busy when I _____ (*see*) you last night. What _____ (*you/do*)?

13

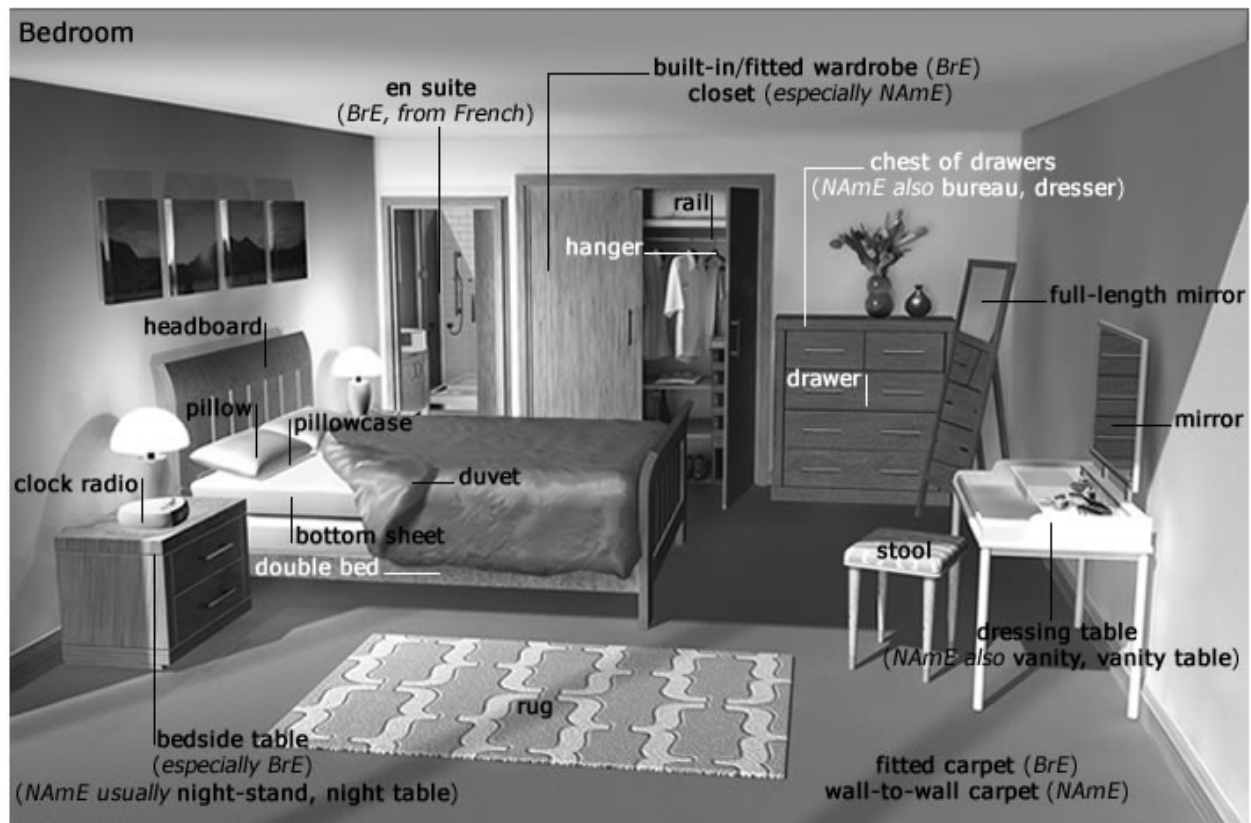
Translate into English.



1. Уся родина дивилась по телевізору концерт. 2. Піт почув, що дзвонять у двері. 3. У той день він був надзвичайно люб'язний з усіма. 4. Вона запізнювалася й вирішила взяти таксі. 5. Рівно о четвертій я бачила його біля пошти. 6. Вона відчувала, що ненавидить його все більше. 7. З третьої до п'ятої вона стояла у черзі. 8. Йї ніхто

не вірив, тому що вона завжди вихвалялася. **9.** Коли я підходила до школи, прозвенів дзвоник. **10.** Поки ти працював у себе в кімнаті, ми обговорювали плани на літо. **11.** Вона обмірковувала свою відповідь. **12.** Коли він розмовляв з нею, то зрозумів, що вона найнезвичайніша людина серед його знайомих. **13.** Поки чоловік гуляв із дитиною, дружина приготувала вечерю. **14.** Всю неділю він пропрацював за комп'ютером. **15.** Минулого літа Кіра зустрічалася одразу з двома хлопцями.

BEDROOM



Vocabulary

an alarm clock	будильник
a bedside lamp / a reading lamp	приліжкова лампа/лампа для читання
a wardrobe	шафа для одягу
a built-in wardrobe; a fitted wardrobe; a closet	вбудована шафа

Types of beds

a single bed / a double bed	односпальне ліжко / двоспальне ~
a cot; a crib / a cradle	дитяче ліжечко / колиска
bunk beds	двоповерхове ліжко
a sofa bed	диван-ліжко
a hammock	гамак
a roll-away bed	розкладне ліжко

a folding bed; a camp bed	розкладачка
a headboard / a footboard	передня спинка ліжка / задня ~
a bedside cabinet; a bedside table; a night table	приліжкова тумбочка
bedding; bedlinen	постільна білизна
a bedspread; a bedcover	покривало
an eiderdown; a continental quilt; a duvet	пухова ковдра (підбита пухом)
a quilt	стьобана ковдра (підбита ватою)
a plaid	плед
a blanket / a blanket cover	ковдра / підковдра
a mattress / an air bed; an air mattress	матрац / надувний матрац
a sheet	простирадло
a pillow / a pillow case; a pillow slip	подушка / наволочка
to make the bed	застеляти ліжко

Beds



hammock



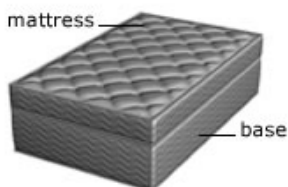
cradle



cot (BrE) / crib (NAme)



travel cot



divan (BrE)



four-poster bed



futon



single bed
(NAme also twin bed)



bunk beds



sofa bed



camp bed (BrE)
cot (NAme)



airbed (BrE)
air mattress (especially NAme)

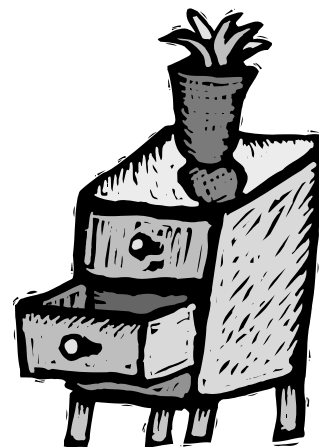
14

📖 Read and translate the text. Compare it to your bedroom.

Our Bedroom

Our **bedroom** is not very large. The walls in the bedroom are yellow. There are some nice **paintings** on the right of the **chest of drawers**. There is a nice wooden **double bed** with **bedside tables** on each side. As my wife adores

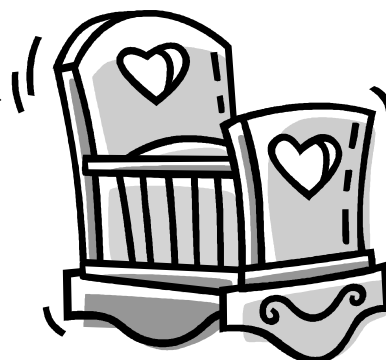
flowers, there are fresh tulips in the **vase** on the **dressing table** in the corner. On the dressing table in front of the **looking glass** you can see a **hairbrush** and a **comb**, a **hand mirror**, a bottle of **scent** and a **powder-box**. These, of course, don't belong to me, but to my wife. In the **chest of drawers** we keep clean **linen** such as **sheets**, **blanket covers** and **pillow cases**. In the **wardrobe** we keep my suits and other clothes, which my wife hangs on the **coat-hangers**. The **parquet floor** is covered with a soft thick **carpet** and there are two **rugs** on each side of the bed.



At night when we feel tired and sleepy, we go up to our bedroom and fall asleep. When the **alarm clock** rings and wakes us up, we feel fresh and are ready to start a new day.

15 Write the words that fit the following definitions.

1. things to stop people peeping through the windows at you _____
2. things to keep you warm in bed _____
3. things to sleep between _____
4. something to put your head on when you sleep _____
5. something to keep your clothes in _____
6. something to put a blanket in _____
7. something to place a pillow in _____
8. a two-storey bed _____
9. a sofa that can be converted into a bed _____
10. a bed for kids, babies _____



16 How do you make the bed? Put the sentences in the correct order.

- _____ Put the bedspread on top of the blanket.
- 1 _____ Take off the dirty sheets.
- _____ Place the pillows in the pillowcases.
- _____ Put the blanket on the bed.
- _____ Put the pillows on the bed.
- _____ Then put the clean sheets on the bed.
- _____ Place the blanket in the blanket cover.

17 Fill in the blanks with prepositions where required. Answer the questions below the text.

Randy and Norma Chiu decided to redecorate their bedroom. The curtains and the bedspread used to be yellow; now they are blue. They decided to take _____ the blinds and put _____ the new curtains.



They chose light green sheets and pillowcases to go _____ the blue bedspread. They replaced the double bed _____ a king-size bed and threw _____ the headboard and the footboard. Their bureau and chest _____ drawers used to be _____ dark wood, but yesterday they bought new ones, painted _____ black. Last winter, Norma bought a lovely dark green comforter, but they put it _____ because the

weather was too warm _____ it then. They'll probably take it _____ a week or so. Finally, Randy wants to call the telephone company tomorrow to order a blue phone _____ the bedroom. They're sure they'll enjoy the new look _____ their bedroom.

- What do they have to cover their bedroom window?
- What kind of furniture do they have now?
- What used to be yellow?
- What did they put away for a while?
- What will Randy order tomorrow?

18 🎧 Listen and write where these things are located in Nicole's bedroom.

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. mobile phone | 3. CD player | 5. Nicole's bag |
| 2. magazine | 4. car keys | 6. books |

19 Write a letter to your mother and describe the way you want to redecorate your living room and bedroom.

20 📖 Read the article and match the phrases a-d with the end of each article. Discuss the questions below the article.

- a) with 100 people in the room!
- b) because the green contained arsenic, a poisonous chemical.
- c) recorded "Give Peace a Chance".
- d) and poorer travelers didn't need to get out of bed.

Beds

6 things you probably didn't know about beds and bedrooms

1. In 19th century Britain there existed a list of rules for bedrooms. They had to be fresh and airy, but not too airy in case people fell ill. You had to keep cooking smells away from bedrooms or burn incense to hide the smell. You couldn't put green wallpaper in bedrooms...
2. After their wedding in 1969, John Lennon and Yoko Ono spent a week in bed at the Amsterdam Hilton hotel as a protest against the war in Vietnam. As a result the couple...

3. Louis XIV of France was a busy man and didn't worry about getting up in the morning. His valet woke him up at 8.30 and then he had breakfast with his important friends in bed. On some days when Louis was feeling sleepy, he didn't get up at all and he conducted his daily business from his bed...
4. When people in Shakespeare's time stayed at an inn, they had to share their beds with complete strangers. When a rich traveler arrived at a busy hostel, he took a place of a poorer person. However, there were inns with huge beds for eight people...
 - Do you know any interesting or strange facts about beds or bedrooms?
 - Are you a heavy or light sleeper?
 - Do you usually remember your dreams the next morning?
 - Can you remember a recent dream?

21

Translate into English.



Комод з дзеркалом, матрац, лампа для читання, нічний столик, килимове покриття, будильник, приліжкова тумбочка, двоспальне ліжко, туалетний столик, туалетне приладдя, підковдра, плед, пухова ковдра, простирadlo, розкладне ліжко, подушка, дитяче ліжечко, наволочка.

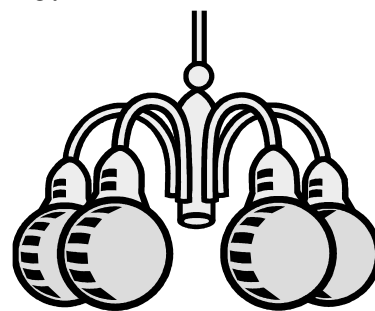
22

Translate these sentences into English.

1. Спальня – це місце не тільки для фізичного, а й морального відпочинку, тому шпалери в ній мають бути приємного кольору. На стінах можна повісити підібрані за стилем і смаком картини. Можна придбати двоспальне чи односпальне ліжко, або розкладне ліжко.

2. Спочатку ми хотіли в спальні постелити сіре килимове покриття, а потім передумали та вибрали звичайний килим. Найкращу люстру ми, звісно ж, повісили у вітальні. А в спальній кімнаті ми прилаштували симпатичне бра – це зручно.

3. Наша спальня вмебльована стильним спальним меблевим гарнітуром із світлого дуба. Він складається з елегантного двоспального ліжка з матрацом, приліжкових тумбочок, що стоять по обидва боки від ліжка, туалетного столика з предметами туалету, шафи для одягу з полицями для білизни та комоду для постільної білизни, запасних простирadл, наволочок, підковдр та стьобаних ковдр. Ліжко вкрите красивим покривалом, що підходить за кольором до занавісок. У спальні також є два приліжкових килимки, дві лампи для читання та одна приліжкова лампа.



23

Choose the correct variant to complete the sentences.

1. You *don't have to/can't* pay electricity and gas bills. 2. You *don't need to/can't* clean the house because we have a cleaner. 3. I'm sorry, but you *can't/mayn't* smoke in the flat. 4. I'm afraid you *mustn't/can't* park your car here. 5. You *have to/may* take care of your room if you want to live in the hostel with us. 6. You *must/have to* pay for phone calls. 7. If you like, you *may/must* invite your friends to the hostel. 8. Visitors *can't/mayn't* stay for more than three days. 9. Your room has its own entrance, so you *may/don't have to* worry about disturbing others if you come home late at night. 10. You *have to/may* keep pets in the house.



24

Complete the text with had to, didn't have to, were allowed to, weren't allowed to, could. Did/do you follow any bedroom rules?

I went to a strict boarding school with rules for everything. Take, for example, the bedrooms. You _____ make your beds and keep the room clean and tidy, although of course you _____ clean the windows and floor. Obviously, you _____ smoke in the bedrooms, but some older boys did. You _____ read in bed until nine, but then the lights were turned off. Sundays were more relaxed. You _____ wake up until eight and there were no lessons. You were free and you _____ do what you wanted. Sunday was always my favorite day.

STUDY

Vocabulary

a computer / a laptop / a tablet	комп'ютер / портативний комп'ютер / планшет
a printer	принтер
a gadget	гаджет
a tape recorder	магнітофон
a textbook	підручник
a writing table	письмовий стіл
a reading lamp	настільна лампа
a computer chair; an office chair; a task chair	офісне крісло
stationery	канцелярське приладдя
a folder	папка
a wastepaper basket	кошик для непотрібних паперів

25

☞ Read this text, translate it and use to describe your own study.

And now I would like to describe our **study**. At first it was my daddy's room, but as I grew older, it became mine. Frankly speaking, I'm very happy to have a room for myself, that's why I always try to keep it tidy and cozy. There is a cozy **sofa**, a **writing table**, a **bookcase**, and a big **wardrobe** in my room. On the wall there are some **shelves** full of English and Ukrainian books. There is a



radio set on the **shelf** and a **coffee table** next to the sofa. I have two beautiful **paintings** on the wall above the sofa. The writing table is wooden and the **armchair** is made of wood too. There is a **laptop**, a **printer** and many other **gadgets** on the table. The **French window** is snow white that makes the study very nice and stylish.

26

☞ You are going to listen to six sentences describing the position of some objects in the picture below. Put a tick (✓) in the box if the sentence is true and a cross (x) if it's false.

a) clock b) mirror c) photos d) lamp e) flowers f) rug



b) Correct the false sentences.

c) ☞ Describe the position of the numbered objects (1-6) in the picture.

For example: 1 - *There's a plant in the corner.*

d) ☞ Compare this office with an office you know. What differences are there?

27

Translate into English.

1. Я люблю виконувати моє домашнє завдання в моєму кабінеті, тому що він дуже затишний: там на письмовому столі є комп'ютер, магнітофон, принтер і багато полицок із книжками та папками.
2. В моєму кабінеті є письмовий стіл із зручним стільцем біля нього та магнітофон. Біля правої стіни стоїть шафа для книг; у лівому кутку – кондиціонер. На паркетній підлозі лежить сіре килимове покриття.
3. Якщо ти хочеш почитати книжку, йди в мій кабінет та візьми її з моєї книжної шафи. Там на письмовому столі є настільна лампа, я люблю читати біля неї.
4. Робочий кабінет дуже важливий для студентів, тому що там вони можуть робити домашні завдання, використовуючи комп'ютер, принтер, магнітофон та підручники.

28

Listen to the class rules and complete the table.

<i>must do</i>	<i>mustn't do</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • turn off your mobile phone • • • 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • arrive late • • •

CHILDREN'S ROOM**Vocabulary**

a bib	дитячий нагрудник
a carriage	візок
a stroller	легка дитяча коляска
a crib / a cot	дитяче ліжко
a diaper	пелюшка
a doll	лялька
formula	суміш
a pacifier	соска
a playpen	манеж
a poster	плакат
a potty	горщик
a rattle	дитяче брязкальце
a swing	гойдалка

29

Describe this children's room using your active vocabulary list.



30

Complete the sentences in any way you like. Make them true about yourself.

1. We'll be surprised if our house _____.
2. I'll be very happy if my room _____.
3. I'll be very sorry if our family _____.
4. I'll be very pleased if my parents _____.
5. I'll be very angry if the furniture in our flat _____.
6. We will buy a new wardrobe if we _____.
7. My neighbours will move to another city if they _____.
8. Jake will redecorate his bedroom if he _____.
9. My father will build a house if he _____.
10. I won't stop studying English until I _____.
11. I will retire when I _____.
12. I'll leave home as soon as I _____.
13. I'll be really upset if you _____.
14. I won't have children until I _____.
15. I'll have a big house-warming party when I _____.
16. I'll always live here unless I _____.
17. I'll have more free time when I _____.
18. I'll have something to eat as soon as my wife _____.
19. I won't get married until I _____.
20. We will buy new curtains when we _____.
21. We will sell our bedsitter when we _____.
22. If I don't go out this weekend, I _____.
23. After I leave the university today, I _____.
24. Before I am 65, I _____.
25. When I have enough money, I _____.

31

Work in pairs. Complete the conversations below with your own ideas. Practice reading your conversations aloud.

- a) **Oliver:** Oliver, could you do your homework now?
Mum: Oh, Mum, I'll do it when ...
- b) **Mark:** *Are you going anywhere nice this weekend?*
Betty: *We might go for a picnic in the country if ...*

- c) **Wife:** We haven't got any milk!
Husband: Oh, no! I'll go and buy some as soon as ...
- d) **Olivia:** *Are you enjoying your new job more now?*
Andy: *No, I hate it! I want to leave as soon as/when ...*
- e) **Steve:** So, when are we going to see each other again?
Ann: I don't know. I'm very busy at work at the moment, and I'm going away soon, but I'll phone you when ...
- f) **Cindy:** *Are you going to have a holiday this year?*
Ben: *I hope so, if ...*

b) 🎧 Listen and compare your answers with the ones on the recording.

32

Fill in the gaps with the correct tense form (the Present Simple or the Future Simple). All the sentences refer to future time.

1. When I _____ (*see*) you tomorrow, I _____ (*tell*) you my news. 2. _____ (*come*) back again soon if you _____ (*get*) a chance. 3. All right. I _____ (*apologize*) if it _____ (*make*) you feel better. 4. The room _____ (*look*) better if you _____ (*paint*) it in blue. 5. As soon as we _____ (*get*) there, we _____ (*phone*) for a taxi. 6. I _____ (*go*) to the library before I _____ (*do*) the shopping. 7. We _____ (*wait*) here until it _____ (*stop*) raining. 8. I _____ (*get*) some money from the bank when it _____ (*open*). 9. After you _____ (*take*) the medicine, you _____ (*feel*) better. 10. You have to stay until you _____ (*finish*) your work. 11. I _____ (*let*) you know the minute I _____ (*hear*) the results. 12. Before we _____ (*paint*) the wall, we _____ (*have*) a cup of tea. 13. We _____ (*climb*) over the wall as soon as it _____ (*get*) dark. 14. If you _____ (*call*) me tonight, we _____ (*speak*) about it. 15. I _____ (*be*) happy if she _____ (*buy*) a new coffee table. 16. I _____ (*need*) some money if we _____ (*go out*) tonight. 17. I _____ (*miss*) you if we _____ (*move*) to the country. 18. If the boys _____ (*come*) to supper, I _____ (*cook*) chicken. 19. Ann _____ (*be*) sorry if Helen _____ (*not/come*). 20. If you _____ (*look*) in the top drawer, you _____ (*find*) your passport. 21. If you _____ (*wash up*) the dishes, I _____ (*dust*) the furniture. 22. It _____ (*not/be*) funny if Norman _____ (*lose*) the job. 23. If you _____ (*get*) lonely, I hope you _____ (*phone*) me any time. 24. If Linda _____ (*learn*) Italian, she _____ (*go*) to Italy. 25. I _____ (*open*) the window when it _____ (*stop*) raining.

33

a) The Peake Hotel has two stars but the Peake family want three stars. They have a family meeting to decide what to do. Choose the correct form of the verb to complete the conversation.

Pete: *How are we going to build the swimming pool?*

Jim: There is a company in Swindon that builds pools. *I'm going to/I'll* go there when we finish the meeting if you want.

Pete: *Great. And we need to fix the air conditioning.*

Gary: This morning I spoke to a guy from Melksham who fixes air conditioning. *I'm going to/I'll* see him this afternoon at 3 o'clock.

Pete: *Good. What about the Internet connections?*

Jean: There's a computer shop in Chippenham. *I'm going to/I'll* drive over there later if I have time.

Pete: *Right. So the next thing is the free parking. We'll need to fill in some forms for the police.*

Jean: You can do them on the Internet. I need to write some emails anyway. *I'm going to/I'll* go to the Internet café in town if you don't need me here.

Pete: *And, finally, who's going to clean the rooms?*

Gary: *I'm going to/I'll* clean the rooms as usual! I'm already late. It's 10 o'clock!

Pete: *Don't worry, I'm going to/I'll help you.*

b) Choose the best verb forms to complete the conversation.

A: *Are you going to do/Will you do* anything interesting this weekend?

B: *Probably not. We're staying/We'll stay* at home, I guess. And you?

A: Yes, *we're visiting/we'll visit* some friends at the coast. But according to the weather forecast, *it's going to rain/it will rain*, unfortunately.

B: *Well, I'm sure you're having/you'll have* a nice time anyway.

A: Yes, it doesn't matter too much. We are more worried about the traffic. It's a holiday weekend, so there *'re going to be/will be* a lot of cars on the road.

B: *If you leave early, you are going to be/you'll be* O.K.

A: Yes, but we can't leave until after nine because *we are going to do/we'll do* a bit of shopping first.

c) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1. We _____ (*look for*) a hotel as soon as we _____ (*arrive*).

2. After we _____ (*check in*), we _____ (*find*) somewhere to eat.

3. We'll go for a walk around the city when we _____ (*eat*).

4. If the weather _____ (*be*) bad, we'll go on a bus tour.

5. Once we know the city a bit better, we _____ (*visit*) a museum or two.

6. We'll visit the National Gallery before we _____ (*leave*).

34

a) Complete the text. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Use the Present Simple or the Future Simple.

A modeling agency offered a job in Japan to a sixteen-year-old English school student, Emily. She decided to take the job.

“If I _____ (*not/take*) the job, I _____ (*not/get*) the chance again,” she said. Before she _____ (*go*), she _____ (*have*) a big party for all her friends. “I’m so excited,” she said. “When I _____ (*say*) goodbye to my boyfriend at the airport, I _____ (*be*) very sad. But after I _____ (*arrive*) in Japan, everything _____ (*be*) O.K.”

If she _____ (*be*) successful, the agency _____ (*give*) her more work. “I’m sure I _____ (*be*) good at it when I _____ (*have*) a little experience.”

b) Emily’s boyfriend doesn’t want her to go. He thinks she will have problems. Make sentences from the prompts.

1. when / arrive / not / speak / language
2. if / not / speak / language / not / make / friends
3. if / not / make / friends / feel / lonely
4. if / feel / lonely / want / come / home
5. when / come / home / not / have / qualifications



35 🎧 An old power station near the city center is being demolished. There are different ideas what to replace it with. Complete the gaps with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Listen and check.

- a) If they _____ (*build*) a new hotel on the site, there _____ (*definitely/be*) more jobs for local people.
- b) If they _____ (*decide*) to put a cinema here, it’s going to create new serious parking problems.
- c) If they _____ (*build*) new flats, it might help other businesses in the area.
- d) The area _____ (*change*) completely if they _____ (*put*) a new shopping center there.
- e) I hope they ask local people what they want before they _____ (*make*) a decision.
- f) They should try to bring more homes to the area as soon as they _____ (*can*).
- g) After they _____ (*finish*) demolishing the old power station, they should wait for a few months.
- h) I _____ (*be*) glad when the work _____ (*be*) over! The noise is going to be terrible!

36 a) Read the beginning of the story. Why do you think the Italian doesn’t want to lend his newspaper to the American?

A young American was travelling to Venice on the Orient Express. It was a long journey and he was bored. Sitting opposite him there was an Italian man. He was about 50 years old. He had an English newspaper on the seat next to him.



“Excuse me,” the American said. “Can I borrow your newspaper?”

“No,” said the Italian. “I’m sorry. You can’t.”

“Why not?” asked the American.

“Well,” said the Italian. “It’s quite simple...”

b) ☞ Number the rest of the story 1-9. Listen and check.

- “If you meet Nicoletta, you’ll fall in love with her.”
- “If we start talking, we’ll become friends.”
- “If I invite you to my house, you’ll meet my beautiful daughter, Nicoletta.”
- “So, that’s why I won’t lend you my newspaper.”
- “If I find you, I’ll kill you.”
- “If you fall in love with her, you’ll run away together.”
- “If we become friends, I’ll invite you to my house in Venice.”
- “If I lend you my newspaper, we’ll start talking.”
- “If you run away, I’ll find you.”

37

Translate into English using if/unless.



1. Якщо він прийде завтра, покажіть йому нашу бібліотеку. 2. Якщо ти достатньо доросла, як ти кажеш, то й поведься як доросла. 3. Якщо ти добре його знаєш, то можеш покластися на нього. 4. Якщо ти знаєш, де він зараз, зателефонуй йому й скажи, що ми на нього чекаємо. 5. Якщо ви не знаєте його адреси, як же ви його знайдете? 6. Якщо Мері не буде багато працювати, вона не складе іспити. 7. Одягни плащ, якщо піде дощ.

8. Якщо ви прийдете сьогодні, ми зіграємо в шахи. 9. Що ви будете робити, якщо він прийде? 10. Якщо він прийде, я запитаю його про це. 11. Я не піду туди, якщо дощ не припиниться. 12. Якщо я побачу його знову, я впізнаю його. 13. Якщо ви повернетесь, я на вас зачекаю. 14. Я поговорю з ним про це, якщо зустріну його. 15. Якщо я буду вільний завтра ввечері, то піду з вами до театру. 16. Якщо ти не прийдеш завтра, у нас не буде зустрічі з президентом фірми. 17. Якщо ти не знаєш якихось слів, подивися в словнику. 18. Якщо люди, які кохають один одного, розлучаються надовго, вони, як правило, дуже сумують один без одного. 19. Якщо ви будете працювати наполегливо, то закінчите роботу вчасно. 20. Якщо ви не візьмете таксі, то не встигнете на потяг. 21. Я буду радий, якщо ви приймете мою пропозицію.



KITCHEN



Vocabulary

a buffet	буфет
a cupboard / a wall cupboard	шафа для посуду / настінна ~
a kitchen unit	кухонний гарнітур
a drawer	шухляда
an electric cooker / a gas cooker	електрична плита / газова плита
a burner / a hotplate	конфорка на газовій плиті / конфорка на електричній плиті
a knob	ручка на плиті
a cooker hood	витяжка
an oven / a microwave oven / a stove	духовка / мікрохвильова піч / піч
a baking sheet	деко
a cake tin	форма для випічки тортів
an oven glove; an oven mitt; a pot holder	прихватка
a refrigerator; a fridge / a freezer	холодильник / морозильник
a worktop; a working top; a counter	робоча поверхня
a paper towel; kitchen paper	паперовий рушник
a tea towel; a dish towel	кухонний рушничок
a dishcloth; a dishrag	тряпка для миття посуду

a kitchen sponge / a scourer	кухонна губка / металева мочалка
a garbage bin	корзина (відро) для сміття
a water tap; a faucet	кран
a hot and cold water tap	кран для гарячої та холодної води
a sink	раковина
a dishwasher	машина для миття посуду
a dish-rack; a plate rack; a dish drainer; a draining board	сушка для посуду
cooking battery; kitchen utensils	кухонний посуд
a pan set	набір посуду
a saucepan / a frying pan	каструля / сковорідка
a lid	кришка
a grater	тертка
a colander	друшляк
a sieve	сито
a dinner pail; a lunch pail	судок (для страви)
a nutcracker	щипці для горіхів
a garlic press	часникодавка
a corkscrew / a tin opener	штопор / консервний ніж
a coffee maker / an ibrik; a cezve	кавоварка / турка, джезва
a coffee mill	кавовий млинок
a mincer	м'ясорубка
a mixer; an electric whisk	міксер
a food processor	кухонний комбайн
a toaster	тостер
a juicer	соковижималка
a kettle	чайник
labour-saving gadgets	побутові прилади, які економлять працю
a device; a utensil; an appliance	прилад, пристрій
a rolling pin	качалка
a bread bin	хлібниця
a cutting board; a breadboard	дошка для нарізки хліба

DINING ROOM

Vocabulary

chinaware; crockery	фарфоровий посуд
tea-things	чайний посуд
a cup / a tea cup / a coffee cup	чашка / чайна чашка / кавова чашка
a mug	велика чашка, кухоль
a saucer	блюдце

a glass	склянка
a jug	глечик
a thermos flask	термос
a knife / a knife block	ніж / набір ножів
a fork	виделка
a spoon / a soup spoon; a tablespoon	ложка / столова ложка
a dessert spoon	десертна ложка
a teaspoon / a coffee spoon	чайна ложка / кавова ложка
a ladle	розливна ложка
a spatula	лопатка
a plate	тарілка
a bowl / a set of bowls	миска / набір мисок
a salad bowl / a fruit bowl	салатниця / вазочка для фруктів
a teapot / a coffee pot	чайник для заварки / кавник
a sugar basin	вазочка для цукру
a salt cellar; a salt shaker	сільниця
a spice jar / a pepperbox; a pepper pot	баночка для спецій / перечниця
a butter dish	маслянка, масельничка
a tray	піднос, таця
a tablecloth	скатертину
a napkin	серветка
a table mat; a place mat	підставка під прибори
a coaster	підставка під склянку, чашку



Kitchen

My favourite room is our **kitchen**. Perhaps a kitchen is the most important room in many houses, but it is particularly so in our house because it's not only where we cook and eat but it's also the main meeting place for our family and friends. We all are not **big-eaters**, but we use this place to have a chat about our problems and life.

I have so many happy memories of times spent there: special occasions such as homecomings or cooking Christmas dinner; troubled times, which lead to warm cups of tea or coffee in the middle of the night; ordinary daily events such as making breakfast on dark, cold winter mornings for sleepy children before sending them off to school, then sitting down to read a newspaper with a steaming cup of coffee. Whenever we have a party, people gravitate with their drinks to the kitchen. It always ends up the fullest and the noisiest room in the house.



So what does this special room look like? It's quite big, but not huge. We don't have a separate **dining room**, as our kitchen is big enough to have a good round **wooden table** with four **stools** at it. There is also a **cupboard** with **cups**, **glasses**, **plates** and **bowls**, a **dishwasher**, a **sink with hot and cold water taps** and a **fridge with a big freezer**. The brown **kitchen cabinets** are full of **electric labour-saving gadgets** such as a **juicer**, a **mincer**, a **food processor** and some others. The **worktop** is quite big to

keep an **electric kettle**, a **coffee maker**, a **microwave oven** and a **bread bin**, which is made of wood. My mother is **keen on neatness** and that's why we have different **kitchen towels**, **dishrags**, **scourers** to help her clean the kitchen.

Above the sink there is a large window that overlooks the apple trees in the garden. The **gas cooker** is in the one end, and above it we have a very useful **cooker hood**. In the other end there is a wall with a large notice-board, which tells the story of our lives, our past, present and future, in words and pictures: a school photo of Meg and Kate, a postcard from Auntie Nancy from Australia, a wedding invitation for next Sunday. Our entire world is there for everyone to read!

The front door is seldom used in our house, only by strangers. All our friends use the back door, which means they come straight into the kitchen and join in whatever is happening there. The kettle goes on immediately and then we all sit round the table, drinking tea and chatting! Without doubt some of the happiest times of my life have been spent in our kitchen.




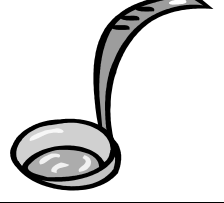

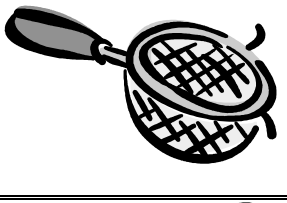

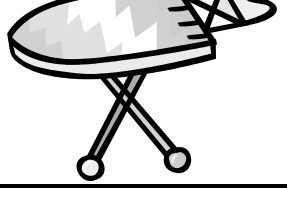

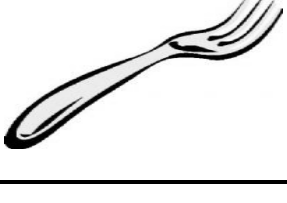
39 a) Write the words in the correct column. Translate them into Ukrainian.

- *an armchair* ▪ *a double bed* ▪ *a coat rack* ▪ *a kettle* ▪ *a cushion*
- *a colander* ▪ *a coffee table* ▪ *a pillow case* ▪ *a fork* ▪ *a telephone*
- *a spyhole* ▪ *a standard lamp* ▪ *a doormat* ▪ *a quilt* ▪ *a settee*

<i>hall</i>	<i>living room</i>	<i>bedroom</i>	<i>kitchen</i>

b) Listen and say the words. Translate them into Ukrainian. Say what room they can be in. Fill in the table in a).

40 Translate all the words. Tick the item that is shown.

	<input type="checkbox"/> a spatula <input type="checkbox"/> a corkscrew <input type="checkbox"/> a tin opener <input type="checkbox"/> a garlic crasher		<input type="checkbox"/> a salt cellar <input type="checkbox"/> a sieve <input type="checkbox"/> a pepper mill <input type="checkbox"/> an egg cup
	<input type="checkbox"/> a carving knife <input type="checkbox"/> a penknife <input type="checkbox"/> a cheese knife <input type="checkbox"/> a fish knife		<input type="checkbox"/> a tea spoon <input type="checkbox"/> a ladle <input type="checkbox"/> a soup spoon <input type="checkbox"/> a dessert spoon
	<input type="checkbox"/> a mug <input type="checkbox"/> a teacup <input type="checkbox"/> a tumbler <input type="checkbox"/> a wine glass		<input type="checkbox"/> a strainer <input type="checkbox"/> a grater <input type="checkbox"/> a peeler <input type="checkbox"/> a colander
	<input type="checkbox"/> a casserole dish <input type="checkbox"/> a baking tray <input type="checkbox"/> a mixing bowl <input type="checkbox"/> a thermos flask		<input type="checkbox"/> a bread board <input type="checkbox"/> a chopping board <input type="checkbox"/> a draining board <input type="checkbox"/> an ironing board
	<input type="checkbox"/> a mixer <input type="checkbox"/> a coffee mill <input type="checkbox"/> a toaster <input type="checkbox"/> a pepper box		<input type="checkbox"/> a spoon <input type="checkbox"/> a fork <input type="checkbox"/> a knife <input type="checkbox"/> a rolling pin

41 Circle the word that is odd in each line. Explain your choice. Translate the words.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. knife | fork | dessert spoon | garlic press |
| 2. bowl | saucer | plate | frying pan |
| 3. kettle | coffee pot | saucepan | jug |
| 4. mincer | juicer | coffee mill | grater |
| 5. sugar basin | salt cellar | pepper box | mixer |

42 Name all possible kitchen utensils connected with the following things.

- | | | | | |
|----------|-----------|--------------|---------|------------|
| ▪ fish | ▪ soup | ▪ bread | ▪ sugar | ▪ hot pans |
| ▪ eggs | ▪ meat | ▪ cake | ▪ tins | ▪ salt |
| ▪ coffee | ▪ dishes | ▪ garlic | ▪ wine | ▪ pepper |
| ▪ water | ▪ matches | ▪ vegetables | ▪ tea | ▪ milk |

43 ♣ Where do you keep or put?



- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a) milk | g) meat that you are going to cook |
| b) bread | h) a pie you are going to bake |
| c) eggs to boil | i) dirty cups and dishes |
| d) a tablecloth | j) clean cups and dishes |
| e) a box of matches | k) spaghetti you've just cooked |
| f) tea-things | l) fresh berries to be used in winter |

44 Make a list of possible utensils, dishes, pots, pans, and appliances that would be needed in the following situations.

- Pete got up and made breakfast of toast and coffee.
- Karen opened a bottle of soda and then filled her glass with ice cubes.
- Steve washed and dried the dishes by hand and then put them away.
- Peggy took the hot roast out to serve her guests.
- Don opened a tin of soup, then added water and warmed it up.

45 Choose the words that fit the following definitions.

- An appliance used for mixing, combining or chopping various foods and liquids _____
- A box used for keeping bread _____
- A dish on which food can be baked _____
- An appliance used for freezing food _____
- Where we cook soup _____
- A pot to boil water in _____
- A device used for making coffee _____
- A bowl-like utensil with holes for draining food _____
- Something mainly textile to cover the dining table _____
- An appliance that grinds coffee _____
- Something to wipe your _____



mouth with after eating _____ 12. Something that goes under a cup _____ 13. It is a strong metal pot with a tight lid in which food can be cooked quickly under high pressure _____ 14. Something that helps scrape the rest of the mixture out of bowls or frying pans _____ 15. We cut meat on this _____ 16. If you travel a lot, it is used to keep hot tea in winter and cold kvass in summer _____ 17. It absorbs water on the table _____ 18. You can use it to make very small pieces of cheese to sprinkle on a dish _____ 19. It is used to open bottles of wine _____ 20. Things that are used to keep under the plates on the dining table _____



46

☛ Answer the questions.

1. What do you like about your kitchen most of all? What don't you like? Why?
2. What things in the kitchen are expensive / cheap?
3. What things do you use every day / sometimes / never?
4. What are the things that your mother / father uses while cooking?

47

a) ☛ Listen and complete the conversation between Suzie and her friend Matt.

Suzie: *And this is the _____.*

Matt: Mmm, it's very nice.

Suzie: *Well, it's not very _____, but there are a lot of _____. And there's a new _____, and a _____. That's new too.*

Matt: But what's in all these _____?

Suzie: *Well, not a lot. There are some _____, but there aren't any _____. And I have some _____ and _____, but I don't have any _____!*

Matt: Do you have any _____?

Suzie: *No. Sorry.*

Matt: Never mind. We can drink this champagne from those _____! Cheers!

b) ☛ What is there in your kitchen? How is your kitchen different from Suzie's?

48

Give the English equivalents.

М'ясорубка, кухня, конфорка, сковорода, каstrуля, блюдце, часникодавка, сільниця, десертна ложка, цукорниця, мікрохвильова піч, столова ложка, чайна ложка, чайник, тортка, холодильник, сушка для посуду, друшляк, тостер, електрична плита, глечик, раковина, консервний ніж, машина для миття посуду, миска, кавник, кавовий млинок, міксер, хлібниця, настінна шафа для посуду, фаянсовий посуд, кухоль, керамічна каstrуля, сито, розливна ложка, судок, термос, кришка, табуретка, склянка, перечниця.

49

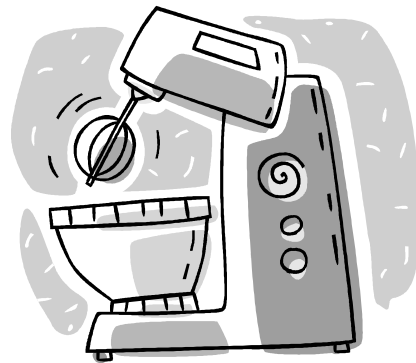
Fill in with the Past Simple or the Past Continuous.

Last night I 1) _____ (*be*) alone at home. I 2) _____ (*lie*) on my bed and I 3) _____ (*watch*) TV when I 4) _____ (*hear*) a strange noise. The noise 5) _____ (*come*) from the kitchen. I 6) _____ (*go*) downstairs, 7) _____ (*pick up*) a heavy vase from the table and 8) _____ (*head*) for the kitchen. I 9) _____ (*open*) the door very slowly. Then I 10) _____ (*see*) someone. He 11) _____ (*search*) in the fridge. I 12) _____ (*be*) so frightened that I 13) _____ (*drop*) the vase I 14) _____ (*carry*) and it 15) _____ (*crash*) onto the floor. The man 16) _____ (*turn*) towards the door and I 17) _____ (*see*) his face. It was my husband!

50

Translate the text into English.

Наша кухня середнього розміру. Можна сказати, що вона добре оснащена. Центральне місце в кімнаті займає масивний дерев'яний столовий стіл із набором стільців, що підходять до нього. Праворуч біля вікна стоїть електрична плита, а над нею – витяжка. Поряд із плитою стоїть сушка для посуду. Біля стіни навпроти розташований холодильник. В гарних шафах для посуду знаходяться каструлі, сковорідки, фаянсовий посуд, кавовий сервіз, керамічні каструлі, ножі, судки, друшляк, сито, перечниця, вазочка для цукру, сільниця, миски, кухлі, черпак, тертка та різноманітна побутова техніка: міксер, кухонний комбайн, соковижималка, м'ясорубка, кавовий млинок, тостер, електрочайник. Коли в нас вечірка, кухня перетворюється на найгамірнішу кімнату. Це головне місце для зустрічей сім'ї та друзів.



51

Translate into English.

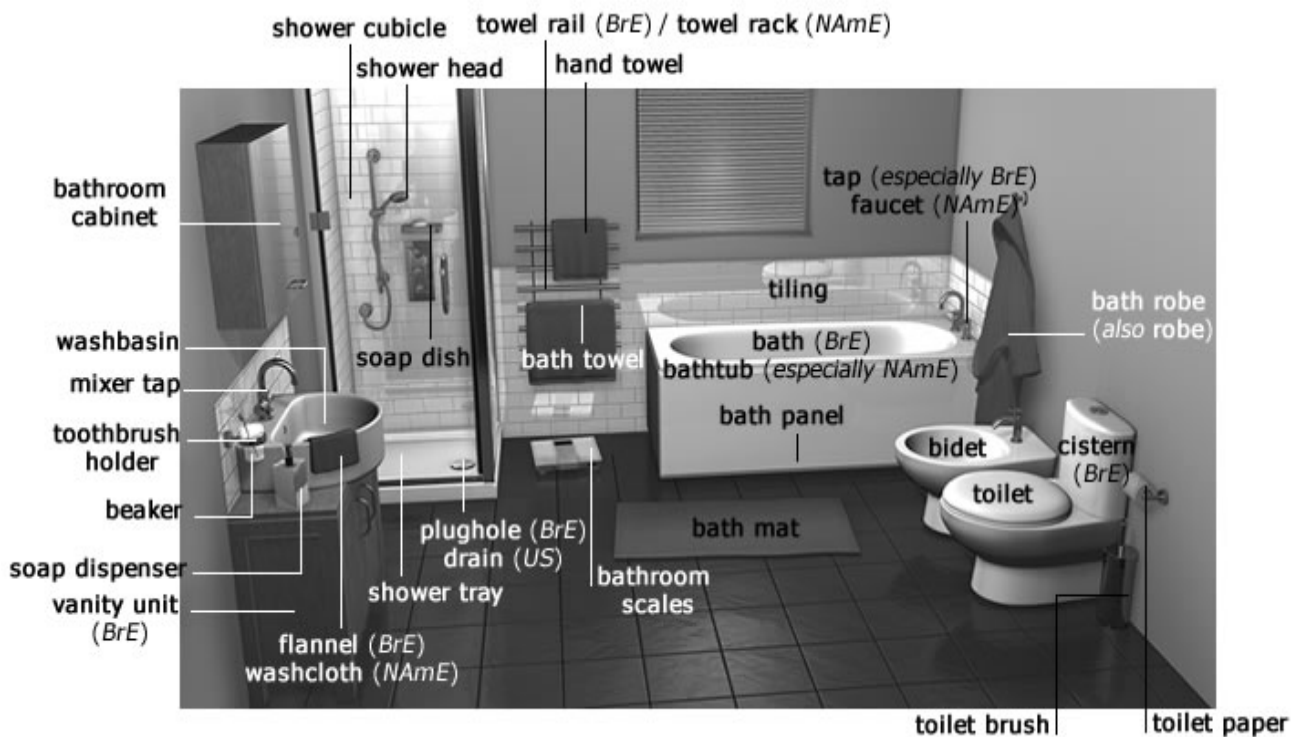


1. Якщо тобі подобається ця каструля, купи її. 2. Якщо вона повернеться після першого червня, я її не побачу. 3. Якщо ви не приїдете раніше, ми не зможемо зустріти Браунів. 4. Містер Сміт не допоможе дружині, поки вона не попросить його про це. 5. Він не купить подарунок дружині, якщо вона сама йому не нагадає про її день народження. 6. Я не закінчу роботу, якщо ви мені не допоможете. 7. Якщо будеш жорстоким і примхливим,

то в тебе не буде друзів. 8. Якщо вам трапляться незнайомі слова, подивіться їх у словнику. 9. Якщо вивчиш урок, отримаєш гарну оцінку. 10. Якщо побачиш цю книгу, купи її. 11. Якщо не знаєш іноземних мов, вивчи хоч одну. 12. Якщо вранці задзвонить будильник, я прокинуся. 13. Якщо в мене буде гарний настрій, я приготую собі щось смачненьке. 14. Якщо ти зробиш мені цю послугу, я буду тобі дуже вдячна. 15. Якщо Джон знову спізниться, ми більше не будемо чекати на нього. 16. Якщо він мені не зателефонує на цьому тижні, я сам поїду до нього. 17. Твій батько буде радий, якщо ти станеш працюватимши та стараннішим.

52 Write a letter to your friend and describe what you want to buy to your kitchen, why you need it, where you are going to put it.

BATHROOM AND TOILET



Vocabulary

a bathtub / a Jacuzzi	ванна / джакузі, гідромасажна ванна
to have a bath / to have a shower	приймати ванну / приймати душ
a washbasin	раковина для вмивання
a faucet; a water tap	водопровідний кран
a mixer tap / a diverter	кран-змішувач / перемикач
a shower cubicle; a shower cabin	душова кабіна
shower curtains	занавіски в душі
a drain plug	пробка у ванні
a toothbrush / dental floss	зубна щітка / зубна нитка
a tube of toothpaste / a beaker	тюбик зубної пасти / склянка для щіток

make-up remover	засіб для зняття косметики
cotton pads	ватні косметичні диски
cotton buds / Q-tips	ватні палички
a box of tissues	пачка паперових серветок
shampoo / balm; balsam	шампунь / бальзам
to wash / to shave	мити(ся) / голити(ся)
shaving cream / a razor	крем для гоління / станок для ~
shaving gel / shaving foam	гель для гоління / піна для гоління
soap / liquid soap / a bar of soap	мило / рідке мило / брусок мила
a soap dish; a soapbox; a soap tray	мильничка
a soap dispenser	дозатор для мила
shower gel / shower foam	гель для душу / піна для душу
a sponge / a washcloth; a flannel	губка, мочалка / ганчірка
washing powder; detergent	пральний порошок
to clean / to rub	мити, чистити / начищати
a plunger	вантуз
a bathroom cabinet; a vanity unit	шафка в ванній кімнаті
a medicine cabinet; a first aid kit	аптечка
a top shelf / a bottom shelf	верхня полиця / нижня полиця
a nail file / nailpolish; nail varnish	пилочка для нігтів / лак для нігтів
a hair dryer	фен
bathroom scales	напольні ваги
a terry bathrobe	махровий халат
a terry towel / a hand towel	махровий рушник / рушник для рук
a towel rack; a towel rail	вішалка для рушників
a hamper	корзина для брудної білизни
a rubber bath mat	гумовий килимок для ванної кімнати
sanitary engineering	сантехніка

TOILET

a toilet; a lavatory; a WC; a loo	туалет
a toilet pan	унітаз
a toilet seat / a toilet cover	сидіння на унітазі / кришка на ~
a cistern / a flush	бак з водою / ручка для спускання води
a bidet	біде
toilet paper / a toilet roll holder	туалетний папір / держак для паперу
a wastepaper basket	корзина для паперу
a ventilator	вентилятор
air freshener	освіжувач повітря

53

Read this text and translate it.

Bathroom



My bathroom becomes the most important and useful in the morning when everybody wakes up and is in a hurry to be the first there. Fortunately we have two bathrooms: on the ground floor and on the first floor. So when the alarm-clock rings, I quietly put on my **terry bathrobe** and slippers and go into the bathroom, where I turn on the hot and cold **water taps**. While the water runs into the **bathtub**, I wash my face and neck, clean my teeth and comb my hair. Then I turn off the **taps** and have a bath. I sometimes **take a shower** in the modern **shower cubicle**. When I've dried myself with a soft **towel**, I get dressed.

My bathroom is very pleasant and I feel very comfortable and relaxed in it. I like everything here: a snow-white **tub** and a huge oval **mirror**, a **bath mat** and **vanity units**, **terry towels** and **bathrobes** and nice shelves above the **washbasin**. The top shelf is full of different stuff: bottles of **shampoo**, **shower gel**, **shaving foam**, **balm** and **make-up remover**. The bottom one has **nail files** and a **beaker** with our **toothbrushes**, a **tube of herbal toothpaste**, a **razor** and a **soap dispenser** on it. By the way, I prefer **liquid soap** to **bars of soap** as it is more fragrant.

In the right corner there is a **toilet pan** with a **bidet**. Behind you can find a **cabinet for washcloths**, **detergents**, extra **toilet paper blocks** and new **sponges**.

54

Complete these good ***bathroom rules***. There may be more than one answer.

1. Hang up the _____ when you've finished with your bath.
2. Put the soap back in the _____ when you've done washing.
3. Put all your dirty clothes in the _____.
4. Clean out the _____ after you take a bath.
5. Don't splatter toothpaste all over the _____.



55

Circle the word that doesn't belong and tell why.

- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. hamper | bathtub | tile | wastepaper basket |
| 2. shampoo | drain plug | soap | toothpaste |
| 3. sponge | washcloth | mirror | towel |
| 4. nailbrush | toilet brush | toothbrush | hairbrush |
| 5. faucet | bathtub | bathroom scales | shower curtain |

56

Write the words that fit the following definitions.



1. something to wash your body with _____
2. something to dry it with _____
3. something to put a bar of soap in _____
4. something to clean your teeth with _____
5. something to wash your clothes with _____

57

Read the following situations. Tell what the person did next. Finish the story in two or three sentences. Use all of the given words.

1. Sam was taking a shower. Suddenly, the phone rang.

shower curtain, bathtub, terry towel

e.g. *He pulled back the shower curtain and climbed out of the bathtub. Then he grabbed a bath towel and ran to answer the phone.*

2. Lisa was taking a shower. Suddenly, the hot water stopped!

cold water tap, hot water tap, bathtub, bath towel, shower gel

3. Betty answered the phone at 7 p.m. It was Frank. He asked if she would like to go to a movie with him at 8 p.m. Betty said “yes”, but after that she recollected that her hair was dirty.

washbasin, hand towel, shampoo, hair dryer

4. Joe’s mother called him and told that she was on her way over to see his new apartment. She said she’d be there in an hour. Joe’s apartment is a mess, especially the bathroom!

hamper, bathtub, washbasin, mirror, toilet, toilet brush, wastepaper basket

58

Give the English equivalents.



Зубна паста, рідке мило, бачок, зубна щітка, ручка для спускання води, душ, ванна, занавіска в душі, вішалка для рушників, махровий рушник, брусок мила, унітаз, килимок для ванної кімнати, аптечка, губка, пральний порошок, змішувач води, бритва, душова кабіна, склянка для зубних щіток.

59

Translate into English.

Що може бути приємнішим за теплу ароматну ванну, а потім бадьорячий душ?! Після цього загорнутись у м’який махровий халат, взути кімнатні капці та попрямувати на кухню, щоб насолодитись філіжанкою кави або чаю зі смачним тістечком.



Наша ванна кімната дуже проста та звичайна, але зручна. Ліворуч біля стіни стоїть світло-зелена ванна. Праворуч від ванни – умивальник. На ньому мильниця з духмяним милом, над ним на стіні висить дзеркало та поличка для тюбиків зубної пасти, бритви для гоління, зубних щіток й аптечки. Ванна також укомплектована душовою кабіною, вмонтованою так, щоб не було видно непривабливих труб. Далі праворуч – вішалка для рушників із махровими рушниками та халатом. У лівому кутку – унітаз із бачком і ручкою для спускання води у вигляді кнопки. Поряд із ним стоїть держак для паперу та біде. В іншому кутку – сучасна пральна машина та корзина для брудної білизни. Зліва від неї у стіні є невеличка шафа для прального порошку та інших миючих засобів. Біля ванни лежить червоний гумовий килимок для ванної кімнати, а біля унітазу – махровий килимок.



60 a) Listen to the recorded letter and answer the questions.

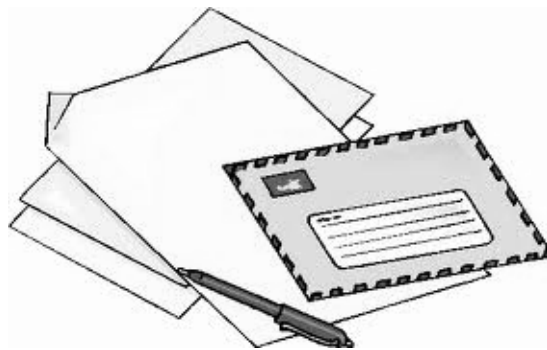
1. Who is the letter to?
2. Who is it from?
3. What is it about?

b) Listen again and write the words for the categories in the table.

<i>rooms</i>	<i>furniture</i>

c) Listen again and say whether the sentences are true or false.

1. There is a beautiful park near the house.
2. Malcolm's house is next to the shop.
3. There is a table in the living room.
4. The washing machine is in the kitchen.
5. There is a microwave in the kitchen.
6. There are three bedrooms in the house.
7. There is a computer in the bedroom.
8. The stereo and CDs are in the study.



d) Listen and write down the questions you hear. Answer them as if you were Malcolm. Give true answers with details about your home.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

61 Think about your home. You are going to tell your partner about it. Read the statements and questions and think about your answers.

- You are walking to your home. Are you in the city or in the country?
- You are in front of your home. Is it a house or a flat? Is it old or modern?
- What colour is the front door? Is there a number on it? What is the number?

- You open the door and go inside. What can you see?
- You go into the kitchen. Is it light or dark? What is there in the kitchen?
- You go into the living room. Is it big or small? What furniture is there?
- Now you go into your bedroom. Is it tidy? What furniture is there?
- You open the window and look out. What can you see?

👂 Think about what to say and how to say it. Use the questions given above to help you. Tell your partner about your home.

62 a) 👂 Shelly and Claudia are students. They want to rent a flat. Listen. Complete the table and then describe the flat they choose.

<i>room</i>	<i>details</i>	<i>said to her father</i>
<i>Bedroom</i>		
<i>Living room</i>		
<i>Kitchen</i>		
<i>How much?</i>		

b) 👂 Listen to the conversation of Sally and her father. Use the table above. Answer the questions about the dialogue.

1. What information is not true?
2. Does Shelly like her flat?
3. Where is Claudia from?
4. Does Shelly want to see her parents? Why (not)?

63 a) 👂 Read the advert and look at the photo. Would you like to live in this house? Why (not)?

TO RENT

***Beautiful
country house.
Very quiet.***



***Five bedrooms.
Large garden.
Low price.***

b) 👂 Larry and Louise are from the USA. They want to rent the house. Cover the dialogue and listen. Which three rooms in the house do they see?

c) 👂 Listen again and complete the dialogue.

Estate agent: Well, this is the _____. There are _____ rooms on this floor. There's a _____, a _____, a living room, a _____, a library...

Larry: Wow! There's a _____, Louise!

Louise: What's that room?

Estate agent: That's a _____, madam.
Larry: How many bathrooms are there?
Estate agent: There's one _____ and three _____.
Louise: Are there any _____?
Estate agent: No, there aren't, madam. This is an _____ house.
Estate agent: This is the _____.
Louise: Are those _____ original?
Estate agent: Yes, I think so, madam.
Larry: Is there a _____?
Estate agent: No, there isn't, sir. But there's a _____.

Estate agent: And the _____.
Louise: There isn't a _____.
Estate agent: Yes, there is. It's over there.
Louise: You call that a _____! Are there any _____? I need a glass of water.
Estate agent: Yes, madam. There are some glasses in that _____. Now let's go upstairs.

d) ☞ Larry and Louise and the estate agent go upstairs. Listen. What problem is there with one of the bedrooms? Do they decide to rent the house?

64 a) ☞ Listen to four people describing their dream house. Match the people with what they say.

Which speaker ...

- would not like to have other people living nearby?
- would like to live somewhere that was partly old and partly modern?
- would not spend much time inside their dream house?
- doesn't think they will ever get their dream house.

b) ☞ Think and say what your dream house would be like, where it would be and what special features it would have.

65 Fill in appropriate prepositions, where necessary.

1. Anna's house is _____ Cambridge. 2. The house is located _____ Fleet Street. 3. Jack lives _____ a big flat. 4. It is _____ 30 minutes _____ the airport. 5. The house is not close _____ the shops. 6. The cottage is _____ the mountains. 7. Are there any pictures _____ the walls? 8. Is the villa _____ the city centre or _____ the suburb? 9. How many rooms are there _____ your house? 10. My home is _____ New York. 11. The garden is _____ front _____ the house. 12. There are no plants _____ the garden. 13. There is a grey rug _____ the floor.

SECTION III: HOUSEKEEPING

Vocabulary

a broom; a sweeper / a dustpan	віник / совок для сміття
a vacuum cleaner; a Hoover	пилосос
a dust cloth	ганчірка
a mop	швабра
an iron / an ironing board	праска / дошка для прасування
a stepladder	драбина
a washing machine	пральна машина
a hamper	корзина для брудної білизни
a dishwasher	посудомийна машина
a spring clean(ing)	генеральне прибирання
to wash	мити, прати
to do the dishes; to wash up the dishes	мити посуд
to clean the floor	мити підлогу
to mop (up) the floor	мити підлогу шваброю
to tidy; to make things tidy	прибирати
to clean the mess in one's room	прибирати безлад в кімнаті
to do one's room / to do one's house	прибирати в кімнаті / ~ будинку
to put the things where they belong	класти речі на свої місця
to make the bed	застеляти ліжко
to keep in order	тримати в порядку
to keep the room clean	тримати кімнату в чистоті
to dust	втирати пил
to polish the furniture	полірувати меблі
to sweep	мести, підмітати
to vacuum-clean the carpets; to Hoover the carpets	пилососити килими
to iron	прасувати
to dry-clean	проводити хімічну чистку
to air the room	провітрювати кімнату
to water the flowers	полювати квіти
to empty the garbage bin	спорожняти відро для сміття
a bin-liner; a refuse bag	пакет для сміття
it takes me ... hours to do the room	мені потрібно ... годин, щоб прибрати в кімнаті
everything is spick and span	все без єдиної плями, дуже чисто
to shine like a new pin	сяяти як нова копійка
to be immaculately clean	бути бездоганно чистим
to be keen on neatness	бути помішаним на чистоті

1

Read and translate the text into Ukrainian. Tell your groupmates how you keep your house/flat clean.



Would you like to know how I keep my house clean? Well, then listen.

It is very important to do it regularly. It is very easy if you have many electric appliances such as a washing machine, a vacuum cleaner, an iron, a dishwasher etc.

I sometimes have spring cleanings. These happen every season or before an important event. I don't like this time

because I hate doing the house. So I do everything quickly to speed up the process. First of all I put the things where they belong, then I put dirty clothes into the hamper. I also take away the carpets and all the mats to beat the dust out of them. Then I take off the curtains and the net curtains to wash them. After that I dust and polish the furniture, air the rooms, sweep the floors, vacuum clean the carpets, upholstered sofas and armchairs. Of course, I mop the floor and finally water the flowers. Besides, I change the bedlinen.

My kitchen also needs attention. I wash up the dishes and make sure everything is spick and span.

The process of spring cleaning takes me about three hours, but when it is over I adore watching clean rooms and enjoying fresh air. Life gets wonderful!

2

Write words that fit the following definition.

1. something to clean and polish table tops with _____
2. something to wash up the dishes with _____
3. something to dry the dishes with _____
4. something to clean the floor with _____
5. something to iron on _____
6. something to clean the carpets with _____
7. something to put the garbage into _____
8. something to brush the clothes with _____
9. something to sweep the floor with _____

3

What can you do to these items?

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. floor | <u>Sweep it</u> |
| 2. bed | _____ |
| 3. wet dishes | _____ |
| 4. dirty dishes | _____ |
| 5. mirror | _____ |



- | | |
|--------------|-------|
| 6. furniture | _____ |
| 7. bathtub | _____ |
| 8. carpets | _____ |
| 9. flowers | _____ |
| 10. laundry | _____ |

4

a) Describe the pictures. Which chores are included in your duties? Who else in your family has chores? What are their chores?



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



10.



11.



12.



13.



14.



15.

b) 🎧 Listen to the radio show and tick the pictures which are mentioned. Write down the phrases you hear.

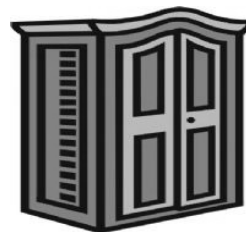
c) 🎧 Who does it? Listen again and tick the correct column.

<i>name/chore</i>	Ralph	Ralph's mom	Tom	Tom's wife
▪does the shopping once a week				
▪is always on the phone				
▪uses the washing machine				
▪always does all the housework				

5 🎧 Read the text and be ready to describe the way you do housework yourself. Do you have special secrets to keep your house/flat spick and span?

1001 HOUSEHOLD HINTS

- DARK ROOMS** with small windows should be wall-papered in cream or yellow shades to look brighter. The pattern for curtains should also include yellow, orange or touches of bright red.
- SUNNY ROOMS** should use duller shades of upholstery and drapery if a cool effect is wanted. Greens and blues mixed with white are very cooling, but yellows, reds and oranges are not. Mauves and certain shades of pink and blue can look rather dark and depressing under artificial light.
- MOVING HEAVY FURNITURE** without scratching the floor can be done by slipping old socks over furniture legs.
- PROTECT WINDOW SILLS** from dust by keeping them waxed with furniture polish. The polish will last longer and the sill will be easier to wipe clean.
- WHEN BUYING A CARPET**, buy the best that you can afford. It's better to buy a smaller carpet of good quality than a bigger one of poor quality.
- A PLAIN CARPET** shows foot marks and dirt more than a patterned or two-toned carpet. If you have small children, it is better to avoid plain, light-coloured carpets.
- USE A FEW DROPS OF VINEGAR** in the rinsing water for dishes occasionally. It gives the dishes a shine and keeps the hands soft.



- YELLOW MARKS** on washbasins and tubs, caused by dripping taps, can be cleaned by rubbing with a cut lemon or with vinegar.
- CLEAN BATHROOM MIRRORS** with an old nylon sock. Very handy for polishing off splash marks and making the mirror shine.

10. THE PURPOSE OF DISHWASHING is not merely to clean, but also to disinfect. Pots and pans, plates, glasses and cutlery should always be washed in hot, soapy water so all bacteria are killed.

11. **CHINA IS BEST CLEANED** with hot soapy water. Tea and coffee stains can be removed by rubbing with a mixture of salt and lime juice. For fine china use a cloth clipped in soda and rinse off immediately.
12. **TO KEEP THE REFRIGERATOR** from various food smells, keep a fresh lemon or lime inside. It absorbs all the odour.
13. **SILVER** will keep brighter if a little milk is added to the water in which it is washed.
14. **TO ADD SPARKLE** to glassware, add a little laundry blue to the washing water; then rinse with hot water.

- Which odd jobs around the house do you enjoy and which do you hate? Give your reasons.

6

a) 🎧 Listen to the dialogue and answer these questions.

1. What is Mark going to do for Agneta?
2. When are they going to meet?
3. What is Agneta going to help Mark with?

b) Read the dialogue below and underline the parts of the dialogue that helped you answer the questions in a).

Agneta: I'm really pleased you can help me, Mark.

Mark: That's OK. I know there's too much housework for one person to do. What would you like me to do?

Agneta: Could you clean the windows?

Mark: OK. But I'm quite busy right now. Can we do it in the evening, perhaps?

Agneta: I'm going to the cinema later. Are you free after school?

Mark: Yes, I'll meet you at your house after school.

Agneta: Fantastic! And then I must return the favour. How can I help you?

Mark: Could you help me with my English homework? It's really difficult this week.

Agneta: Sure.

7

🎧 Your friend's parents are away for a few days. You have agreed to help your friend with some housework.



- Find out what housework your friend needs help with.
- Find out the time you're both free.
- Agree what your friend will do for you in return.

8**Translate into English.**

Витирати пил, підмітати підлогу, прати занавіски, робити генеральне прибирання, чистити килими пилососом, провітрювати кімнати, прибирати безлад у кімнаті, класти речі на свої місця, прати, мити посуд, домашня робота, одягати наволочки на подушки, поливати квіти, застеляти ліжко.

9**Translate into English.**

1. Мені подобається мити посуд, витирати пил, прасувати, підмітати підлогу, підтримувати порядок у вітальні, спальні, ванні та кухні. 2. Щоб прийняти душ, вам знадобиться губка, шампунь, кусок мила та гаряча вода. 3. Добра домогосподарка, як правило, прокидається рано вранці. 4. Після вечірки з нагоди новосілля я прибираю в квартирі: підмітаю та мию підлогу та витираю пил з меблів, і для цього мені потрібен віник, швабра і ганчірка. 5. Вранці, коли я прокидаюсь, я йду в ванну, миюся, вмиваюсь, чищу зуби, сушу волосся феном.

10**Translate into English.**

Як мені вдається підтримувати чистоту в будинку? Це дуже легко, коли робиш це регулярно та маєш багато електричних приладів, таких як пральна машина, пилосос, посудомийна машина, праска та інші. Я витрачаю близько двох годин, щоб прибрати у квартирі. Спочатку я завжди поливаю квіти.

Потім кладу речі на свої місця, а забруднені речі я кладу в корзину для брудної білизни. Я завжди витираю пил та полірую меблі. Я підмітаю підлогу, а мій брат чистить пилососом килими та миє підлогу. Я завжди намагаюся прибирати у кімнаті. Кожного ранку я застеляю своє ліжко. Перед тим, як лягати спати, я завжди провітрюю кімнату. Моя сестра також завжди тримає свою кімнату в чистоті, а ще вона завжди чистить своє взуття та одяг. Мій брат прибирає безлад у своїй кімнаті сам. Проте, він не любить одягати наволочки на подушки. Наша мама дуже любить чистоту. Кожні вихідні вона займається пранням, а брат прасує. Я мию посуд та витираю його рушником для посуду, а наш тато спорожняє відро для сміття та чистить пастою раковину та ванну.

11

Translate into English.

Як ми робимо генеральне прибирання



Така подія трапляється кожних чотири місяці, найчастіше, перед важливими святами. Особисто я не люблю цей час, коли квартира виглядає так, ніби там щойно підірвалася бомба.

Отож, щоб пришвидшити процес прибирання, потрібно дотримуватися певних рекомендацій. Спочатку ми виносимо невеликі меблі з кімнати, згортаємо килими та покривала. Потім знімаємо тюль, гардини та перемаємо їх. Після цього витираємо пил, провітрюємо кімнати, пилюємо килими, дивани та крісла. Потім миємо підлогу.

Шваброю користуємось лише для того, щоб дістатись найнедоступніших куточків.

Коли це генеральне прибирання, доцільно також заглянути в кухонні шухлядки. Впевнена, що не завадить помити ложки, виделки, тарілки, чашки, склянки, каструлі. Щоб надати їм свіжого та блискучого вигляду, варто скористатися якимось миючим засобом. Потім меблі заносяться назад до кімнат. Коли прибирання позаду, я люблю пройтись чистими кімнатами, насолоджуючись свіжістю повітря. Це справді так чудово жити в чистоті та затишку!

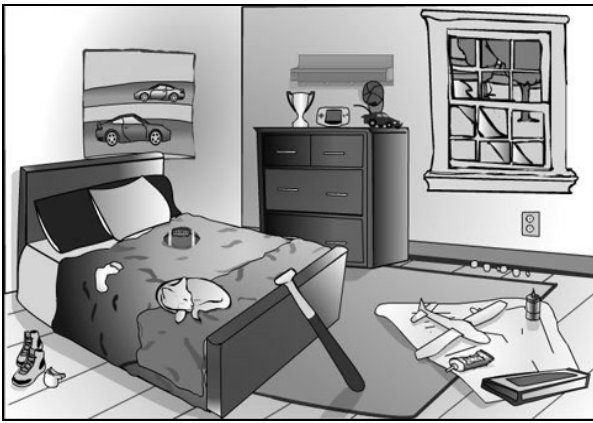
12

Add tags to the sentences below to make *disjunctive questions*.

1. My husband wants to buy a wooden table, _____? 2. He will come tomorrow, _____? 3. Linda was not married, _____? 4. The child waters the flowers every other day, _____? 5. The Browns went to London, _____? 6. Diana is washing the curtains now, _____? 7. That plant is very beautiful, _____? 8. It will rain soon, _____? 9. The guests came to our house-warming party on time, _____? 10. That lady won't call you, _____? 11. She hates brown colour, _____? 12. Claire gave this toy to me, _____? 13. I won't argue with him, _____? 14. Kids are never tired, _____? 15. The baby was playing with the cat, _____? 16. The kitchen is very cosy, _____? 17. The floor will be clean, _____? 18. It's nice to live here, _____? 19. He's at home, _____?

13

Translate into English. Pay attention to the usage of tenses.



1. Наступного місяця наша сім'я збирається переїхати в нову простору двокімнатну квартиру з паркетною підлогою, вбудованими меблями та величезними вікнами, що виходять у затишний двір. **2.** Ці чорні двері ведуть до кабінету мого батька. На них є вічко та незвичайна золота ручка. Раніше в кабінеті не було дверей. **3.** На підлозі буде чудовий килимок, якщо ти захочеш. **4.** Новий дев'ятиповерховий багатоквартирний будинок був із великим ліфтом, сміттєпроводом й усіма сучасними вигодами. **5.** Що ви робили на кухні, коли ми зайшли? **6.** Я дуже обожнюю каміни не тільки тому, що вони мене зігрівають, а й тому, що над ними є камінна поличка, на яку я можу поставити камінний годинник та інші дрібнички. Але в моїй квартирі каміну не буде, на жаль. **7.** Ми відсвяткуємо новосілля в цьому місяці, якщо закінчимо вчасно ремонт. **8.** У вітальні в нас був шкіряний м'який куточок і безліч декоративних подушок. Але ми його продали в минулому році. **9.** Якщо в мене буде можливість меблювати свою кімнату, то вона буде в теплих кольорах. **10.** Раніше це був робочий кабінет, але ми замінили письмовий стіл на дитяче ліжко, а полицю з принтером та магнітофоном на манеж, і тепер це дитяча. **11.** Давай поснідаємо. Я зроблю каву в кавоварці, сік у соковижималці, тости у тостері, а також я приготую суп. **12.** У моєї сестри була дача. Вона була дуже зручна, бо знаходилась недалеко від центру села. **13.** Якщо ми купимо квартиру, будемо святкувати новосілля. **14.** Марія фарбувала двері, коли їй зателефонувала її племінниця. **15.** Кожного дня Аня підмітає підлогу, застеляє ліжко, витирає пил з меблів, готує їжу та прасує білизну. **16.** Мій старший брат закінчив університет і зараз працює економістом. Давид одружений, він люблячий і добрий батько. **17.** Моя мама запросила гостей та попросила мене застелити стіл скатертиною, покласти виделки, ложки, тарілки та інший посуд. **18.** Я зайду, якщо захочеш. **19.** Збирався дощ і він вирішив взяти парасольку. **20.** Вона довго читала, проте так і не зрозуміла, про що ця книга. **21.** Коли вона запитала його про батьків, він зблід і нічого не відповів. **22.** Вона отримала так багато грошей, що не знала, що з ними робити. **23.** Коли я вчилася в університеті, іноді я працювала в бібліотеці з ранку до вечора. **24.** Вони вважали його дуже порядною людиною. **25.** На ньому був якийсь кумедний капелюх. **26.** Швидко темніло й починало дощити. **27.** Вона ставала все гарнішою. **28.** Тоді він працював на фірмі батька. **29.** Дощ почався, коли ми вже підходили до будинку, в якому живе Ден.

SECTION IV: SELF-STUDY AND ADVANCED EXERCISES

Home, Sweet Home

1

Read the text. What does the word *'home'* mean for you?

Although people usually know what the word means, it often has no exact translation. It's not surprising really, because the idea of home varies from country to country and from person to person. A home is more than a roof and four walls. It's the cooking, eating, talking, playing and family living that go on inside which are important as well. And at home you usually feel safe and relaxed.



The original meaning of the word **'home'**, in English and other Indo-European languages too, was a safe dwelling place, a village, even a world. In Old English it came to mean a fixed abode where people habitually lived and sometimes was extended to include members of a family. Webster's says that **'house'** comes from the same root as *'sky'* and was used to mean a *'covering and concealing'*. Our modern

usage of these two words can be traced back to these original meanings. *'Home'* has connotations of a feeling of belonging, a centre of affection, a place where you can find refuge and rest, it is something intimate and private. Generally, *'home'* only refers to one's own place; we'd say *'I went round to Adrian's house'* not his *'home'*. House, in the meaning of a covering or storage place, is clear in such things as a greenhouse, hen-house, the House of Commons, a clearinghouse, etc. It is a physical structure, not a place where one should supposedly receive kind treatment and feel relaxed (*'Make yourself at home'*).

2

How many new words can you make by combining a word on the left with a word on the right? Use your dictionaries to help with the meaning and the spelling.

HOME	work	made	trained	wife	sick	plant	proud	town
	coming	less	grown	bound	keeping	warming		
HOUSE	bred	maker	stead	straight	video	land	team	

3

Listen to the conversations. After each conversation, discuss these two questions.

Who is talking to who?

What exactly are they talking about?

Here are some lines from the conversations. Fill the gaps with a compound word. (Some of the compounds were used in ex 2.)

1. She is so cute. Is she _____ yet?
2. Do you think you could possibly water my _____ for me?
3. Don't worry, I know how _____ you are. I'll make sure everything stays clean and tidy.
4. Let's give her a spectacular _____ party when she gets back.
5. Not me. I'm the original happy _____, remember? Four kids, _____ cakes, _____ vegetables!
6. We're having a _____ party on the 12th. Can you come?
7. "Yeah. Mind you, there's much more _____ to do!" "That's a drag!"
8. I never thought you'd be so _____.

4 Complete each sentence with the words *home*, *house* or a word formed from one of these words.

1. The old couple decided to live in an old people's _____.
2. Jane can't stand washing and ironing and other _____.
3. Graham bought a terraced _____ in a quiet city street.
4. Many _____ people sleep in the streets in London.
5. Jack was unable to look after his children so he employed a _____.
6. I come from Newcastle. It's my _____ town, you could say.
7. Paul used to live on the river on a _____ boat.
8. When I went to boarding school, I felt very _____ sick at first.
9. Our first home was on the _____ estate on Oakwood Hill.
10. Pour yourself a drink and make yourself at _____.

5 Very often people can't say what a home is, because they don't feel it. For some people it's the best place in the world, but others want to get out of that place as soon as possible. Home is not just a house you live in, it's a good atmosphere in the family that makes a house home. **Read the following opinions and underline the main ideas.**

KATE: What is home for me? I can say that my home is the best place in the world. It's a place where I can always meet love and sincerity of my relatives. Only there I can find kindness of my mother and understanding of my father. To me being at home always means being with my family who cares for me and supports me when I need it. People say "East or West, home is best" and I completely agree with them. Wherever I am, I always feel lonely and miserable, because I can't stay away from home for a long time. I can't even imagine being far from my parents, as it is very difficult for me to do without their help and respect. You know I'm happy only when we are together. Only then I feel desirable, for



I know that they also need my attention and sympathy. I don't understand those people who say that for them their home is just a roof over their heads. Can it be true? I guess not, because I think that a real home is a place where you feel cosy and safe, otherwise it is not home.

NATALY: What is home? I know that when people say "home" they mean their family first of all. I think that they are right. I also believe that home is the place where I can find care and attention of my parents. I need them very much, especially when I am in trouble, because I think that they are always the first people to help me. I like my home because I was born and brought up there and my dearest people live in that place. But now when I am grown-up enough to live on my own I think that I need more independence and freedom. I'm grown-up enough to make my own decisions and to build a home of my own. I think of a place where I can have a rest and stay alone, for only the feeling of independence can make me happy and comfortable at home. I am thankful to my parents for their understanding and attention, but my idea of home is a little bit different from my relatives. And this is the only reason I'd like to live on my own.



MARK: Home? To my mind home is just a house you live in. It's simply a roof over my head and a place where I sleep and eat. Some people say that their homes are the only places they feel comfortable in. I can't agree with them. My home is like a cage for me, where I'm not allowed to do what I really want. I can't say that my parents are cruel and rude to me, but they live their own lives and are not very much interested in mine. My parents never pay attention to me and they don't want to understand my soul. What's more I never feel desirable at home, because my parents ignore me very much. I try to spend at home as little time as possible. I like to be with my friends, because I know that they need me. My home is the last place I want to be at, because I feel lonely there. It's lonely there. It's not a home, it's just a place where I live.



6 Look through the opinions to say whether the following ideas are true or false. If the idea is wrong, correct it.

1. Kate likes her home very much. _____
2. Nataly wants to live at home as long as possible. _____
3. Mark doesn't like his home. _____
4. Kate's parents understand her perfectly. _____
5. Nataly can always find care and attention in her home. _____
6. Mark's home is a cage for him. _____

7. Kate feels lonely and miserable at home. _____
8. Mark likes to spend a lot of time at home. _____
9. Kate suffers a lot when she is far from home. _____
10. Nataly's idea about her home is similar to her parents' idea. _____
11. Mark's parents are rude and cruel. _____

7 Look into the opinions on the problems that bother people very much. Complete the following table and explain why you think so.

		<i>Kate</i>	<i>Nataly</i>	<i>Mark</i>
1.	I can't stay far from home.			
2.	I don't feel desirable at home.			
3.	I want to live alone.			
4.	My parents ignore me.			
5.	I can't live without my parents' help.			
6.	I want to be more independent.			
7.	I need my parents very much.			
8.	My parents don't understand me.			
9.	I am not allowed to do what I want.			
10.	I am very lonely.			

➤ 🗣️ As you see these people really have some problems. What can you advise them to do to solve these problems?

8 🗣️ What is your idea about 'home'? Can you explain what the word 'home' means to you? Find whether your groupmates share the idea about home with you or not? Why?

9 🎧 Listen to two descriptions of places to live. Complete the information in the table.

	<i>First house</i>	<i>Second house</i>
Location		
Type		
Number of rooms		
Facilities		
Transport		
Vicinity		

🎧 Now listen again and make notes about the advantages and disadvantages of each house.

10

Use the information from the previous exercise to rope-play the following situation.

➤ **Student A**

Persuade your partner that the first house is the best. Point out its advantages and compare it with the second house.

➤ **Student B**

Persuade your partner that the second house is the best. Point out its advantages and compare it with the first house.

British Houses

11

Read the text and translate it into Ukrainian.

Unless you live in a **block of flats** or a **bungalow** (one-storey house with or without an attic), British houses normally have two or three stories. On the **ground floor** you're likely to find a living room, a kitchen and a dining room, while on the **first floor** you'll probably find bedrooms and a bathroom.



On the **second** or **top floor** there is an **attic**, or a **loft**. On the **roof** of many houses you can still see a **chimney** – even if the house now benefits from **central heating**.

The floors of a house are connected by **stairs**, with a **landing** (area) on the upper floor which leads to the upstairs rooms.

Most British houses are made of **brick** and **cement**. In a row of **terraced houses** (houses joined together), the interconnecting **walls** are **cavity walls**: they have a space between them to allow air to circulate. On the interiors, the walls are covered in **plaster**, and then either painted or decorated with **wallpaper**. The internal walls of a house fall into two categories: **load-bearing walls** (those that are structural and support the weight of the floors) and **partition walls** (those walls that divide rooms, but can be knocked down.) Floors and roofs are supported by strong beams, which are long, heavy pieces of wood or metal.

Floors can be covered in a variety of materials, such as **parquet** (wooden squares), **laminated flooring** (a type of thin wooden plank), or **tiles** (either ceramic or vinyl). In living rooms and bedrooms, the floors are generally covered with carpets.

Houses are normally connected to local **utilities**, such as water and electricity **mains** and gas supply. In the countryside, not everyone is connected to gas mains, and some houses have **gas tanks** in their gardens. The vast majority of people are connected to the local **sewage system** (for waste water), but some people have their own **septic tanks** in their gardens to treat waste

water. Houses that are connected to utilities have separate **meters** to show how much they consume. Representatives of these utility companies visit houses regularly **to take meter readings** – with which they can then bill their customers.

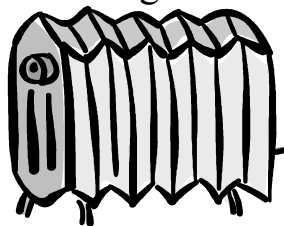
Some electrical jobs (such as **wiring** or **rewiring** = installing the electrical cables) should only be done by professional electricians, although you can still **change a plug**, or change a **socket** (the hole in the wall where you put the plug in to connect to the electricity supply).



Some **plumbing** (water piping) jobs should also be done by professional plumbers. For example, although you can change **taps**, you should get a professional to install a **gas boiler**.

Some building work can be done without supervision. Many people enjoy doing DIY, such as **putting up shelves**, **fitting** cupboards and doors, **assembling** furniture and so on. However, for the big jobs, such as **loft conversions** and building **extensions**, you need to first apply for and obtain **planning** and **building permission** (from the local authorities) then employ a firm of builders.

In Britain, damp winter weather causes many problems to houses. For example, some houses can suffer from **damp** (humidity) or **dry rot**, caused by water seeping into walls and **timber** (wood). For this reason, houses have **gutters** (tubes attached just under the roof that run along the length of the house to catch rain water) and some may need regular **damp proof treatment** (special chemicals to prevent damp from spreading). Window **sills** (the piece of the wall – internal or external – in which the window is set) and window **frames** (the wood that goes around the window) should be made waterproof (so that water



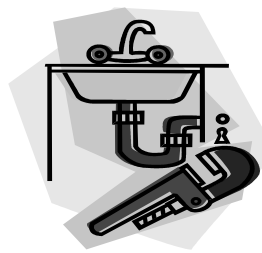
cannot get in), and most people have central heating via **radiators** to keep the air inside warm and dry. Special **thermostats** set on the wall help to regulate the temperature in the room. In addition, most people have **insulation** in the loft to keep warm air in, and cold air out.

12

Translate these words and phrases into English and then use them to describe your house.

Перший поверх, одноповерховий будинок, поверхи будинку з'єднані сходами, площадка сходів веде до кімнат на верхньому поверсі, стіни поштукатурені, стіни пофарбовані, стіни обклеєні шпалерами, несуча стіна, всередині будинку, підлога вкрита паркетом/ламінатом, підлога вкрита килимом, будинок підключений до комунальних послуг, магістраль водопостачання, газова магістраль, газові балони, бути підключеним до каналізації, мати окремі лічильники, знімати показники лічильників, виставляти рахунки споживачам, електропроводка, замінити

штепсельну розетку, замінити пробки, сантехнічні роботи, замінити крани, встановлювати газовий бойлер, будівельні роботи, прилаштувати/вішати полиці, монтувати/збирати меблі, отримувати дозвіл на перепланування та будівельні роботи, бути причиною багатьох проблем у будинку, будинок потерпає від вологи та гнилісної трухлятини, просочуватися в стіни, водонепроникний, регулювати температуру в кімнаті, ізоляція.



Rooms and Furniture

13

Read through this rather strange application form, noting how the couple describes the house. As you read answer the questions below.

When my wife and I **moved into** our present house, it was a little better than **slums**, completely **unfurnished** apart from a few bits and pieces which the former **occupant** had either forgotten or – more likely – decided not to take with her. (These included an **enormous sideboard** that weighed a ton, a **chest of drawers** with its only one remaining **door** hanging off, an ugly **bookcase** with all its **panes of glass** cracked, and a broken 19-th century **piano stool**.)



The floors then were just **bare boards** with one or two **mats** and **strips of lino**. We now have **fitted carpets** in every room except the bathroom (where we have special long-lasting **tiles**) and the kitchen (**polished parquet floor**), plus several sheepskin **rugs** in the reception rooms.

On arrival we found most of the **interior decorated** with **faded, flowery-patterned wallpaper**, peeling at the **picture rail**. We have **painting throughout** in beige (**window and sills** – white) except in the **lounge**, where we have had pink. A few tasteful **reproductions** and a number of old German **prints** (all expensively **framed**) are on the **walls**, along with some carefully selected **posters** in the children's rooms.



Numerous **structural alterations** have been **carried out**, notably the **conversion** of the old **garden shed** into a **second bathroom**, complete with **bath, basin, bidet** and **W.C.** (lambswool-covered **lavatory seat** and **press-button flush**) and the **extension** of the **conservatory** to make a **sun lounge** – with **window seats** all around it – **leading on to the newly-laid patio**. The **roof**, meanwhile, has been completely **renovated**, **slates** giving way to **tiles**, **double glazing** has been fitted on all windows, and the **old fireplaces** have been blocked up, except in the lounge which has retained its **grate** and **mantelpiece** for the old-world image it creates. In terms of **heating**, we have **installed** a **gas cooker**, an **electric cooker**, **gas-fired central heating**, and **double radiators** each with its own **thermostatic control**.

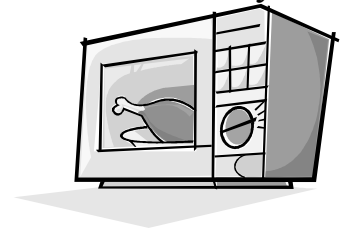
We have also made **dramatic improvements** in the **kitchen**: a new **sink unit** with **mixer tap** and **double drainer**, a **line of smart cupboards** all along



one wall and two **rows of shelves** along the other. Upstairs the old **iron double bed** we inherited has been replaced by **elegant twin beds** with **interior-sprung mattresses** and **quilts (duvets)**, of course. Our children Alexandra and Charles have recently moved out of **bunk beds** and into **single beds in separate rooms**; these have

been specially **equipped** with a **desk**, **blackboard** and **easel**, and **toy chest**. All bedrooms have **built-in wardrobes** now and my wife has her own personal **dressing table** and **dressing stool**.

Our more **expensive purchases**, apart from the above, include: a **leather upholstered lounge suite** comprising a **four-seater sofa** – or should we say **settee?** – and two **armchairs** (we remember with horror the year we had to live with a **studio couch** plus a few **pouffes** and **cushions**), a **solid wood table** and **set of matching dining room chairs**, plus a **microwave oven**, a new **shower unit**, **plumbed in** of course, so that no unsightly **pipes** are visible, **new stereo equipment**, **colour TV**, a **video recorder**, **home computer** and **cocktail cabinet**.



It may interest you to know, finally, that we have made a formal complaint about the ghastly **tallboy** and **divan** that our neighbours have had standing in their **back garden** for nearly six months. Our garden, incidentally, has been recently landscaped and completely transformed: gone is the **vegetable patch**; in its place a neat **lawn** and **flower-beds**. All our new friends say we have done a wonderful job on our **property**.

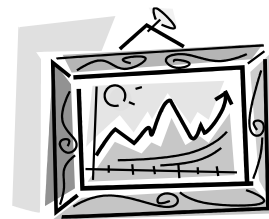
If the couple decided to sell the house next month, which of these features could they say that it had?

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>two bathrooms</i> | 6. <i>three bedrooms</i> |
| 2. <i>polished parquet floor</i> | 7. <i>a spacious garden shed</i> |
| 3. <i>a slate roof</i> | 8. <i>ancient period fireplaces</i> |
| 4. <i>attractive wallpaper throughout</i> | 9. <i>a mature vegetable garden</i> |
| 5. <i>double glazed windows</i> | 10. <i>a modern kitchen</i> |

14 Find the equivalents to the phrases below. Be ready to use them in the sentences of your own.

1. There was no furniture in the room. _____
2. A sideboard was big and weighed a ton. _____
3. A piece of furniture where we put clean linen. _____
4. A kind of carpet that covers all the floor in the room. _____
5. A very smooth floor made of wood. _____
6. Small carpets that cover the floor only in some places. _____

7. People either paint the walls or decorate them with. _____
8. A picture that is not an original one. _____
9. Having frames, which cost much. _____
10. Serious changes made. _____
11. A sitting room. _____
12. Windows with two panes of glass. _____
13. A shelf on the top of a fireplace. _____
14. Two radiators combined. _____
15. Things considerably changed for the better ones. _____
16. A kind of a basin in the kitchen. _____
17. Taps with hot and cold water mixed. _____
18. Separate beds for one person to sleep. _____
19. A large bed for two people. _____
20. A unit consisting of two beds but not a double bed. _____
21. Covered or decorated with leather item of furniture for sitting. _____
22. A place where people take a shower (not a bathroom). _____
23. An item of furniture where one can keep clothes. _____
24. A very soft and comfortable stool which is an item of a lounge suite. _____
25. A place where one keeps bottles of spirits. _____
26. A synonym to a sofa. _____
27. A place where one usually grows vegetables. _____
28. A place where flowers grow. _____
29. All things that we own are our _____.



15

Find the English equivalents in the text from *ex 11*.



Переїхати в новий будинок, лакована паркетна підлога, диван на три місця, декоративна подушка, бар, повністю оновлений, шпалери у квіточки, інтер'єр, виїхати з будинку, кахель, теперішнє помешкання, пофарбувати в білий колір, дорого обрамлені картини, бути оздобленим чимось, стерео обладнання, подати скаргу, м'який шкіряний куточок, килимове покриття, пуфик, трюмо, подвійне скло, стьобана ковдра, екстер'єр, шифер,

попередній мешканець, прикрасити плакатами, зі смаком підібрані гравюри, включати в себе, вбудовані меблі, власність.

16

You will hear a dialogue between a married couple, Linda and Jeremy, who are talking about a house that they have just seen and they are thinking of buying. They don't always agree. Listen to the tape and fill in the chart.

	<i>Linda's opinion</i>	<i>Jeremy's opinion</i>
Location		
Lounge		
Kitchen		
Bedrooms		

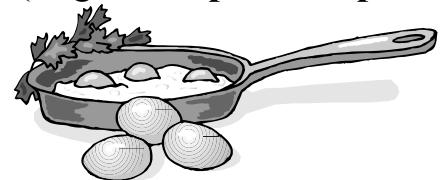
🗨️ **Now answer the following questions.**

- What is Linda's general impression of the house?
- What is Jeremy's?
- Describe the house that they are talking about. Give the *facts*, not their opinion.

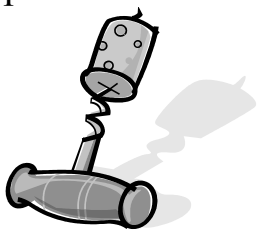
17 Read the text and translate it into Ukrainian. Pay attention to some useful vocabulary for the kitchen. Use it while describing your own kitchens.

Some people have a **fitted kitchen**, where all the kitchen **units** have been bought together, and they are assembled according to a plan. Other people have a kitchen where the units are **free-standing**: not necessarily bought together at one time.

In a kitchen you are likely to find **cupboards** (or **cabinets**), either at **floor level**, or at **eye level**. In the eye level cupboards you will probably find **dry goods** (such as flour, sugar, rice, pasta, spices) and maybe **glasses** and **crockery** plates, bowls etc.). In the floor level cupboards you (might find **pots and pans**: **saucepans** for cooking pasta etc.; **frying pans** for frying food; **baking tins** and **roasting tins** for cooking food in the oven; and **serving dishes** made from glass or china.



You could also find other **kitchen implements** such as a **blender** (= food processor) and **kitchen scales** (for measuring and weighing food). Often the top part of a floor level cupboard has a **drawer**, where various items are kept, such as **cutlery** (knives, forks and spoons); **aluminium foil** (metal paper), **cling film** (thin plastic wrap), **freezer bags**, and other kitchen items such as a **bread knife**, **tin opener**, **corkscrew** (to open bottles of wine), **potato peeler** (to take the skin off potatoes), a **rolling pin** (to roll out pastry) and so on.



On the top of the floor level cupboards you often find a **worktop** or **work surface**, where you can prepare food. These surfaces are sometimes made of marble, or hard wood, and they can be easily cleaned. Some people keep a **toaster** or **microwave** on the work surfaces, along with things they need frequently, such as oil, salt, or various sauces.

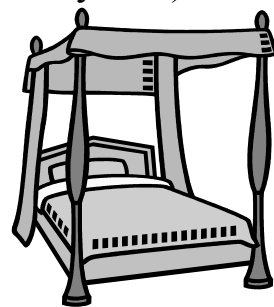
Most kitchens also contain a **cooker** with an **oven** and four **rings**, (although some modern cookers are split level, where the oven is separate from the rings), a **fridge-freezer**, and perhaps a **dishwasher** or even a **washing**

machine. You'll probably find a kitchen **sink**, where you wash the plates and dishes, and larger kitchens also contain a kitchen table with matching chairs, so you can eat in the same room.

18

Read the text and translate it into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words connected with the bedroom. Use them when you describe your own bedrooms.

Bedrooms come in all shapes and sizes. You can find bedrooms which contain just a **single bed**, or those which have a **double bed** (bed which is big enough for two people), or even **twin beds** (two single beds side by side). Some people choose to sleep in a **futon** (a Japanese bed which is low on the ground) and some people who like luxury might have a **four-poster** (a bed which has four posts – one in each corner – and from which you can hang curtains or mosquito nets). When children share a bedroom, they might sleep in **bunk beds**, where there is one bed on top of the other. The upper bunk is reached by a small ladder.



On your bed, you'll have at least one **sheet** (normally in cotton, but in a variety of colours or patterns), and you normally lie on top of this sheet. Some people also have a sheet over them, with **blankets** (made from wool) to keep them warm. Alternatively, you can replace the top sheet and blankets with a **duvet** (a warm, but lightweight **quilt**). You're likely to sleep with your head on a **pillow**, which is often filled with feathers. Pillows are normally put inside a cotton **pillow case**, and the duvet is also put inside a cotton **duvet cover**. If it gets really cold, you can also have a quilt or **eiderdown** over your blankets. Some people also have an **electric blanket** that they use to warm up the bed. In England, many people use a **hot water bottle** (a flat rubber bag that you fill with hot water then seal) to put into the bed to warm it up.



As well as a bed, you're likely to have other furniture in your bedroom, such as a **chest of drawers** (a piece of furniture with several drawers to put clothes in); a **wardrobe**, which is a piece of furniture with doors where you can hang shirts, trousers, or skirts and dresses on **clothes hangers**; and a **bedside table**, which is a small table next to the bed. On the bedside table, you might have a **bedside light** and an **alarm clock**. Some people also have a **dressing table**, which is a small table that you sit in front of, with a **mirror** to see your reflection in when you do your hair or make-up, and a couple of drawers. Other people might have their mirror on their chest of drawers, as well a hair brush and even a clothes brush (a special brush that you use to clean jackets and shirts).

Renovating and Decorating Your House

19

Many people in the UK like renovating or “doing up” their houses to keep up with fashions and trends. Here are some useful English words and phrases to describe this. Match the phrases with their definitions.

1. to hang / put up wallpaper	a) <i>to paint walls</i>
2. to knock down a wall	b) <i>to cover the windows either with curtains or blinds</i>
3. to throw out / replace the old light fittings	c) <i>to build a paved area around part or the whole of the house</i>
4. to have an extension	d) <i>to take off the old plaster (covering the bricks) and replace it with the new one</i>
5. to install central heating / solar panels	h) <i>to be practical and able to do jobs in the house</i>
6. to convert the loft (have a loft conversion)	f) <i>to install a fitted kitchen (where the units are connected, rather than being single pieces) or a new bathroom</i>
7. to re-tile the bathroom	g) <i>to attach new paper to the walls</i>
8. a conservatory	e) <i>to convert the attic into a livable room</i>
9. to build a patio	i) <i>to put new tiles on the floor and walls</i>
10. to re-plaster the ceiling	j) <i>to put in a new heating system</i>
11. to put in a fitted kitchen / a new bathroom	k) <i>to build on to the existing house to provide more rooms</i>
12. to fit / put up blinds or curtains	l) <i>to demolish a wall</i>
13. to give something a lick / a coat of paint	m) <i>a room between the back of the house and the garden</i>
14. to be handy around the house	n) <i>to change the lights</i>

Answer the following questions:

- How often do you renovate your house/flat/room?
- What do you usually change and why?

20

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Ви зможете побачити великий тримісний диван з двома кріслами, низький журнальний столик, червоні занавіски та великий килим у моїй затишній вітальні.
2. Ми замінімо старі двері на нові величезні та поставимо подвійне скло на всі вікна.
3. З холу можна потрапити у простору вітальню, де зліва знаходиться велика шафа, а навпроти – м'який шкіряний куточок із декоративними подушками. Посередині вітальні стоїть журнальний столик.

4. У моїй кухні так багато сучасного приладдя: мікрохвильова піч, газова плита, скороварка, соковижималка, тостер, кухонний комбайн, електрочайник та посудомийна машина.



5. Завтра я розпочинаю ремонт. Я збираюся обклеювати стіни в вітальні та класти плитку у ванній. Крім того, я хочу замінити освітлювальні прилади та встановити новий гарнітур на кухні.

6. Занавісочка й килимок у ванній кімнаті, зазвичай, одного кольору, так само, як і ванна та унітаз.

7. Зазвичай, ми спимо в ліжку, вкритому матрацом та простирадлом, з подушками в наволочках та ковдрою в підковдрі.

8. Я бачила шпалери з дуже дивним малюнком: на них були намальовані ножі, ложки, виделки, тарілки та склянки. Було б прикольно поклеїти такі шпалери на кухні на нашій дачі.

9. В нашій вітальні лакована паркетна підлога, що вкрита килимовим покриттям.

10. У моєї подруги в її новому будинку дуже багато різноманітних картин, гравюр та репродукцій на стінах.

11. Ми замурували старий камін і замість нього поставили там велике м'яке крісло.

21

☞ Listen to the dialogue between Barbara and Charles. Fill in the blanks in the sentences below and practise the conversation with a partner.

Arranging the House

1. Give me a hand with this _____, Charles. I want it over there by the _____.

2. Don't you think it would be better under that _____ by the _____?

3. No. The _____ isn't staying there anyway. I only _____ it on the _____ because it was in the way on the _____. We can arrange the pictures when all the _____ is in place.

4. Where did I put my big _____? It's not in the _____ _____ and I want to _____ these _____ on the door _____.

5. You had it in your hand when you went into the _____.

6. Yes, I think I put it down on the _____ above the _____.

7. Pass me that _____ behind the _____ before you go; and take your _____ off that nice _____.

8. You didn't shut him _____ last night, did you? He'll get lost.

9. No, he's definitely _____ the house. He's probably crept into a _____ somewhere and gone to sleep.

Buying or Selling a House

22

Read the text and think of a title for it. Be ready to discuss it.



Most British people obtain their home in one of three ways. The majority, about two-thirds, buy their own houses or flats. About 10 per cent of the population live in flats or houses which they **rent** privately **from** another person or organization. The majority of the remaining 25 per cent live in accommodation that is **owned by**, and rented from, their local council. Council houses (or flats), as these are called, are **available to** everyone, but in many areas there are long waiting lists, and the homes go to the most needy people. In the past few years it has become possible for council **house tenants** to **buy** their property **from** the local authority at a fairly cheap price – this is determined by taking into account how much rent the person has paid to the council over the years.

Homes in Britain are relatively expensive, although prices vary from area to area. They are most expensive in the London area and cheapest in northern England, parts of Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.

There are two types of organization which **are central to** buying of houses and flats.

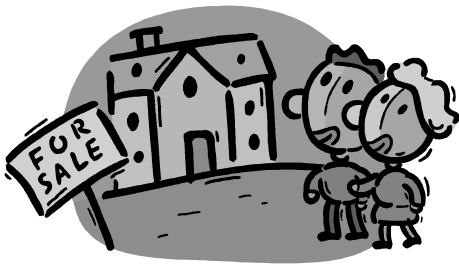
The first is the estate agent. An **estate agency** is, essentially, a shop which arranges for the sale of homes.

Let us imagine that Mr and Mrs Smith want to sell their house. First, they ask one or more local estate agents to visit the house and tell them how much they should be able to sell it for. They will also want to know how much the agent will **charge for** his services (usually between 1% and 2% of the selling price). If the Smiths **are happy with** his proposals, the agent will publish the details of the house in the form of **giveaway leaflets** and possibly in the local or even national newspapers. The leaflet will describe the house in detail, describing the position, number and sizes of its rooms, the garden and so on.



Mr and Mrs Smith then wait for **prospective buyers** to arrive.

Imagine that Mr and Mrs Johnson want to buy a house in the same area. They go to the estate agency and **inspect the details** of the **houses on offer**. If they **are attracted by** the description of the Smiths' house, they will visit the property to look at it. If they are still interested after seeing the house they may **make an offer** to the Smiths **via** the estate agent. Often the offer will be slightly less than the official "asking" price. If the Smiths agree, the house can be sold.



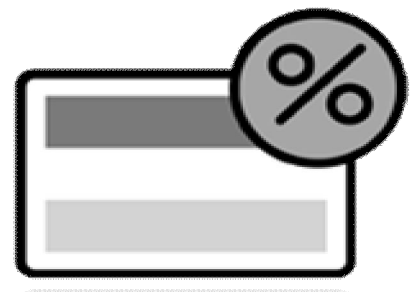
But the Johnsons probably do not have enough money to pay for the house immediately, so what do they do? They go to the second type of institution involved in house buying and selling – the **building society**.

A building society's main function is to lend people like the Johnsons enough money to buy a house. Banks also offer a similar service.

Building societies **make their money by borrowing** money **from** some members of the public – their “depositors” – and lending it to others. Many British people have building society **savings accounts**. They **save their money with** a building society, which pays them **interest**. The society then lends this money to people who want to buy a house or flat and **charges** them a **higher interest rate** on the amount borrowed. This **long-term loan** is called a **mortgage**.

So Mr and Mrs Johnson go to a local building society where they will be asked a number of questions – What type of jobs do they have? How much do they earn? What are their monthly **expenses**? And so on. The society will also inspect the house to see if it **is worth the money** they are being asked to lend. All being well, it will offer to lend the Johnsons up to about 90 per cent of the price of the house, **to be paid back** with interest over 25 years, or sometimes less. When all is agreed and the papers signed, the money is paid to the Smiths or to their legal representative – usually a solicitor – and the Johnsons can move in.

Over the 25 years, the Johnsons, because of the interest on the loan, will pay far more than the **original price** of the house – but since they are paying it in fairly small sums once a month they are, at least, able **to afford it**.



It's interesting to know

The Language of Estate Agents

It is a **running joke** in Britain that the more disreputable estate agents will always try to make the houses they are trying to sell sound much more desirable than they really are. An estate agent would never write: “This is a horrible little house in very poor condition. The trains go past every 10 minutes and shake the walls. The back garden is laughably small. This is why it is so cheap.”

Instead he would say: “This compact residence is ideally priced for the first-time buyer. Although in need of some renovation, it has some highly attractive features, including a small patio/garden to the rear. It is very convenient for the railway station.”

23

☛ Answer the following questions.



1. How do most British people obtain their homes?
2. What organizations are involved in the process of buying and selling houses?
3. What do British people usually do when they want to sell their house/flat?
4. What do they usually do when they want to buy a house/flat?
5. What is a building society? How does it make money?
6. How does a building society work?

24

Give the English equivalents to the words and phrases below. Be ready to use them in the sentences of your own.

Отримувати домівку, приватним чином знімати/орендувати в когось квартиру, наймач/жилець, викупити квартиру в місцевої влади, брати до уваги, агенція по продажу нерухомості, бути задоволеним пропозицією, роздаткові листівки, ймовірні покупці, будинки на продаж, зробити пропозицію через агента, позичати гроші в когось, довгострокова позика, іпотека, щомісячні витрати, бути вартим чогось, повертати гроші, справжня ціна, дозволити собі/мати можливість купити будинок.

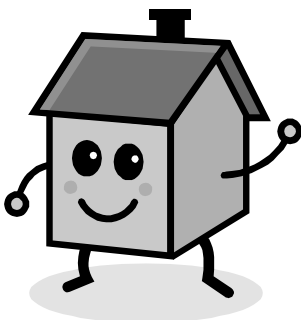
A House of My Dream

Are you proud of the house you live in? If the answer is “Yes”, then you are really a lucky person. But very often it happens so that people don’t like the houses they live in. That’s why in their dreams they often have an image of an ideal house, the house of their dreams.

25

Read the following texts and do the exercise after them. “*What is the house of your dream?*” – it is a question that several people were asked and here are their answers.

IRENE: For me, it’s absolutely easy to say what my idea of a perfect house is. I’ve been dreaming about it since my childhood. I was brought up in such a house. This is the house my parents have. My house should be my home, first of all. I mean it should be the place where I feel comfortable and welcome.



I dream about a cozy house in the centre of a small quiet town, not very big but large enough for me and my family. I think it should be a house with three bedrooms, a kitchen, a sitting room, and a big dining room with a large table. I like to have guests and to treat them to something tasty – that’s what I need a big dining room for. I would also like to have a small garden with flowers and fruit trees, with an

arbour and some comfortable benches. There should also be a lawn and a playing yard for children. I'd also like to have a fireplace in the house to sit around it with my husband and children. Isn't it great?

NATALY: Well, let me think about my ideal house... It should be large, first of all ... a mansion. I think, somewhere in an isolated place, two or three-storeyed building with a balcony, columns and the things like that. It's even better if it looks like a castle with towers and gates and high walls. It's so romantic! Plenty of rooms, staircases, an attic and a basement. It would be great if it was a real old house where ghosts lived, like in fairy-tales. I could feel there a princess. But there should be, of course, all those modern conveniences like central heating, electricity, cold and hot water, gas and telephone. The furniture should also be ancient, expensive and dark. And I'll have two Doberman dogs, of course. It'll add much to the style. There should be something mysterious about it. Yes, I think that's the house of my dream, the place I'd like to live in. Isn't it great?

JANE: A house I'd like to live in? No, I'd better call it a flat. If you have a house of your own, you have to take care of it. It's easier to live in a flat, somewhere in the centre of a city, in a skyscraper on the top floor. Well, yes, I think it'll be fantastic! It should be very large: a bedroom, a kitchen, a toilet, a bathroom and a large living room. There should be enough place for parties. I like to have parties with dancing, music and snacks. The more people come the better. So I'll need plenty of space for guests. There should also be as much kitchen equipment as possible to save my time and effort. I'm not much of a hostess. If I had a flat like that, I'd be really happy, wouldn't I?



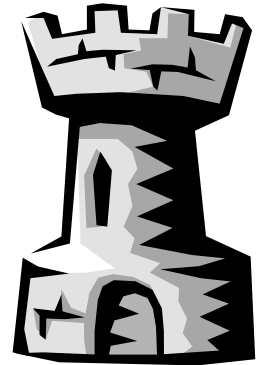
GEORGE: A house of my dream? Well, it would be a farm or rancho, I think. It'll be situated near a forest, a river or a lake. You know, I like nature. The house should be a simple one, not very big, but with a large yard and fields around. I don't need all modern conveniences, as I won't spend much time in there. I'd also like to have some cottages or cabins to have some rest when I get tired. There should also be a garden to grow fruit and vegetables. But the main thing is the cattle-yard, the place I can keep cows, sheep, horses and pigs. I like animals and I like to take care of them. There should also be five or seven dogs to live with me. Dogs are my favourite animals: they are so clever and kind! And that's practically all I want. Nature, animals and serenity – these are the only things I long for. Isn't it terrific?



26

Fill in the missing phrases to complete the following ideas about housing.

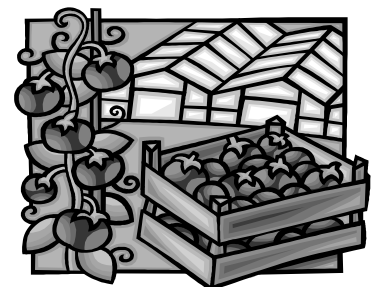
1. Irene has been dreaming about _____.
2. Irene thinks that her house should be her home where she _____.
3. Irene wants to live in _____ with _____.
4. Irene likes to have guests and to _____.
5. Irene wants to have a _____ near her house.
6. Nataly dreams about a house which looks like a _____ with _____.
7. Nataly wants to live in a house with modern conveniences such as _____.
8. The furniture in Nataly's house should be _____.
9. Jane doesn't want to live in a _____, but she dreams about a _____ in a _____.
10. Jane wants to have a large flat: _____.
11. There should be a lot of place for _____ in Jane's flat.
12. Jane is not very much of a _____, that's why she wants to have as much _____ as possible.
13. George would like to live in a _____.
14. George wants his house to be surrounded by _____.
15. The main thing in George's house is a _____ with _____.
16. George's favourite animals are _____, because they are _____.



27

Choose the most suitable word in each sentence.

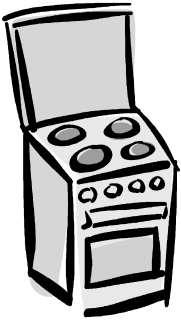
1. As you can see, the garden has two ornamental iron *doors/gates* and there is a stone *path/pavement* leading to the house.
2. This is the front *entry/entrance*, but there is another door at the *edge/side* of the house.
3. All the rooms have *covered/fitted* carpets.
4. All the *cupboards/wardrobes* in the kitchen and the *bookshelves/library* in the living room are included in the price.
5. There is a beautiful stone *chimney/fireplace* in the living room, and there are *sinks/washbasins* in all the bedrooms.
6. At the top of the *stairs/steps* there is a 19th century *coloured/stained* glass window.
7. The bathroom has a *shower/washer* and modern mixer *pipes/taps*.
8. At the top of the house there is *an attic/a cellar* and the garden contains a *glasshouse/greenhouse* and a garden *hut/shed*.
9. There is a wooden *fence/wall* on one side of the garden, and a *bush/hedge* on the other one.
10. All in all, this is a fine *single/detached* house in a quiet residential *neighbourhood/suburb*.



28

Match these words with an explanation. Not all the words given are possible.

*aerial curtains drive parking shelf central heating dishwasher
furniture radiator stool cook doormat landing stove/cooker
rug doorknocker letterbox settee/sofa washing machine*



1. A rectangular hole in the front door. _____. 2. A kitchen appliance running on gas or electricity. _____. 3. A long narrow rectangular piece of wood or metal fixed to the wall. _____. 4. A short road between the street and a house or its garage. _____. 5. Use this if you want someone to open the front door. _____. 6. Put the dirty dishes in this. _____. 7. This system makes the house warm. _____. 8. A small carpet. _____. 9. More than one person can sit on this. _____. 10. This helps a radio or television to receive a broadcast. _____. 11. An area at the top of some stairs. _____. 12. Wipe your feet on this before you enter the house. _____. 13. Pull these to cover the windows. _____. 14. A small seat without back or arms. _____. 15. Put your dirty washing in this. _____.

29

Complete each sentence 1) to 10) with one of the endings a) to j). Use each ending only once.

1. The shopping centre has a multi-storey car-park _____
2. This village is surrounded by lovely countryside _____
3. Jenny lives in a small flat _____
4. This street is only for pedestrians _____
5. Helen and John live in a square _____
6. Peter has moved to a London suburb _____
7. My grandmother bought a bungalow _____
8. Sue's new house is unfurnished _____
9. My house is semi-detached _____
10. I would prefer to live in a cottage _____



- a) _____ on the third floor of a modern block.
- b) _____ and he commutes to work in the centre.
- c) _____ with room for over 2,000 vehicles.
- d) _____ but the rent is so high that she cannot afford much furniture.
- e) _____ which has a beautiful garden in the middle.
- f) _____ in a small village in the country.
- g) _____ and the neighbours often bang on the wall.
- h) _____ because she had difficulty climbing stairs.
- i) _____ with fields, woods, streams and a small lake.
- j) _____ and cars and lorries are not allowed.

30**Complete each sentence 1) to 9) with one of the endings a) to i).**

1. I paused at the top of the stairs on the _____
2. The walls of the bathroom were covered in _____
3. There was a clock on the _____
4. I left my umbrella in the _____
5. After the storm we had to replace several _____
6. We stored our old books upstairs in the _____
7. I decided to oil the front door _____
8. There was no heat coming from the _____
9. You should try to remember to wipe your feet on the _____



- a) _____ hinges, which were rather rusty.
- b) _____ loft, in case we needed them again.
- c) _____ mantelpiece over the fireplace.
- d) _____ landing and wondered which was my room.
- e) _____ doormat outside the back door.
- f) _____ slates which had fallen off the roof.
- g) _____ radiator under the window.
- h) _____ tiles with a pattern of a fruit and flowers.
- i) _____ porch and opened the front door.

31**Choose the most suitable word or phrase to complete each sentence.**

- 1) The view from the skyscraper _____ over the New York harbour.
 - a) shows up
 - b) sees about
 - c) stands up
 - d) looks out
- 2) The old houses opposite are going to be _____.
 - a) broken down
 - b) knocked down
 - c) put down
 - d) taken down
- 3) _____! You're about to push the wheelbarrow over my foot!
 - a) hang up
 - b) stop off
 - c) get away
 - d) look out
- 4) Please _____ the rubbish because the dustman is coming tomorrow.
 - a) take in
 - b) make up
 - c) put out
 - d) tie down
- 5) Please come and unblock our drains! I'm _____ you!
 - a) doing without
 - b) counting on
 - c) seeing to
 - d) waiting for
- 6) I can't put these plants in pots. I've _____ earth!
 - a) run out of
 - b) put up with
 - c) given up
 - d) come up with
- 7) We _____ through the window by climbing up the ladder.
 - a) fell out
 - b) got in
 - c) ended up
 - d) set off
- 8) I've been planting trees all day and I'm _____.
 - a) worn out
 - b) taken in
 - c) run down
 - d) grown up
- 9) A lot of tiles _____ our roof after the night wind.
 - a) came off
 - b) took off
 - c) put off
 - d) got off
- 10) The car went out of control and _____ hitting a lamp-post.
 - a) speeded up
 - b) ran up
 - c) turned up
 - d) ended up

32

Use the word in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.

A House in the Country

When Ann decided to move house, it was mainly because she was tired of the (1) _____ she lived in. It was crowded, there was a (2) _____ of parking places, and the view from her (3) _____ windows was of distant factory chimneys. Luckily she arranged the (4) _____ of her house very easily, and with a small (5) _____ from the bank, was able to buy a house in the country. It was an old farm building, which had been (6) _____ and turned into a modern house. After loading all her belongings into a van, Ann managed to get them into the new house (7) _____. She (8) _____ most of the rooms with what she already owned. Even her curtains were the right (9) _____ for the windows and she only had to buy a new (10) _____ for the kitchen. It seemed too good to be true. Surely something was bound to go wrong!

NEIGHBOUR

SHORT

STAIRS

SELL

LEND

BUILD

DAMAGE/FURNITURE

LONG

COOK

33

Choose the most suitable word or phrase in each sentence.

1. Laura was sitting beside the fire in a comfortable *armchair/sofa*. 2. We drove out of the village along a winding *lane/path*. 3. Steve redecorated his room with flowery *posters/wallpaper*. 4. Put the meat in the *cooker/oven* for two hours. 5. These plums are ripe. They need *picking/picking up*. 6. Peter was in the garden mowing the *flowers/lawn*. 7. We used to keep the coal downstairs in the *cave/cellar*. 8. Why don't you put the car in the *car park/parking*? 9. Kate lives in a flat on the first *floor/storey*. 10. Put your wet socks on the central *heating/radiator* to dry. 11. Let's take the *runway/motorway*, we'll get there faster. 12. Go and get the lawnmower. The grass *is/are* very long. 13. I like the painting but I don't like the *frame/surrounding*. 14. Mary has a lot of small ornaments on her window *shelf/sill*. 15. There's someone *at/on* the door. Can you see who it is?



34

Match these words with the explanations given below.

shutters ceiling chimney pillow kennel blind cushion roof
rubbish urban bunk eiderdown kerb litter rural

- Put this over you if you are cold in bed. _____
- Put this behind your back if you are sitting uncomfortably. _____

3. These protect your windows outside and can be closed in bad weather.
4. This describes city places. _____
5. This is paper dropped in the street. _____
6. This is the top of the room. _____
7. This is a bed with others above it. _____
8. This describes country places. _____
9. This is the top of the house. _____
10. This is home for your pet dog. _____
11. The smoke goes up this from the fireplace. _____
12. Put this under your head when you go to sleep. _____
13. Close this to keep the sunlight out of your room. _____
14. This is anything you throw away in the dustbin. _____
15. This is the stone edge of the pavement at the side of the road. _____



35

Decide which answer a, b, c or d best fits each space.

Moving In

The entrance to the flat was at the (1) _____ of the house. Jane had to walk along a (2) _____ across the lawn and past a (3) _____ full of gardening equipment. Inside the back door there was a flight of (4) _____ and then another door on the (5) _____. It was a (6) _____ flat with a bedroom, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. There was not a lot of (7) _____ but certainly enough for a student like Jane. There was a(n) (8) _____ with an electric fire, and the kitchen had a small (9) _____ and a fridge. The bathroom did not have a bath, only a (10) _____ and a basin, but Jane didn't mind. She was thinking about other problems. There wasn't a washing (11) _____, and there was no (12) _____ heating. It was raining outside, and the flat felt damp and chilly. On the bed there were some (13) _____ and an eiderdown, but no (14) _____. It was lucky that Jane had bought a sleeping bag. As she was wondering what to do next, there was a knock (15) _____ the door.



- | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. a) side | b) inside | c) beginning | d) garden |
| 2. a) road | b) way | c) path | d) stairs |
| 3. a) room | b) shed | c) cellar | d) floor |
| 4. a) ladder | b) upstairs | c) rooms | d) stairs |
| 5. a) roof | b) landing | c) balcony | d) bottom |
| 6. a) multi-storey | b) semi-detached | c) furnished | d) cottage |
| 7. a) furniture | b) rent | c) neighbours | d) housing |
| 8. a) oven | b) chimney | c) radiator | d) fireplace |
| 9. a) cook | b) cookery | c) cooker | d) cooking |

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| 10. a) waterfall | b) shower | c) splash | d) sink |
| 11. a) machine | b) up | c) room | d) powder |
| 12. a) central | b) much | c) radiator | d) good |
| 13. a) wrappings | b) rugs | c) carpets | d) blankets |
| 14. a) whites | b) sheets | c) spreads | d) cloths |
| 15. a) for | b) behind | c) to | d) at |

36

In each sentence decide whether one or both alternative verb forms given are appropriate. Explain your choice.



1. Paul *used to/would* own a Mercedes then. 2. Rachel *used to/would* play tennis at the weekends then. 3. Stephen *used to/would* like going to the disco. 4. Tina never *used to/would* like going to the library. 5. Victor *used to/would* translate a lot then, but everything changed in a while. 6. They *used to/would* taste all the dishes before taking them to the guests. 7. She *used to/would* feel when the children were not telling the truth. 8. They *used to/would* get up late on Sunday in their childhood. 9. She was nice, but she *used to/would* talk about nothing but herself all the time. 10. He *used to/would* come every week, but then he got married.

37

Translate into English.



1. Коли я її зустрів, на ній був шкіряний плащ. 2. Назустріч йому бігли діти й щось голосно йому кричали. 3. Доріжка до будинку була завдовжки метрів п'ять. 4. Мені дуже хотілося повернутися й піти. 5. Вона збиралася переїхати жити до села. 6. Коли вона приймала душ, гаряча вода раптом закінчилася. 7. Я не знав, що це за страва, але пахла вона дуже апетитно. 8. Учора весь день він грав у шахи. 9. Поки ви розважалися в ресторані, діти зробили всю роботу. 10. Коли він писав цю книгу, він жив закордоном. 11. Вона гадала, що він це робить навмисно. Він постійно все плував. 12. Мері постійно експериментувала із зачіскою, тому часто виглядала дуже незвичайно. 13. Поки бабуся пекла пироги, мама готувала шоколадний десерт. 14. В той момент мені не хотілося обговорювати з ним такі питання. 15. Діти гомоніли все гучніше. 16. Марта розуміла, що нічим не може йому допомогти. 17. У повній темряві він пробирався на дотик. 18. Вона ніколи не прислуховувалася до порад матері. 19. Я бачив, що вона обмацувала поранене кошеня. 20. Вони сподівалися завершити прибирання вчасно.

38

Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Continuous tense.



1. I _____ (*light*) the fire at 6.00 and it _____ (*burn*) brightly when Tom _____ (*come*) in at 7.00. 2. When I _____ (*arrive*) the lecture had already started and the professor _____ (*write*) on the overhead projector. 3. I _____ (*make*) a cake when the light _____ (*go*) out. I had to finish it in the dark. 4. I _____ (*not/want*) to meet Paul so when he _____ (*enter*) the room, I _____ (*leave*). 5. Unfortunately when I _____ (*arrive*), Ann _____ (*just/leave*), so we only had time for a few words. 6. Her mother _____ (*often/tell*) her that she _____ (*spend*) too much money but she _____ (*never/listen*). 7. Whenever the drummer _____ (*begin*) practising, the people in the next flat _____ (*bang*) on the wall. 8. My dog _____ (*walk*) along quietly when Mr Pitt's Pekinese _____ (*attack*) him. 9. When I _____ (*arrive*), she _____ (*have*) lunch. She _____ (*apologize*) for starting without me but _____ (*say*) that she _____ (*always/lunch*) at 12.30. 10. He _____ (*always/wear*) a raincoat and _____ (*carry*) an umbrella when he _____ (*walk*) to the office. 11. – What _____ (*you/think*) of his last book? – I _____ (*like*) it very much. 12. I _____ (*share*) a flat with him when we _____ (*be*) students. He _____ (*always/complain*) about my untidiness. 13. She was very extravagant. She _____ (*always/buy*) herself new clothes. 14. He _____ (*play*) the guitar outside her house when someone _____ (*open*) the window and _____ (*throw*) out a bucket of water. 15. I _____ (*just/open*) the letter when the wind _____ (*blow*) it out of my hand. 16. The burglar _____ (*open*) the safe when he _____ (*hear*) footsteps. He immediately _____ (*put*) out his torch and _____ (*crawl*) under the bed. 17. When I _____ (*hear*) his knock, I _____ (*go*) to the door and _____ (*open*) it, but I _____ (*not/recognize*) him at first because I _____ (*not/wear*) my glasses. 18. When he _____ (*mend*) the fuse, he _____ (*get*) a very bad shock. 19. The boys _____ (*play*) cards when they _____ (*hear*) their father's step. They immediately _____ (*hide*) the cards and _____ (*take*) out their lesson books.



39

Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Continuous tense.

1. I _____ (*walk*) along Piccadilly when I _____ (*realize*) that a man with a ginger beard, whom I had already seen three times that afternoon, _____ (*follow*) me. 2. To make quite sure, I _____ (*walk*) on quickly, _____ (*turn*) right, then left and _____ (*stop*) suddenly at a shop window. 3. In a few minutes the man with the beard _____ (*appear*) and _____ (*stop*) at another shop window. 4. I _____ (*go*) on. 5. Whenever I _____ (*stop*) he _____ (*stop*), and whenever I _____ (*look*) round, he _____ (*still/be*) there. 6. He _____ (*look*) a very respectable type and _____ (*wear*) very conventional clothes and I _____

(*wonder*) if he was a policeman or a private detective. 7. I _____ (*decide*) to try and shake him off. 8. A 74 bus _____ (*stand*) at the bus stop just beside me. 9. Then the conductor _____ (*come*) downstairs and _____ (*ring*) the bell; just as the bus _____ (*move*) off, I _____ (*jump*) on it. 10. The man with the beard _____ (*miss*) the bus but _____ (*get*) into another 74, which _____ (*follow*) the first. 11. Both buses _____ (*crawl*) very slowly along Knightsbridge. 12. Every time the buses _____ (*pull*) up at a stop, the man _____ (*look*) out anxiously to see if I _____ (*get*) off. 13. Finally, at some traffic lights, he _____ (*change*) buses and _____ (*get*) into mine. 14. At Gloucester Road Underground, I _____ (*leave*) the bus and _____ (*buy*) a ticket at a ticket machine. 15. As I _____ (*stand*) on the platform waiting for a Circle Line train, my pursuer _____ (*come*) down the stairs. 16. He _____ (*carry*) a newspaper and when we _____ (*get*) into the same compartment, he _____ (*sit*) in one corner reading it, and I _____ (*read*) the advertisements. 17. He _____ (*look*) over the top of the newspaper at every station to see if I _____ (*get*) out. 18. I _____ (*become*) rather tired of being shadowed like this, so finally I _____ (*go*) and _____ (*sit*) beside the man and _____ (*ask*) him why he _____ (*follow*) me. 19. At first he _____ (*say*) he _____ (*not/follow*) me at all but when I _____ (*threaten*) to knock him down, he _____ (*admit*) that he was. 20. Then he _____ (*tell*) me he _____ (*be*) a writer of detective stories and _____ (*try*) to see if it was difficult to follow someone unseen. 21. I _____ (*tell*) him he hadn't been unseen because I had noticed him in Piccadilly and I _____ (*advise*) him to shave off his ginger beard if he _____ (*not/want*) his victim to know he _____ (*be*) followed.



40

Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Continuous tense.

1. Peter and Ann _____ (*decide*) to redecorate their sitting room themselves. 2. They _____ (*choose*) cream paint for the woodwork and apricot for the walls. 3. When John _____ (*look*) in to see how they _____ (*get*) on, Ann _____ (*mix*) the paint, and Peter _____ (*wash*) down the walls. 4. They _____ (*be*) glad to see John and _____ (*ask*) if he _____ (*do*) anything special that day. 5. He hastily _____ (*reply*) he _____ (*go*) to the theatre and _____ (*go*) away at once, because he _____ (*know*) they _____ (*look*) for someone to help them. 6. They _____ (*begin*) painting, but _____ (*find*) the walls _____ (*be*) too wet. 7. While they _____ (*wait*) for the walls to dry, Ann _____ (*remember*) she _____ (*have*) a phone call to make. 8. Peter _____ (*start*) painting while she _____ (*telephone*), and _____ (*do*) a whole wall before Ann _____ (*come*) back. 9. He

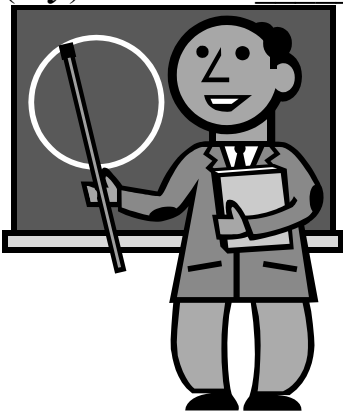


_____ (*grumble*) that she _____ (*always/telephone*). 10. Ann _____ (*retort*) that Peter _____ (*always/complain*). 11. They _____ (*work*) in silence for some time. 12. Just as they _____ (*start*) the third wall, the doorbell _____ (*ring*). 13. It _____ (*be*) a friend of Peter's who _____ (*want*) to know if Peter _____ (*play*) golf the following weekend. 14. He _____ (*stay*) talking to Peter in the hall while Ann _____ (*go*) on painting. 15. At last he _____ (*leave*). 16. Peter _____ (*return*), expecting Ann to say something about friends who _____ (*come*) and _____ (*waste*) valuable time talking about golf. 17. But Ann nobly _____ (*say*) nothing. 18. Then Peter _____ (*think*) he would do the ceiling. 19. He _____ (*just/climb*) the step ladder when the doorbell _____ (*ring*) again. 20. Ann _____ (*say*) she _____ (*get*) tired of interruptions but _____ (*go*) and _____ (*open*) the door. 21. It _____ (*be*) the postman with a letter from her aunt Mary, saying she _____ (*come*) to spend the weekend with them and _____ (*arrive*) that evening at 6.30.

41

Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Continuous tense.

1. He _____ (*sit*) on the bank fishing when he _____ (*see*) a man's hat floating down the river. It _____ (*seem*) strangely familiar. 2. It _____ (*snow*) heavily when he _____ (*wake*) up. He _____ (*remember*) that Jack _____ (*come*) for lunch and _____ (*decide*) to go down to the station to meet him in case he _____ (*lose*) his way in the snowy lanes. 3. When I _____ (*reach*) the street I _____ (*realize*) that I _____ (*not/know*) the number of Tom's house. I _____ (*wonder*) what to do about it when Tom himself _____ (*tap*) me on the shoulder. 4. As the goalkeeper _____ (*run*) forward to seize the ball a bottle _____ (*strike*) him on the shoulder. 5. Everyone _____ (*read*) quietly when suddenly the door _____ (*burst*) open and a complete stranger _____ (*rush*) in. 6. I _____ (*go*) to Jack's house but _____ (*not/find*) him in. His mother _____ (*say*) that she _____ (*not/know*) what he _____ (*do*) but _____ (*think*) he _____ (*probably/play*) football. 7. I _____ (*call*) Paul at 7.00 but it _____ (*not/be*) necessary because he _____ (*already/get*) up. 7. I _____ (*look*) through the classroom window. A geometry lesson _____ (*go*) on. The teacher _____ (*draw*) diagrams on the blackboard. 8. Most of the boys _____ (*listen*) to the teacher but a few _____ (*whisper*) to each other, and Tom _____ (*read*) a history book. Tom _____ (*hate*) mathematics; he _____ (*always/read*) history during his mathematics lesson.



42

Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Continuous tense.

1. This used to be a station and all the London trains _____ (*stop*) here. But two years ago they _____ (*close*) the station and _____ (*give*) us a bus service instead. 2. She _____ (*promise*) not to report me to the police but ten minutes later I _____ (*see*) her talking with a policeman and from the expression on his face I am sure she _____ (*tell*) him all about it. 3. I _____ (*pick*) up the receiver and _____ (*dial*) a number. To my surprise I _____ (*find*) myself listening to an extraordinary conversation. Two men _____ (*plan*) to kidnap the Prime Minister. 4. I _____ (*meet*) Paul at the university. We _____ (*be*) both in the same year. He _____ (*study*) law, but he _____ (*not/be*) very interested in it and _____ (*spend*) most of his time practising the flute. 5. The train _____ (*just/start*) when the door _____ (*open*) and two panting passengers _____ (*leap*) in. 6. – “What _____ (*you/do*) between 9.00 and 10.00 yesterday?” _____ (*say*) the detective. – “I _____ (*clean*) my house,” said Mrs. Jones. “I always clean my house on Saturday mornings.” 7. My neighbor _____ (*look*) in last night and _____ (*say*) that he _____ (*leave*) the district and _____ (*go*) to Yorkshire, to a new job. I _____ (*say*) that I _____ (*be*) very sorry that he _____ (*go*), and _____ (*tell*) him to write to me from Yorkshire and tell me how he _____ (*get*) on. 8. They _____ (*build*) that bridge when I _____ (*be*) here last year. They haven't finished it yet. 9. The dentist's waiting room was full of people. Some _____ (*read*) magazines, others _____ (*just/turn*) over the pages. A woman _____ (*knit*) and a child _____ (*play*) with a toy car. Suddenly the door _____ (*open*) and the nurse _____ (*say*), “Next, please.” 10. – The house next to yours _____ (*be*) full of policemen and police dogs yesterday. – What _____ (*they/do*)? – I _____ (*hear*) that they _____ (*look*) for drugs. – _____ (*they/find*) any? – Yes, I believe one of the dogs _____ (*discover*) some cannabis. 11. – Peter _____ (*tell*) me yesterday that he _____ (*make*) his own £5 notes. – Don't believe him. He _____ (*just/pull*) your leg.

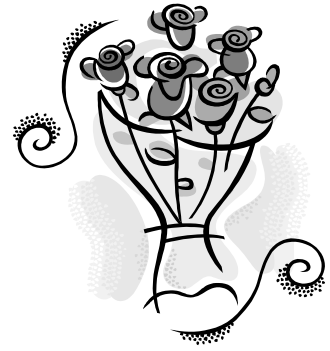


43

Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Continuous tense.

1. A traffic warden _____ (*just/stick*) a parking ticket to my windscreen when I _____ (*come*) back to the car. I _____ (*try*) to persuade him to tear it up but he _____ (*refuse*). 2. – Ann works in the branch where the big robbery _____ (*take*) place. – _____ (*she/actually/work*) there at the time of the raid? 3. While I _____ (*wonder*) whether to buy the dress or not, someone else _____ (*come*) and _____ (*buy*) it. 4. When Amy _____ (*say*) that she _____ (*come*) to see me

the next day, I _____ (*wonder*) what flowers she would bring. She always brings flowers. 5. He _____ (*clean*) his gun when it accidentally _____ (*go*) off and _____ (*kill*) him. 6. _____ (*not/allow*) us to go out in the boat yesterday as a strong wind _____ (*blow*). 7. As I _____ (*cross*) the road, I _____ (*step*) on a banana skin and _____ (*fall*) heavily. I _____ (*still/lie*) on the road when I _____ (*see*) a lorry approaching. Luckily the driver _____ (*see*) me and _____ (*stop*) the lorry in time. 8. – How _____ (*you/damage*) your car so badly? – I _____ (*run*) into a lamp-post yesterday. – I suppose you _____ (*drive*) too quickly or _____ (*not/look*) where you _____ (*go*). 9. As he _____ (*get*) into the bus, it _____ (*start*) suddenly and he _____ (*fall*) backwards on to the road.



44

Which form do you feel is best?



1. Here's the builder's estimate. It *will cost/is going to cost* \$7,000 to repair the roof. 2. I think it *will cost/is going to cost* about \$3,000 to rebuild the garage. 3. Alice *will have/is going to have* a baby. 4. With a bit of luck, the baby *will have/is going to have* Alice's eyes. 5. I *will play/am playing* tennis with Stan on Sunday. 6. He *will win/is winning*. He always does. 7. Don't tell her. She *will tell/is going to tell* everybody

else. 8. What's happening? The train *won't stop/isn't going to stop!* 9. One day everybody *will have/is going to have* proper housing. 10. She *will get married/is getting married* on Friday at the local church. 11. It *will rain/is going to rain* – look at those clouds. 12. If it gets any colder, it *will snow/is going to snow*.

45

Open the brackets using will or the be going to form.

1. What are all those notes for? _____ (*you/give*) a lecture? 2. If I catch some fish, _____ (*you/cook*) them for me? 3. _____ (*you/walk*) there in this rain?



You'll get awfully wet. 4. – I'm looking for my easel. – _____ (*you/paint*) someone's portrait? 5. "You _____ (*read*) this passage aloud, please," said the examiner. 6. _____ (*you/eat*) any more of this, or shall I tell the waiter to take it away? 7. You aren't wearing your climbing boots. _____ (*you/not/climb*) the mountain with the others? 8. "You _____ (*listen*) to me!" said his mother angrily. 9. – _____ (*you/put*)

my car away from me, please? – Yes, certainly. **10.** Why did you buy all these eggs? _____ (*you/make*) an enormous omelette? **11.** – There's the phone again. Take no notice. – _____ (*you/not/answer*) it? **12.** – _____ (*you/lend*) me your fishing rod? – Yes, of course. Where _____ (*you/fish*)? **13.** _____ (*you/finish*) this book or shall I take it back to the library? **14.** _____ (*you/drive*), please? I don't like driving at night. **15.** _____ (*you/ride*) that horse? He looks very bad-tempered to me. **16.** _____ (*you/eat*) it raw? You will be ill if you do. **17.** _____ (*you/really/call*) the fire brigade? I don't think it is at all necessary. **18.** _____ (*you/paint*) the whole room by yourself? It will take you ages. **19.** _____ (*you/be*) ready in five minutes? **20.** _____ (*you/be*) angry if he refuses to help you? **21.** Why have you brought your typewriter? _____ (*you/work*) this weekend? **22.** _____ (*you/call*) me at six? I have to catch an early train.

46

Complete the dialogue using the correct future form.

A: What **1)** _____ (*do*) tonight?

B: I **2)** _____ (*try*) to finish my homework because I **3)** _____ (*go*) to my cousin's wedding on Saturday and I **4)** _____ (*not/be able*) to do it then.

A: What time **5)** _____ (*the wedding/start*) on Saturday?

B: The ceremony **6)** _____ (*begin*) at 2 o'clock, then I **7)** _____ (*go*) to the party in the evening.

A: **8)** _____ (*any of your friends/be*) there?

B: Well, my cousin says I can bring a friend. **9)** _____ (*you/do*) anything on Saturday night?

A: No, but I **10)** _____ (*feel*) shy if I don't know anyone.

B: Never mind. It **11)** _____ (*be*) a big party and I'm sure you **12)** _____ (*have*) a great time.

A: O.K., then. Thanks very much.



47

Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple or the Future Simple.

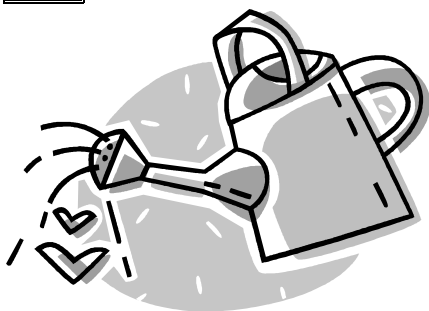
“You **1)** _____ (*meet*) Agent 205 under the clock at the railway station. When she **2)** _____ (*arrive*), she **3)** _____ (*give*) you an envelope. I don't know if you **4)** _____ (*recognise*) her in her disguise, but if she **5)** _____ (*not/say*) the secret code word, you **6)** _____ (*know*) she is an enemy agent. You **7)** _____ (*take*) the envelope and head for the train to Waterloo Station. When the train **8)** _____ (*come*), you **9)** _____ (*get on*) it and go to Waterloo. If you **10)** _____ (*miss*) the 9.15 train, you **11)** _____ (*have to*) get the next one. As soon as it **12)** _____ (*reach*) Waterloo, leave the train and take a taxi to the Opera House. You **13)** _____ (*meet*) Jenny there, although I'm not sure exactly when she **14)** _____ (*get*) there. Give her the envelope. Wait until



she 15) _____ (*drive*) off and then go home. We 16) _____ (*call*) you there. Are there any questions?"

48

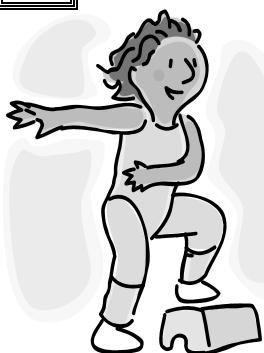
Translate into English using *if/unless*.



1. Якщо ви не поллете квіти, вони засохнуть. 2. Якщо ти відкладаєш роботу до наступного дня, ти не в змозі вчасно її закінчити. 3. Якщо у вас немає грошей, то я вам можу позичити. 4. Якщо ви не переглянете ці газети, ви не зможете написати звіт. 5. Якщо я не закінчу роботу, то залишуся тут допізна. 6. Якщо він прийде після того, як я піду, дайте йому листа, що лежить на столі. 7. Якщо вас цікавлять гуманітарні науки, вам слід вступити до нашого університету. 8. Я принесу вам книги сьогодні, якщо вас це влаштовує. 9. Якщо мені не нагадують про справи на завтра, я їх забуваю. 10. Якщо ви не піклуєтесь про своє здоров'я, ніхто про вас не подбає. 11. Якщо ви відмовитеся від роботи зараз, вам ніколи більше не трапиться така блискуча нагода. 12. Я буду вам дуже вдячний, якщо ви нагадаєте йому про його обіцянку. 13. Якщо ви не спите вночі, спробуйте приймати ці ліки. 14. Якщо ви не знаєте, як виконати цю роботу, зверніться до Сіріл, вона допоможе. 15. Якщо Джоан приїде до вас, покажіть їй місто. 16. Ти зайдеш за мною після роботи, якщо матимеш час?

49

Translate into English.

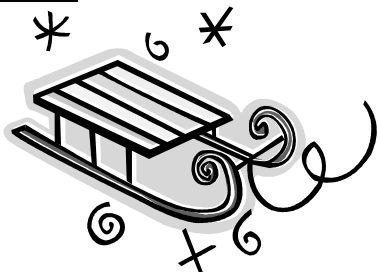


1. Якщо ти будеш робити зарядку, то завжди будеш почувати себе здоровим і бадьорим. 2. Якщо навіть ми нічого не дізнаємося, ми все одно вам напишемо. 3. Якщо вона не поїде завтра, приходьте до нас. 4. Якщо я не знаю цей матеріал достатньо добре, це не означає, що я взагалі нічого не знаю. 5. Брайан працює старанно, якщо йому не заважають. 6. Якщо ви носите одяг охайно, то він не зношується так швидко. 7. Якщо Джейн відповість на лист відразу, їй не доведеться чекати на відповідь довго. 8. Якщо ви ляжете спати о десятій годині, то виспитесь. 9. Якщо не будеш їхати так швидко, то unikнеш аварії. 10. Якщо ти заздалегідь не замовиш квитки, то не зможеш потрапити на цей спектакль. 11. Я не дам тобі іншу книгу, поки ти не повернеш ту, що брав. 13. Якщо ви регулярно зустрічаєтесь зі своїм викладачем, ви повинні вже багато знати з цього предмету. 14. Ми не їздимо до села, якщо стоїть погана погода. 15. Ви не зможете зрозуміти магнітофонні записи, доки не будете слухати їх

регулярно. **16.** Вона не приймає ванну, якщо почуває себе зле. **17.** Я зроблю всі свої справи, якщо ти мені не заважатимеш. **18.** Якщо книга нецікава, я її лише проглядаю. **19.** Якщо ви будете так багато читати, то зіпсуєте свої очі. **20.** Якщо ви не вмієте друкувати, попросіть Рені допомогти вам.

50

Translate into English.



1. Якщо ти зараз підеш кататися на санчатах, то застудишся. **2.** Ви зайдете до мене ввечері, якщо у вас не буде занять? **3.** Якщо тобі не хочеться йти до нього на день народження самому, візьми з собою когось. **4.** Якщо не знайдеш його вдома о сьомій годині, зателефонуй йому на роботу. **5.** Якщо ми не поквапимося, то обов'язково спізнимося на літак. **6.** Якщо тобі буде погано, виклич лікаря та сиди вдома. **7.** Якщо ти не почнеш готуватися до іспитів, ти їх не складеш. **8.** Якщо я зможу знайти Пітера, я попрошу його допомогти мені. **9.** Якщо ти помиєш посуд, я вигуляю собаку. **10.** Якщо дощу не буде, ви гарно проведете час за містом. **11.** Якщо лікар буде вільний, він огляне тебе. **12.** Якщо ти прийдеш додому пізно, ти Майкла вже не побачиш. **13.** Якщо Мері прибере в квартирі, Брюс сходить у магазин, а Террі випере білизну, я приготую обід. **14.** Я не знаю, що ми будемо робити, якщо під час нашої відпустки буде дощити. **15.** Якщо Білл буде жити за містом, ми будемо рідше його бачити. **16.** Якщо ви не підберете мені потрібну книгу, я не зможу підготувати доповідь на завтра. **17.** Якщо потяг спізниться, що ви будете робити? **18.** Щойно мама повернеться з роботи, ми поїдемо до парку. **19.** Якщо я погано почуваюсь, то я залишаюся вдома. **20.** Якщо у вас болить голова, прийміть ліки.

51

Get ready for your exam. Speak on the suggested topics.

Revision Topics

1. My room. (My favourite room).
2. The way I furnish my flat (house).
3. A kitchen. Only a place for eating?
4. My residence in Kyiv.
5. *How to buy a flat (house).
6. The flat (house) I live in.
7. The flat (house) of my dream.
8. Advantages and disadvantages of having a big house.
9. How I manage to keep my flat (house) clean.





GRAMMAR REFERENCE

Classification of Nouns

According to their lexical meaning nouns fall under two classes:

Common nouns (загальні назви)

Proper nouns (власні назви)

Common nouns are names applied to any individual of a class of persons or things, collections of similar individuals or things regarded as a unit, materials or abstract notions. They are subdivided into:

- ❖ **class nouns** (конкретні іменники)
- ❖ **collective nouns** (збірні іменники)
- ❖ **material nouns** (речовинні іменники)
- ❖ **abstract nouns** (абстрактні іменники)

1. Class nouns denote living beings or things belonging to a class, such as *a man, a dog, a book*. They are countable. They can have a singular and plural form.

2. Collective nouns denote a number of persons or things collected together to form a single unit. They are subdivided into:

a) Nouns that are used in both numbers: *a family, a company, a team*. They are countable.

When these nouns are used in the singular they may be followed by the verb either in the singular or in the plural. The verb is singular if the collective noun is thought of as a single unit. The verb is plural if the collective noun is thought of as a collection of separate individuals:

My family is my everything.

My family are sitting at the table and drinking tea.

b) Nouns that are used only in the singular. They are singular in form and singular in meaning. They are uncountable, e.g. *furniture, money, youth*.

c) Nouns that are used only in the plural. They are plural in form and plural in meaning. They are uncountable, e.g. *goods, belongings, looks*. Very often they are nouns formed from other parts of speech.

d) Nouns that are used only in the plural. These are names of things consisting of two similar parts (halves). They are plural in form and plural in meaning. They are uncountable, e.g. *scales, trousers, shorts*.

e) Nouns of multitude that are singular in form but plural in meaning. They are uncountable and followed by plural verbs, e.g. *people, police*.

f) Nouns that are used only in the singular. They are plural in form but singular in meaning. They are uncountable. These are names of some subjects, games and activities, e.g. *maths, phonetics, aerobics*.

3. **Material nouns** denote materials, such as *air, water, paper, cotton, leather*. They are uncountable and used only in the singular.

4. **Abstract nouns** denote notions (*science, information*), qualities (*beauty, humour*), actions (*work, conversation*), feelings and emotions (*joy, love, anger*). They are uncountable and used only in the singular.

Proper nouns are names given to individuals of a class to distinguish them from other individuals of the same class: 1) personal names; 2) geo names; 3) months, days; 4) hotels, streets, etc.

Countable Nouns Plural of Nouns

Countable nouns denote things or individuals that can be counted. Countables have two numbers – **the singular** and **the plural**.

1. Normally nouns form the plural by adding **-s** to the singular form. This plural ending is pronounced as:

- ❖ /z/ after voiced consonants and vowels – *beds, bees, flowers, ladys*;
- ❖ /s/ after voiceless consonants – *books, caps*;
- ❖ /ɪz/ after sibilants – *noses, horses, bridges*.

2. If the noun ends in **-s, -ss, -x, -sh, -ch, -tch**, the plural is formed by adding **-es** to the singular stem. This plural ending is pronounced as /ɪz/:

<i>a bus – bus<u>es</u></i>	<i>a glass – glass<u>es</u></i>	<i>a bench – bench<u>es</u></i>
<i>a box – box<u>es</u></i>	<i>a bush – bush<u>es</u></i>	<i>a match – match<u>es</u></i>

3. If the noun stem ends in **-y**:

<i>consonant + y = y → i + es</i>	<i>a fly – fly<u>ies</u>, an army – arm<u>ies</u></i> ;
<i>vowel + y = y + s</i>	<i>a monkey – monkey<u>s</u>, a boy – boy<u>s</u></i> .

4. If a noun ends in **-o**:

<i>consonant + o = o + es</i>	<i>a potato – potato<u>es</u>, a hero – hero<u>es</u></i> ;
<i>vowel + o = o + s</i>	<i>a radio – radio<u>s</u>, a cuckoo – cuckoo<u>s</u></i> .

But: *a piano – pianos* (піаніно); *a solo – solos* (сольний номер); *a photo – photos* (фотографія); *kilo – kilos* (кілограм).

5. If a noun ends in **-f(e)**:

<i>f(e) → v + es /vz/</i>	<i>a knife – knife<u>s</u>, a wife – wife<u>s</u>, a wolf – wolf<u>es</u></i> .
---------------------------	---

But there are some nouns in which there is no change:

<i>a chief – chief<u>s</u></i> (начальник)	<i>a gulf – gulf<u>s</u></i> (затока)
<i>a roof – roof<u>s</u></i> (дах)	<i>a kerchief – kerchief<u>s</u></i> (хусточка)
<i>a belief – belief<u>s</u></i> (віра)	<i>a safe – safe<u>s</u></i> (сейф)
<i>a handkerchief – handkerchief<u>s</u></i> (носова хусточка)	

There are some nouns which have two forms:

- a scarf* – *scarfs/scarves* (шарф)
- a hoof* – *hoofs/hooves* (копито)
- a wharf* – *wharfs/wharves* (пристань).

6. The plural forms of some nouns are survivals of earlier formations.

a) There are 7 nouns which form the plural by changing the root vowel:

- a man* – *men* (чоловік)
- a woman* – *women* (жінка)
- a foot* – *feet* (ступня)
- a tooth* – *teeth* (зуб)
- a goose* – *geese* (гуска)
- a mouse* – *mice* (миша)
- a louse* – *lice* (воша)

b) There are 3 nouns which form the plural in *-en*:

- an ox* – *oxen* (бик)
- a child* – *children* (дитина)
- a brother* – *brethren* (брат (реліг.))

c) In some nouns the plural form does not differ from the singular (they have the same form):

- a deer* – *deer* (олень)
- a fish* – *fish* (риба)
- a sheep* – *sheep* (вівця)
- a swine* – *swine* (свиня)
- a trout* – *trout* (форель)
- an aircraft* – *aircraft* (літак)
- a means* – *means* (засіб)
- a series* – *series* (серія)
- a species* – *species* (вид)

d) Some nouns from **Latin** and **Greek** retain their original forms:

a /ə/ → ae /i:/	<i>an antenn<u>a</u></i> – <i>antenn<u>ae</u></i> , <i>a formul<u>a</u></i> – <i>formul<u>ae</u></i> ;
ex(ix) /ks/ → ices /si:z/	<i>an append<u>ix</u></i> – <i>append<u>ices</u></i> , <i>an index</i> – <i>ind<u>ices</u></i> ;
is /ɪs/ → es /i:z/	<i>a bas<u>is</u></i> – <i>bas<u>es</u></i> , <i>a thes<u>is</u></i> – <i>thes<u>es</u></i> ;
on /ən/ → a /ə/	<i>a criteri<u>on</u></i> – <i>criteri<u>a</u></i> , <i>a phenomen<u>on</u></i> – <i>phenomen<u>a</u></i> ;
um /əm/ → a /ə/	<i>a medi<u>um</u></i> – <i>medi<u>a</u></i> , <i>a curricul<u>um</u></i> – <i>curricul<u>a</u></i> ;
us /əs/ → i /aɪ/	<i>a cact<u>us</u></i> – <i>cact<u>i</u></i> , <i>a nucle<u>us</u></i> – <i>nucle<u>i</u></i> ;
o /əʊ/ → i /i:/	<i>a temp<u>o</u></i> – <i>temp<u>i</u></i> .

7. In compound nouns the plural is formed in different ways.

a) if a noun is non-hyphenated, the last word is used in the plural:

a housewife – *housewives*, *an onlooker* – *onlookers*, *a postman* – *postmen*.

b) if the noun is hyphenated, the main meaningful word (the head word) is used in the plural:

a brother-in-law – *brothers-in-law*, *an editor-in-chief* – *editors-in-chief*.

c) if there is no noun stem in the compound, **-s** is added to the last element:
a forget-me-not – forget-me-nots, a merry-go-round – merry-go-rounds.

d) if the first word of the compound is man or woman, both words are used in the plural:

a man-servant – men-servants, a woman-doctor – women-doctors.

Uncountable Nouns

Uncountable nouns denote objects that cannot be counted. Uncountable nouns are subdivided into the so-called *singularia tantum* and *pluralia tantum*.

1. *Singularia tantum* are nouns used only in the singular in English. They agree with the predicate verb in the singular. Here belong the following:

a) **material nouns** such as *air, water, paper, cotton, leather*:

Sugar is sweet.

b) **abstract nouns** such as *love, courage, weather, traffic*:

The traffic is very heavy here.

Some abstract nouns are used only in the singular in English, but have both forms in Ukrainian: *advice* (порада – поради), *information* (інформація – відомості), *knowledge* (знання), *progress* (успіх – успіху):

Your advice is the best. – Твої поради найкращі.

c) some **collective nouns** such as *linen, equipment, luggage, furniture, currency, money, machinery*:

There is a lot of equipment in this chemistry-lab.

The nouns *money* (гроші) and *furniture* (меблі) are singular in English, but plural in Ukrainian:

I don't need this money. – Мені не потрібні ці гроші.

This furniture is broken. – Ці меблі зламані.

Note that these uncountable nouns can be made countable by means of partitives:

a piece of cake/information/advice/furniture; a glass/bottle of water; a jar of jam; a rasher of bacon; a box of chocolates; a packet of biscuits/tea; a slice/loaf of bread; a pot of yoghurt; a pot/cup of tea; a kilo/pound of meat; a bottle of vinegar; a tube of toothpaste; a bar of chocolate/soap; a bit/piece of chalk; an ice cube/scoop; a lump of sugar; a sheet of paper; a bag of flour; a pair of trousers; a game of soccer; a(n) item/piece of news; a drop/can of oil; a can of Coke; a carton of milk; a block of wood, a scoop of ice-cream.

NB: Some of the above mentioned nouns can be used in the singular and in the plural, but they have different meanings. Compare:

<i>This glass is transparent. (скло)</i>	<i>I'd like 3 glasses of juice. (склянка)</i>
<i>I have no time. (час)</i>	<i>I met him two times. (раз)</i>
<i>Her hair is wonderful. (волосся)</i>	<i>I see a hair in my plate. (волосина)</i>
<i>I have no paper. (папір)</i>	<i>I need a paper. (газета)</i>

d) Some nouns are plural in forms but singular in meanings. Their final **-s** loses the meaning of the plural inflexion and the nouns are treated as singular. Here belong names of some subjects, games and activities: *athletics* (атлетика, гімнастика), *classics* (класична література), *economics* (економіка), *linguistics* (мовознавство, лінгвістика), *mathematics* (математика), *news* (новина, новини, звістка, вісті), *phonetics* (фонетика), *physics* (фізика), *politics* (політика), *statistics* (статистика), *aerobics* (аеробіка), *billiards* (більярд), *dominoes* (доміно), *draughts* (шашки), *darts* (дартс, дротики), *bowls* (гра в кулі), *cards* (карти), *skittles* (кегли).

But when these nouns don't refer to subjects of study and activities, they may be used in plural:

The statistics are not accurate. – Статистичні данні (цифри) не є точними.

His politics are rude. – Його політичні дії дуже грубі.

2. Pluralia tantum are nouns used only in the plural in English. They agree with the predicate verb in the plural. Here belong the following:

a) Names of things consisting of two similar halves. Here belong nouns which refer to clothes, tools and other things that people wear or use: *scales* (ваги), *scissors* (ножиці), *spectacles/glasses* (окуляри), *binoculars* (бінокль), *tweezers* (пінцет), *handcuffs* (наручники), *pyjamas* (піжама), *trousers* (штани), *jeans* (джинси).

Her jeans are black. – Її джинси чорні.

If we want to refer to a single piece of clothing or a single tool, we can use “**some**” or “**a pair of**” in front of the noun:

She has a new pair of jeans. – В неї є нова пара джинс.

She bought three pairs of tights. – Вона купила три пари панчіх.

b) some **collective nouns** such as: *clothes* (одяг, речі), *contents* (зміст), *goods* (товар, товари), *proceeds* (виторг, прибуток), *riches* (багатство, скарби), *wages* (заробітна плата), *expenses* (затрати, витрати), *looks* (зовнішній вигляд), *greens* (зелень, овочі), *troops* (війська), *remains* (залишок, рештки), *premises* (будинок з прилеглою територією), *stairs* (сходи, трап).

These nouns may have both forms in Ukrainian:

These traffic-lights are not working. – Цей світлофор не працює. або
Ці світлофори не працюють.

c) Nouns of multitude *people* (люди), *police* (міліція, поліція), *cattle* (велика рогата худоба), *poultry* (домашня птиця). These nouns are singular in form but plural in meaning:

Do the police know about him? – Чи знає поліція про нього?

d) The nouns *fruit* (фрукт) and *fish* (риба) are singular in English, but have both forms in Ukrainian. They agree with the predicate verb in the singular:

Fruit is cheap in summer.

Note that the plural is used to speak about different kinds of fruit:

There are apples, plums and other fruits on the table.

Some – Any – No – Not Any – Every

	Adjectives	Pronouns		Adverbs
		people	things	places
+	some any	someone/somebody anyone/anybody	something anything	somewhere anywhere
?	any	anyone/anybody	anything	anywhere
-	no/ not any	no one/not anyone nobody/not anybody	nothing not anything	nowhere not anywhere
+ - ?	every	everybody/everyone <i>(all the people)</i>	everything <i>(all the things)</i>	everywhere <i>(in all the places)</i>

❖ **Some** is normally used in a positive sentence before uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns:

*There's **some** cheese left.*

Some is also used in questions when we want to make an offer, a request or when we expect a positive answer:

*Would you like **some** hot chocolate?*

*Could I have **some** cake, please?*

*Did you buy **some** oranges? (=I expect you bought.)*

❖ **Any** is normally used before uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns in questions:

*Are there **any** more apples?*

Any and its compounds can be used after **if** in a positive sentence:

*I doubt if **anyone** can help me.*

Any can also be used in positive sentences meaning **it doesn't matter when/which/who/where**:

*You can come **any** day you want.*

*You can go **anywhere** you want.*

❖ **No/Not any** are used before plural countable nouns or uncountable nouns in negations:

*There is **no** cheese left. or There **isn't any** cheese left.*

Any is always used after negative words (*hardly, never, without, seldom, rarely*):

*There's hardly **any** food left.*

❖ **Every** is used before singular countable nouns. **Every** and its compounds take a verb in the singular:

***Every** student has a task. (= all the students)*

***Everything** is ready for the wedding. (= all the things)*

❖ The above mentioned rules apply to the compounds of **some/any/no/every**:

*There's **someone** in the office.*

The Possessive Case of Nouns

To show possession, we can use both the *of + noun* and *the possessive case*. English nouns denoting living beings (and some nouns denoting lifeless things) have two cases the *common case* and the *possessive case*.

To make the possessive case of nouns in writing, we add 's (*apostrophe s*) to singular nouns and to irregular plurals that don't end in -s:

Philip's car, the women's hats

We add ' (an apostrophe) to regular plurals (which end in -s):

the boys' football boots

the girls' room

the Carters' house

<i>possessive's</i> is used:	<i>of + noun</i> is used:
<p>1. for people and animals: <i>Tom's sister</i> <i>the cat's tail</i></p>	<p>1. for things, ideas: <i>the name of the book</i> <i>the handle of the bag</i></p>
<p>2. for a group of people and organizations: <i>the team's success</i> <i>the company's decision</i></p>	<p>2. for a group of people and organizations: <i>the success of the team</i> <i>the decision of the company</i></p>
<p>3. for places: <i>the city's streets</i> <i>the world's population</i> <i>Kyiv's parks</i></p>	<p>3. for places: <i>the streets of the city</i> <i>the population of the world</i> <i>the parks of Kyiv</i></p>
	<p>When we are talking about a process, or a change over time only this construction is possible: <i>the reconstruction of the airport</i></p>

4. with time expressions: <i>yesterday's newspaper</i> <i>tomorrow's meeting</i> <i>Monday's lesson</i>	
5. with periods of time, distance, weight: <i>ten minutes' walk</i> <i>three miles' trip</i> <i>nine kilos' bag</i>	

Notes:

❖ We can use 's after more than one noun:

Peter and Mary's wedding

Mr and Mrs John's house

❖ To make the possessive form of names ending in -s we can add either ' or 's:

It's Derek Jones' (or Derek Jones's) new sports car.

❖ The noun following a possessive form can be left out when we talk about someone's home or some shops and services, e.g. *the newsagent's, the chemist's, the hairdresser's*:

We're going to Linda's for the evening. (= Linda's home)

I must go to the butcher's this morning. (= the butcher's shop)

We also usually leave out the noun when the meaning is clear in cases like:

"Whose hat is this?" – "Richard's." (rather than Richard's hat.)

This is the so-called **absolute possessive**.

❖ We use *of* + **possessive case/possessive pronoun** when there is a determiner (*this, some, etc.*) before the noun:

That's a poem of Steve's. (= one of Steve's poem)

They have some books of mine. (= some of my books)

❖ When the noun is a long noun phrase, we prefer to use *of* + **noun**:

What is the name of the man who phoned you?

Special Subject-Verb Agreement Rules

1. Phrases and clauses which come between the subject and the verb do not change the number of the subject:

The picture of his classmates pleases him.

2. Some pronouns take singular verbs even though the pronouns may seem plural in meaning. These pronouns include:

<i>anybody</i>	<i>nobody</i>	<i>somebody</i>	<i>everybody</i>	<i>each</i>
<i>anyone</i>	<i>none</i>	<i>someone</i>	<i>everyone</i>	<i>either</i>
<i>anything</i>	<i>nothing</i>	<i>something</i>	<i>everything</i>	<i>neither</i>

Everybody likes this pie.

3. When subjects are joined by *either/or*, *neither/nor*, *not only/but also*, the verb agrees with the closer subject:

*Not only the teacher but also the students **are going** to the conference.*

4. When subjects are joined by *and* or by *both/and*, they take a plural verb:

*Both Ann and Fred **are coming** tonight.*

5. *None*, *all*, *some*, *any*, *most*, *majority* and other similar expressions can take either a singular or plural verb depending on the noun that comes after them:

*None of the sugar **was** eaten. None of the students **were** pleased.*

6. *Several*, *both*, *many*, *few* are plural words which need plural verbs:

*Few **were** present at the last meeting.*

7. *A number of* requires a plural verb. *The number of* requires a singular verb:

*A number of my friends **were** here last night.*

*The number of books **is** limited.*

8. In sentences beginning with *it*, the verb should be singular:

*It **is** his problems at work that are bothering him.*

9. In sentences beginning with *there* or *here*, the verb agrees with the real subject which comes after the verb:

*Here **are** the pictures you wanted.*

10. *A pair of*, *a flock of*, *a herd of* and other expressions indicating group of things or animals take singular verbs even though nouns used with them will be plural:

*A pair of swans **mates** for life.*

11. The verbs in relative clauses agree with the nouns that their head relative words replace:

*The professor and the students, who **were working** together, wrote this article.*

12. Some nouns which look plural are really singular and take singular verbs. These words include: *news*, *politics*, *mathematics*, etc.:

*Linguistics **is** his major.*

13. Some nouns which look singular are really plural and take plural verbs. These nouns include those for which the singular and the plural form are the same:

*The magazine series **are** all located in the reference section of the library.*

*This television series **is** a popular one.*

14. Expressions showing quantities of time, money, weight, and volume look plural but take singular verbs:

*Three days **is** enough time to finish this project.*

15. Nouns that refer to a country or a nationality can be singular or plural. When one of these words refers to a language, it is singular; when to the people of a country, it is plural:

French is a difficult language.

The French are interesting people.

The Article

The article is a structural part of speech used as a determiner with nouns. There are two articles in Modern English: the **indefinite** article and the **definite** article.

The indefinite article is used only with nouns in the singular and has the forms **a** and **an**. The form **a** is used before words beginning with a consonant sound, e.g. *a book* /ə'buk/, *a university* /ə ju:nɪ'vɜ:sɪtɪ/.

The form **an** is used before words beginning with a vowel sound, e.g. *an apple* /ən'æpl/, *an hour* /ən'aʊə/. This article is usually unstressed and pronounced /ə/, /ən/; when stressed it is pronounced /æn/.

The definite article has one graphic form **the**, which is pronounced in two ways: /ði/ before a vowel sound, e.g. *the apple* /ði 'æpl/, and /ðə/ before a consonant sound, e.g. *the book* /ðə 'buk/. The use of the definite article shows that a particular object is meant.

These two articles are related to other determiners in the following way: **the** = *this, that, the same*; **a (an)** = *some, any, such*.

The absence of articles (sometimes called “**zero**” article) with class nouns in the plural, with abstract nouns and nouns of material has grammatical significance: it shows that the nouns are used in a general sense.

The Use of the Indefinite Article with Class Nouns

Class nouns are used with the indefinite article:

1. When the speaker mentions a noun (which is countable) for the first time:

For lunch I usually have a sandwich and an apple.

It is also used in sentences beginning with “**there is/was**”:

There is a newspaper on the table.

2. When the speaker presents the object expressed by the noun as belonging to a certain class. In this case the indefinite article has the meaning of “**який-небудь**”, “**якийсь**”, “**один**”, “**деякий**”:

A man and a woman are sitting opposite us.

We saw a house with a lawn in front of it.

In the plural we can use **some, a few, several** instead of **a/an** or no article is used in this case.

*(Some) men and (a few) women are sitting opposite us.
I like the room because there are flowers in it.*

3. With a predicative noun, when the speaker states that the object denoted by the noun belongs to a certain class (it is one of a class and has the meaning of “**один з багатьох**”):

My husband is a sailor.

Tom is a very nice person.

In the plural neither the article nor the pronoun **some** is used:

They are good children, no doubt.

4. When the noun is used in a general sense. The article has the meaning of “**every**” and indicates that the following noun denotes a typical member of a class:

A cat is a domestic animal. (= Every cat is a domestic animal.)

In this case plural nouns are used without any articles:

Cats are domestic animals.

5. There are cases when the indefinite article preserves its old original meaning of “**one**”:

An hour in the morning is worth two in the evening.

This meaning is generally found with:

❖ nouns denoting time, measure and weight:

A week or two passed.

I'll come back in a minute.

❖ in certain expressions of quantity:

a lot of, a couple, a great many, etc.

❖ in the pattern **a...of** with possessives, as in:

She's a colleague of mine.

That's a friend of Bill's.

❖ after a negative **not**:

not a word, not a thought, etc.

❖ in some set-phrases: *one at a time, at a draught*

❖ the numerals **hundred, thousand, million** and the nouns **dozen, score**:

My new car cost a thousand pounds.

❖ in expressions of price, speed, ratio, etc.:

5p a kilo

four times a day

10p a dozen

60 kilometers an hour (an = per)

However, we use **one** rather than **a/an** if we want to emphasize that we are talking about only one person or thing rather than two or more:

Do you want one sandwich or more?

Are you staying just one night?

With nouns in the plural **some** is used:

Oliver kept silence for some minutes.

Note 1. We use **one**, not **a/an** in the pattern **one...other/another**:

Close one eye, and then the other.

Bees carry pollen from one plant to another.

Note 2. We use **one** with the words **day**, **week**, **month**, **year**, **night**, **winter**, etc. or with specific day or month to say when something happened to mean a particular, but unspecified day, evening, winter, etc.:

One summer, our family decided to go to the Crimea.

We can use **one day** to refer to the future:

One day, you will regret this.

6. Before singular countable nouns after **such** and in exclamations after **what**:

What a lovely day today!

It's such an interesting idea, isn't it?

But: What pretty girls!

7. Nouns with the indefinite article are used after **quite** and **rather**:

It's quite a long story and not a nice one.

He was rather a curious man to look at.

Sometimes **quite** and **rather** can be placed after the indefinite article (especially in AmE):

He is a rather clever man.

It's a quite important problem.

8. Nouns with the indefinite article follow **many** (the verb is used in the singular):

Many an evening he sat staring at the fire.

9. The indefinite article is also used in various descriptions:

He's got a long face and a turned up nose.

The Use of the Definite Article with Class Nouns

The definite article is used both with singular and plural nouns.

Class nouns are used with the definite article:

1. When the speaker mentions a noun for the second time:

For lunch I had a sandwich and an apple. The sandwich wasn't very nice.

2. When the speaker and the hearer know what particular object is meant. No special indication is necessary:

What do you think of the table? (= the table we are looking at)

How did you like the play?

3. When the speaker uses an attribute pointing out a particular object:

This is the house that Jack built.

4. When the situation itself makes the object definite and when the speaker wants to talk about something that is associated with an earlier item:

The wedding looked dismal. The bride was too old and the bridegroom was too young.

I went to the window again to try to smash the glass. (= the glass in the window)

5. When the noun denotes the object or group of objects, which is unique or considered to be unique.

Here are some words, which belong to this group:

<i>the devil</i>	<i>the north pole</i>	<i>the solar system</i>	<i>the universe</i>
<i>the earth</i>	<i>the planets</i>	<i>the south pole</i>	<i>the world</i>
<i>the equator</i>	<i>the pope</i>	<i>the stars</i>	
<i>the moon</i>	<i>the sky</i>	<i>the sun</i>	

The sun was getting warmer.

6. With nouns used in a generic sense. A noun becomes a composite image (збірний образ) of the class and is used to talk about the general features and characteristics of a class of things:

The telephone was invented in the 19th century.

The tragedy and the comedy first appeared in Greece.

Note. Groups of nouns which are used generically: names of animals, plants, professions and occupations, collective nouns denoting social groups, scientific terms, etc.:

The verb is a part of speech.

The noun **people** is used with the definite article when the idea of collectivity is emphasized (meaning “all the persons forming a state”). When this noun means “persons, human beings in general”, it has no article:

The Ukrainian people are very hospitable.

People often believe in fairy tales.

A noun used in a generic sense should not be confused with a noun used in a general sense:

The	1. <i><u>The lion</u> is a wild animal.</i> 2. <i><u>Conan Doyle</u> is a master of <u>the detective story</u>.</i>	The emphasizes the class itself , without regard for concrete representatives of the class.
A	1. <i><u>A lion</u> is a wild animal.</i> 2. <i><u>A detective story</u> helps to while away the time.</i>	A emphasizes an individual representative of a class. It has the sense of any or every .
No article	1. <i><u>Lions</u> are wild animals.</i> 2. <i><u>Detective stories</u> are very popular with people.</i>	The plural form without an article emphasizes all the representatives of this class.

7. When nouns are modified by adjectives in the superlative degree and by ordinal numerals:

Mary had the softest voice in the class.

8. With nouns in word-groups the first component of which is *some*, *many*, *none*, *most* and the second – a noun with the preposition *of*. Often, *of the* makes the situation specific:

Most of the students looked both angry and uncomfortable.

9. When nouns are modified by adjectives which are used to identify unique things:

I began the last section of the book.

Here is a list of adjectives, which are used in this way:

<i>following</i>	<i>next</i>	<i>present</i>	<i>same</i>	<i>usual</i>
<i>last</i>	<i>only</i>	<i>principal</i>	<i>sole</i>	<i>wrong</i>
<i>main</i>	<i>opposite</i>	<i>right</i>	<i>ultimate</i>	<i>past</i>

Note 1. The indefinite article can be used before “*only*” when it is used in the expressions “only child”, “only son”, and “only daughter”:

I was an only child.

Note 2. “*Next*” and “*last*” are commonly used in time expressions without **the**:

I’m flying next week. I saw them last month.

10. With substantivized adjectives and participles.

A combination of the definite article and substantivized adjective can be used to refer to all the people with that characteristic. “The poor” means people who are poor.

Many adjectives can be used in this way; here are some common ones:

<i>aged</i>	<i>educated</i>	<i>injured</i>	<i>poor</i>	<i>uneducated</i>
<i>blind</i>	<i>elderly</i>	<i>living</i>	<i>powerful</i>	<i>unemployed</i>
<i>brave</i>	<i>free</i>	<i>mute</i>	<i>rich</i>	<i>weak</i>
<i>dead</i>	<i>handicapped</i>	<i>needy</i>	<i>sick</i>	<i>wealthy</i>
<i>deaf</i>	<i>homeless</i>	<i>old</i>	<i>starving</i>	<i>wounded</i>
<i>disabled</i>	<i>hungry</i>	<i>oppressed</i>	<i>strong</i>	<i>young</i>

Note. They behave like nouns in the plural and are followed by a plural verb:

The aged have many problems with health.

11. With collective nouns denoting social groups:

The workers have nothing to lose.

12. With nationality words when referring to nations or racial groups:

The Chinese have their own version of this proverb.

It seems to me that the British are too often their own worst critics.

When separate representative are meant, the definite article is not used:

Italians are good singers.

Note. These words always begin with a capital letter; and they are followed by the plural form of a verb even if they do not look plural.

13. At the beginning of stories, in titles of stories and novels:

“The Enemy”, “The Letter”.

This is a stylistic device. The author indicates in this way that the reader will shortly be told more about these things.

The Use of Articles with Class Nouns Modified by Attributes

In accordance with their role in the choice of articles attributes may be divided into **particularizing** (or **limiting**) and **descriptive**.

A **particularizing attribute** is used to single out an object from all the objects of the class, to point out one particular object or group of objects. The use of a particularizing attribute implies the idea of “*мой, який*”; “*саме мої*”; “*мої саме*”. It makes the noun definite. So the definite article is used with this kind of attribute:

Look at picture 5 at the top of page 43.

I want to get back to the hotel where he was staying.

Where is the book I gave you last week?

He knocked at the door of a very neat house.

A **descriptive attribute** is used to describe an object or to give some additional information about it. This kind of attribute does not single out an object (or a group of objects) but only narrows the class to which it belongs:

He wrote a novel.

He wrote a good novel.

He wrote a good historical novel.

In a fortnight I got a long letter, which I considered odd.

The Use of Articles with Material Nouns

1. With nouns of material (substances) used in a general sense, when a certain material as such is meant, no article is used:

I like coffee, I don't drink tea.

2. Nouns of substances modified by a descriptive attribute are used with the zero article as well. A descriptive attribute only narrows the notion denoted by a noun without specifying it:

There was not a single thing made of real wood in the room: everything was made of metal and plastic.

3. When a definite part of the substance is meant (when the noun is modified by a particularizing attribute or is made definite by the situation), the definite article is used:

The tea is too hot. I can't drink it.

The meat you prepared yesterday was very delicious.

4. When an indefinite part of the substance is meant, **some** is used:

We took some bread and cheese with us, and got some milk.

5. Nouns of material denoting different sorts of material are countable and the articles are used according to the general use of articles with class nouns.

Names of materials become countable nouns in the following cases:

❖ when various sorts of food products are meant:

We can buy different cheeses here.

❖ when a portion of food or drink is meant:

If you want to please the boy, buy him an ice-cream.

We went into the cafe and I ordered two coffees.

6. Some collective nouns denoting a group of objects thought of as a whole, behave like names of substances. Among them are *furniture, equipment, machinery, crockery, hardware, silverware, china, luggage, baggage*, etc. Such nouns follow the rules of the use of articles for names of substances:

I need furniture.

The furniture which I bought a few days ago was very expensive.

The Use of Articles with Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns fall into two classes: **countables** and **uncountables**.

The use of articles with countable abstract nouns does not differ from their use with countable concrete nouns – in the singular countable abstract nouns are used with the indefinite or definite article; in the plural they are used without any article or with the definite article:

He told the child a story.

He told the child stories.

The child knew the story he told.

The child knew the stories he told.

The Use of Articles with Uncountable Abstract Nouns

1. As a general rule, uncountable abstract nouns are used without any article:

There was silence for a few moments.

Light was coming into the cellar from somewhere.

2. The definite article is used with uncountable nouns when they are modified by a particularizing attribute or when the situation makes the idea definite. The definite article is used here to denote a particular instance of the notion expressed by the noun:

Andrew was the first to break the silence.

The silence in the room was oppressive.

The light was shaded; his mother was sitting in the corner of the room.

3. The definite article is also found with substantivized adjectives denoting abstract notions: **the ordinary, the average, the beautiful, the unusual, the supernatural, the extravagant, the unknown, the regrettable, the normal, the unbearable**, etc.:

“You shouldn’t think you’re something out of the ordinary”, she said.

“Do you believe in the supernatural?”, he asked.

To this group also belong nouns always used with the definite article as ***the present, the past, the future, the singular, the plural***:

He is certain nothing will happen in the near future.

He told strange stories of the past.

Note. Mark the difference in meaning between the expressions ***in future*** (надалі), i.e. from this time on, and ***in the future*** (у майбутньому), i.e. after a certain period of time passes:

I hope in future you’ll be more careful.

Everybody thinks he will find a good job in the future.

4. Abstract nouns can be used with the indefinite article. In this case the abstract noun denotes a certain kind (відтінок) of a quality, feeling, state, etc. The noun nearly always has a descriptive attribute:

There was a reflective silence.

There was a bitterness in her voice.

5. Sometimes an uncountable abstract noun is used with an attribute and yet has no article. In some cases the attribute does not bring out a special aspect of the notion expressed by the noun. The attribute may express:

- ❖ degree or extent (***great, perfect, sufficient, huge, tremendous, immense, sheer, complete, endless, major*** and some others): *immense joy, great success;*
- ❖ time and historical periods (***modern, ancient, eternal, daily, contemporary, further, final, original***): *modern art, further discussion, ancient history;*
- ❖ nationality (***English, French***, etc.): *Italian music, French poetry;*
- ❖ position or locality (***London, world, outside, inner, local, internal***, etc.): *inner vision, inside information;*
- ❖ authenticity or reliability (***real, genuine, authentic, symbolic, true, solid, false*** and some others): *real freedom, true friendship;*
- ❖ social characteristic (***Soviet, bourgeois, capitalist, racial, religious***, etc.): *racial segregation, feudal law;*
- ❖ genres or trends in art (***dramatic, theatrical, classical, romantic, detective***, etc.): *romantic prose, detective literature;*
- ❖ man’s social and spiritual life (***social, public, political, intellectual, spiritual, moral, mental, reasonable, personal***, etc.): *public recognition, human philosophy;*
- ❖ man’s manner or behaviour (***polite, formal, nervous, serious***, etc.): *nervous attitude, formal behavior;*
- ❖ recurrent or going on without stopping phenomena (***continual, continuous, constant, incessant***, etc.): *constant displeasure;*
- ❖ there are also some other adjectives of different meaning (***good, bad, free***,

critical, ordinary, plain, human, etc.): ordinary honesty, human psychology.

As these attributes do not express a special aspect, the nouns modified by them are used without any article:

I have perfect confidence in him.

She has great experience in her work.

They talked about modern poetry.

It's three o'clock by Kyiv time.

Note. The definite article is used with the combinations *French poetry, modern art, American literature, German philosophy* if there is a descriptive attribute, as in *the French poetry of the 19th century*.

6. Some nouns are never used with the indefinite article. They are nouns of verbal character denoting actions, activity, and process, such as **advice, assistance, admiration, guidance, permission, progress, recognition, research, torture, work, information, approval, concern, trade**, and some others.

This rule is also applied to the following nouns: **weather, money, news, luck, fun, nature, health, nonsense, evidence, bliss, breeding, cunning**, and some others:

I am not sure whether it is good news or bad.

He was anxiously waiting for permission to begin his experiment.

She was making great progress.

They promised Jackson further assistance.

Note. Although the above-mentioned nouns are never used with the indefinite article, they can be used with the definite article:

He told me of the progress he was making.

The news was so bad that she said she would not see anyone that night.

What is the weather like today?

7. The nouns **pity, shame, disgrace, pleasure, relief, comfort, disappointment** are always used with the indefinite article in the following constructions:

❖ in sentences with the formal **it** as subject when they are used as predicative of the main clause:

It's a pity. It's a shame.

❖ in exclamatory sentences after **what**:

What a disgrace!

Order of Adjectives

Adjectives describe nouns. They have the same form in the singular and the plural, e.g. *a beautiful girl – two beautiful girls*.

There are two types of adjectives.

Opinion adjectives describe what we think of someone or something, e.g. *beautiful, great, cheap, lovely*.

Fact adjectives describe what someone or something really is, e.g. *short, long, red, round*. Opinion adjectives go before fact adjectives:

You live in a nice big house.

When you use more than one adjective to express your opinion, an adjective with a more general meaning such as “**good**”, “**bad**”, “**nice**”, or “**lovely**” usually comes before an adjective with a more specific meaning:

It's a nice clean shirt.

If you use two or more fact adjectives, you normally put them in the following order:

1. **Size** (*large, big, small*)
2. **Length, height, weight** (*heavy, light, long, tall, short*)
3. **Age** (*young, old, modern*)
4. **Shape** (*round, square, triangular*)
5. **Colour** (*red, blue, green*)
6. **Origin** (*Spanish, Chinese, Ukrainian*)
7. **Material** (*leather, glass, wooden*)
8. **Purpose (used for/be about)** (*private, historical, writing*).

Opinion adjectives		Fact adjectives								Noun
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
general	specific	size	length height weight	age	shape	colour	origin	material	purpose	

Adjectives of character and emotion are used after adjectives of physical description, e.g. *She is a tall shy girl.*

You usually put comparative and superlative adjectives in front of other adjectives, e.g. *This is the largest round table I've ever seen.*

❖ The words **fast**, **hard**, **late** are both adjectives and adverbs. When they are used before nouns they are adjectives, when after verbs – they are adverbs:

Adjectives:	Adverbs:
<i>Ann is a hard worker.</i>	<i>Ann works hard.</i>
<i>He is late for school every morning.</i>	<i>He gets up late every morning.</i>
<i>Jack is a very fast runner.</i>	<i>Jack can run very fast.</i>

❖ There are many pairs of adjectives ending in **-ing** and **-ed**. Someone is **-ed** if something or someone is **-ing**. Or, if something is **-ing**, it makes you **-ed**.

*Tom is **bored** because his job is **boring**.*

*Mary's job is **tiring**, so she is **tired**.*

Degrees of Comparison

Adjectives	Positive	Comparative (<i>than</i>)	Superlative (<i>in/of</i>)
of one syllable add -er/-est	short thin large	shorter thin <u>ner</u> larger	<i>the</i> shortest <i>the</i> thin <u>nest</u> <i>the</i> largest
of two syllables ending in -er, -le, -y, -ow add -er/-est	heavy shallow clever	heav <u>ier</u> shallower cleverer	<i>the</i> heav <u>iest</u> <i>the</i> shallowest <i>the</i> cleverest
of two syllables with stress on the second syllable add -er/-est	polite severe complete	polit <u>er</u> severer complet <u>er</u>	<i>the</i> polit <u>est</u> <i>the</i> severest <i>the</i> complet <u>est</u>
of two and more syllables take more/most	special attractive nervous	more special more attractive more nervous	<i>the</i> most special <i>the</i> most attractive <i>the</i> most nervous
ending in -ed and -ing take more/most	tired boring	more tired more boring	<i>the</i> most tired <i>the</i> most boring
used only predicatively take more/most	afraid aware	more afraid more aware	<i>the</i> most afraid <i>the</i> most aware

❖ Certain adjectives form their comparative and superlative in both ways, either by adding **-er/-est** to the positive form or taking **more/most**. Some of them are: *clever, friendly, gentle, narrow, polite, quiet, simple, stupid*, etc.

e.g. *simple – simpler – the simplest* **or** *simple – more simple – the most simple*

❖ Adjectives ending in mute **-e** drop it and add **-er/-est**:

e.g. *white – whiter – the whitest*

❖ Adjectives ending in **-y** after a consonant drop **-y** and add **-ier/-iest**:

e.g. *happy – happier – the happiest*

❖ In one syllable adjectives final consonants are doubled after short vowels:

e.g. *fat – fatter – the fattest*

Irregular Forms

good	better	the best	гарний, хороший
bad	worse	the worst	поганий
old	older (age) elder (family order)	the oldest the eldest	старий
far	farther (distance) further (order)	the farthest the furthest	далекий, далеко
much, many	more	the most	багато

little, few	less (uncountable) fewer (countable)	the least the fewest	маленький, мало
near	nearer	the nearest (distance) the next (order)	близький, близько
late	later (time) latter (order)	the latest (time) the last (order)	пізній, пізно останній

Note. In emphatic constructions different intensifiers can be used:

1) **a lot, much, still, far, pretty, extremely** + comparative degree:

He is a lot better.

I'm pretty tired.

2) **by far, possible, imaginable** + superlative degree:

This is by far the best teacher.

This is the most difficult task possible.

The Verb

The verb is a part of speech which denotes an action. The verb has the following grammatical categories: **person, number, tense, aspect, voice** and **mood**.

Verbs may be **transitive** and **intransitive**.

Verbs have **finite** forms which can be used as the predicate of a sentence and **non-finite** forms which cannot be used as the predicate of a sentence.

According to their morphological structure verbs are divided into:

❖ **simple**, e.g. *read, live, speak*;

❖ **derived**, having affixes, e.g. *magnify, fertilize, captivate, undo, decompose*;

❖ **compound**, consisting of two stems, e.g. *daydream, browbeat, picklock*;

❖ **composite**, consisting of a verb and a postposition of adverbial origin, e.g. *sit down, go away, give up*.

The basic forms of the verb in Modern English are: **the Infinitive, the Past Indefinite** and **Participle II**: *to speak – spoke – spoken*. According to the way in which the Past Indefinite and Participle II are formed, verbs are divided into **regular** verbs, **irregular** verbs, and **mixed** verbs.

According to the syntactic function of verbs, which depends on the extent to which they retain, weaken or lose their meaning, they are divided into **notional** verbs, **auxiliary** verbs and **link** verbs.

a) **Notional verbs** are those which have a full meaning of their own and can be used without any additional words as a simple predicate. Here belong such verbs as *to write, to read, to speak, to know*, etc.:

I read and write very quickly.

b) **Auxiliary verbs** are those which have lost their meaning and are used only as

form words, thus having only a grammatical function. They are used in analytical forms. Here belong such verbs as *to do, to have, to be, shall, will, should, would*:

I don't speak German. He has read this book twice.

c) **Link verbs** are verbs which have partially lost their meaning and are used in the compound nominal predicate:

They are very good people.

He suddenly turned pale.

In different contexts the same verb can be used as a notional verb and an auxiliary verb or a link verb:

I do lessons every day. (notional)

Do they speak any foreign language? (auxiliary)

Peter is in the classroom. (notional)

John is listening to music. (auxiliary)

Mark is a sailor. (link)

d) There is a special group of verbs which cannot be used without additional words, though they have a meaning of their own. These are **modal verbs** such as *can, may, must, ought, etc.*:

I can cook perfectly.

Present Simple = Present Indefinite

The Present Indefinite is formed from the infinitive without the particle *to*. In the third person singular the ending -s is added. The interrogative and the negative forms are formed by means of the Present Indefinite of the auxiliary verb *to do* and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle *to*.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I work	Do I work?	I do not (don't) work
He works <u>s</u>	Does he work?	He does not (doesn't) work
She works <u>s</u>	Does she work?	She does not (doesn't) work
It works <u>s</u>	Does it work?	It does not (doesn't) work
We work	Do we work?	We do not (don't) work
You work	Do you work?	You do not (don't) work
They work	Do they work?	They do not (don't) work

The Present Indefinite is used:

1. To express facts which are always true, general statements or a universal truth:

The earth goes round the sun.

Domestic animals return to their homes.

2. To express habitual or repeated actions in present (*usually, sometimes, often, rarely/seldom, never, always, every..., once/twice a week*):

We often see him in the evening.
She never drinks coffee.

3. To express permanent actions. Such actions give a general characteristic to a person:

She has skills in her work.
She sings and plays the piano beautifully.

4. When the action as such attracts the attention of the speaker and the idea of its progress becomes unimportant at the moment:

You talk too much.
I repeat, you have to stay.

5. With verbs that perform the action they describe (performative verbs), e.g. *to accept, to advise, to apologize, to deny, to guarantee, to inform, to predict, to promise, to recommend, to suggest, to suppose*, etc.:

I promise I will call on Monday. (promise)
I refuse to believe in it. (refusal)

6. To describe the events in a narrative, when the events are summarized. To describe what happens in a film or book:

In Chapter 1, Susan meets David, and agrees to go to the school dance with him.

7. With **Stative Verbs** (verbs describing states, which are not used in the Continuous), e.g. *to agree, to love, to like, to belong, to contain, to consist, to cost, to hear, to know*, etc. to describe a state at the moment of speaking:

Now I know what you mean.
I see she understands me perfectly.

8. To express future actions according to timetables, programmes (for public transport, theatre, etc.):

My train leaves at 11.30 on Tuesday.

The Present Indefinite is used with the following time indicators:

every day, usually, often, always, never, sometimes, from time to time, seldom=rarely, at weekends, on Sundays, several times/once/twice a week, as a rule.

Present Continuous = Present Progressive

The Present Continuous is formed by means of the Present Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I am working	Am I working?	I am not working
He is working	Is he working?	He is not working
She is working	Is she working?	She is not working
It is working	Is it working?	It is not working
We are working	Are we working?	We are not working
You are working	Are you working?	You are not working
They are working	Are they working?	They are not working

The Present Continuous is used:

1. To express actions which are in progress, in their development *now, at the/this moment*:

It is raining now. I can't go out.

We are not speaking at the moment.

2. To express habits over a period of time, temporary habits. The action is not necessarily happening at the time of speaking:

He is writing a new play now. I think it will be successful.

I am reading a very interesting historical novel. It's about the Second World War.

3. To show that the situation is temporary (*at this period, currently, this year, this season*):

Banks are lending more money these days to encourage new businesses.

I'm living with some friends until I find a flat.

4. To express changes, developments and trends over a period of time:

The climate is getting warmer.

The prices are going up.

5. To express anger or irritation at a repeated action, to emphasize that something is done repeatedly, too/very often, all the time (*always, constantly, continually*):

You are always coming late!

He is constantly losing his keys!

6. To describe background events when we give commentaries, instructions, tell a story or a joke:

She goes up. She looks tired. She is carrying a bag full of shopping.

7. With some **Stative Verbs** when there is a change of meaning and they become **dynamic verbs** (denote an action):

I am thinking of you.

She is having breakfast.

8. To express future actions which are fixed personal arrangements made in advance:

Peter is getting married next month.

We are flying to Paris tomorrow.

9. With **never ... again** to show the intention not to do something in future:

I'm never speaking to you again.

I'm never driving again.

The Present Continuous is used with the following time indicators: **now, at the moment, at present, nowadays, still, these days, this year/month, today, at this period, currently, always, constantly, continually.**

Stative Verbs

Verbs describing a permanent state (**Stative Verbs**) do not normally have continuous forms. These are:

- ❖ verbs of the senses: **see, hear, smell, feel, taste**, etc. We often use **can** or **could** with these verbs, e.g. *Can you see that tall boy over there?*
- ❖ verbs of opinion: **agree, believe, consider**, etc.
- ❖ verbs of emotions: **feel, forgive, hate, like, love**, etc.
- ❖ other verbs: **appear, seem, be, belong, fit** (= be the right shape and size for sth), **have** (= possess), **know, look** (= appear), **need, prefer, require, want, weigh, wish**, etc:

He knows where Peter is. (not ~~is knowing~~)

Some Stative Verbs (**see, smell, taste, feel, think, have**, etc.) have continuous forms but there is a difference in meaning.

State	Action
<i>I think she's rich.</i> (= I believe)	<i>I'm thinking about your plan.</i> (= I'm considering)
<i>The milk tastes awful.</i> (= it has a bad flavour)	<i>He's tasting the sauce; it might need some salt.</i> (= he's trying its flavour)
<i>He has a pet dog.</i> (= he owns)	<i>He's having dinner now.</i> (= he's eating)
<i>This cloth feels like velvet.</i> (= has the texture)	<i>She's feeling her way in the dark.</i> (= she's finding her way)
<i>I see you're in trouble.</i> (= I understand)	<i>I'm seeing my lawyer tonight.</i> (= I'm visiting)
<i>The kitchen smells of burnt meat.</i> (= has the smell)	<i>Why are you smelling your food?</i> (= trying the smell of)
<i>He comes from Spain.</i> (= he was born in)	<i>He's coming from Spain.</i> (= he's travelling from)
<i>Your hair looks great.</i> (= it appears)	<i>She's looking at some old photographs.</i> (= she's examining)
<i>The baby weighs 5 kilos.</i> (= it is)	<i>I'm weighing myself on my new scales.</i> (= I'm finding out my weight)

<i>These shoes fit me perfectly.</i> (= they are the right size)	<i>We're fitting a new carpet in the hall.</i> (= laying)
<i>I love/enjoy good films.</i> (= I like in general)	<i>I'm loving/enjoying this film.</i> (= I like specifically)
<i>He appears to be working.</i> (= he seems to be)	<i>The opera singer is appearing on stage tonight.</i> (= he will make an appearance)
<i>Peter is naughty.</i> (= his character is bad.)	<i>Suzy is being very naughty.</i> (= she is misbehaving)

Here are some of the many **Stative Verbs** in English:

❖ **mental & emotional states:**

to believe	вірити	to (dis)like	(не)любити
to prefer	надавати перевагу	to feel* (have an opinion)	мати передчуття
to doubt	сумніватися	to love	любити
to realise	усвідомлювати	to want	хотіти
to recognize	впізнавати	to hate	ненавидіти
to suppose	припускати	to wish	бажати
to imagine	уявляти	to understand	розуміти
to remember	пам'ятати	to know	знати
to mind	мати на увазі	to find	вважати
to see*(understand)	розуміти	to consider	брати до уваги
to appreciate	цінувати	to adore	обожнювати

❖ **use of the senses:**

to appear	виявлятися	to look (seem)	здаватися
to seem	здаватися	to sound	звучати
to hear	чути	to see	бачити
to smell	пахнути	to taste	мати смак

❖ **other:**

to agree on/with	погоджуватись з	to please	радувати, догоджати
to belong to	належати до	to lack	бракувати, не мати
to consist of	складатися з	to matter	мати значення
to deny	заперечувати	to need	потребувати
to contain	включати в себе	to owe	заборгувати
to depend on	залежати від	to satisfy	задовольняти
to impress	вражати	to possess	володіти
to deserve	заслужувати	to surprise	дивувати
to fit	підходити за розм.	to weigh	мати вагу
to mean	означати	to require	потребувати
to include	включати в себе	to cost	коштувати
to involve	включати	to be	бути

Past Simple = Past Indefinite

The Past Indefinite is formed by adding **-ed** or **-d** to the stem (regular verbs), or by changing the root vowel, or in some other ways (irregular verbs). The interrogative and the negative forms are formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to do (did)** and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle **to**.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	Did I work (write)?	I didn't work (write)
He worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	Did he work (write)?	He didn't work (write)
She worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	Did she work (write)?	She didn't work (write)
It worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	Did it work (write)?	It didn't work (write)
We worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	Did we work (write)?	We didn't work (write)
You worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	Did you work (write)?	You didn't work (write)
They worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	Did they work (write)?	They didn't work (write)

The Past Indefinite is used:

1. To express a complete action or event which happened at a stated past time (*yesterday, last (week), (a week) ago, in 1998, then*):

I cleaned the room yesterday.

Last time I played tennis a week ago.

2. To express past habits or states, repeated actions in the past:

In my childhood I lived with my granny.

I always got up at six in those days.

3. To express an action which happened at a definite past time, but the time is not mentioned. This action is not connected with the present:

Shakespeare wrote a lot of plays.

My mother grew up in Scotland.

4. With **Stative Verbs** (verbs describing states, which not used in the Continuous), e.g. *to agree, to love, to like, to belong, to contain, to consist, to cost, to hear, to know*, etc:

At that moment I didn't know what to do.

We didn't agree with her.

The Past Indefinite is used with the following time indicators: *yesterday, then, when, How long ago...?, last night/week/month, three days/weeks ago, in 1997*, etc.

Used to do

Used to do means that something happened regularly in the past, but no longer happens. It describes past habits, past states or regularly repeated actions in the past, usually in contrast with the present:

I used to play football a lot, but I don't play very often now.

I used to think Peter was unfriendly, but now I see he is a nice person.

The interrogative and the negative forms are formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb *to do (did)* and the infinitive of the verb *to use* without the particle *to*.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <u>used</u> to work	Did I use to work?	I didn't use to work
He <u>used</u> to work	Did he use to work?	He didn't use to work
She <u>used</u> to work	Did she use to work?	She didn't use to work
It <u>used</u> to work	Did it use to work?	It didn't use to work
We <u>used</u> to work	Did we use to work?	We didn't use to work
You <u>used</u> to work	Did you use to work?	You didn't use to work
They <u>used</u> to work	Did they use to work?	They didn't use to work

I *used to do* something is the past. There is no present form. Use the Present Simple to talk about the present:

I used to live in a small village, but now I live in Kyiv.

There used to be four banks in our town. Now there is only one.

Note that *would* is also used to express regularly repeated actions and routines in the past, but it isn't used for states:

She used to tell me the stories. (= She would tell me the stories.)

He used to have a beard. (not would – state)

Past Continuous = Past Progressive

The Past Continuous is formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb *to be* and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I was working	Was I working?	I was not working
He was working	Was he working?	He was not working
She was working	Was she working?	She was not working
It was working	Was it working?	It was not working
We were working	Were we working?	We were not working
You were working	Were you working?	You were not working
They were working	Were they working?	They were not working

The Past Continuous is used:

1. To express an action which was in progress, in its development at a particular moment of time or period in the past:

He was playing tennis at 4.30 yesterday.

We were cleaning the flat the whole evening yesterday.

2. To express anger or irritation at a repeated action in the past, to emphasize that something was done repeatedly, too/very often, all the time (*always, constantly, continually*):

At school you were always coming late.

In his childhood he was constantly losing his keys.

3. With some **Stative Verbs** when there is a change of meaning and they become **dynamic verbs** (denote an action):

Yesterday the whole evening I was thinking of you.

She was being very naughty during the party.

4. **Was/were going to do sth** is used to express actions one intended to do but didn't do:

She was going to move to London but she decided to stay in York.

The Past Continuous is used with the following time indicators: **while, when, as, all morning/evening/day/night**, etc.

Past Simple vs Past Continuous

<i>Past Simple</i>	<i>Past Continuous</i>
1. To express several past actions which happened one after the other: <i>She came home, had dinner, did her homework and went for a walk.</i>	1. To express two or more simultaneous past actions (while/when): <i>While I was reading, my mother was watching TV.</i>
2. To express a single past action which interrupts another past action in its development: → <i>The bell rang My mother entered the room</i>	2. To show an action or activity that was in progress, and which was interrupted by another action: <i>while I was getting dressed. when I was doing my homework.</i>
3. To describe main events in a story: → <i>That funny accident happened</i>	3. To express background descriptions to events in a story: <i>while she was flying to Paris.</i>

Future Indefinite = Future Simple

The Future Indefinite is formed by means of the auxiliary verb **will** and **shall** and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle **to**. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I will/shall work	Shall/Will I work?	I will not (won't) work
He will work	Will he work?	He will not (won't) work
She will work	Will she work?	She will not (won't) work
It will work	Will it work?	It will not (won't) work
We will/shall work	Shall/Will we work?	We will not (won't) work
You will work	Will you work?	You will not (won't) work
They will work	Will they work?	They will not (won't) work

Note. We normally use **shall** only in questions with **I** and **we** to ask somebody's opinion (especially in offers and suggestions) and to ask for advice or instructions:

Shall I open the window? (= Do you want me to open the window?)

Shall we go for a walk? (= Let's go for a walk.)

The Future Indefinite is used:

1. To express decisions made at the moment of speaking:

I'm tired. I will go and have a nap.

OK, I'll see you this evening at eight.

2. To express predictions, often with **I believe, expect, hope, think**, etc:

I think it will be a difficult game.

Don't worry. Everything will be ok.

3. To express offers or willingness:

I'll give you a lift home if you like.

All right. I'll water the flowers.

4. To ask somebody to do something:

Will you please make some coffee?

Will you do me a favour?

5. To say that you or somebody refuses, promises and threats to do something:

I won't speak to you ever again!

I'll pay you back on Friday.

Don't give her advice. She won't listen.

The Future Indefinite is used with the following time indicators:

tomorrow, soon, next week/month/year, the day after tomorrow, etc.

Different Ways of Expressing the Future

We can use different ways to express the future in English. The choice depends on the situation. Here are the main forms and their uses:

1. To express future actions which are fixed personal arrangements made in advance: <i>I'm not working tomorrow.</i> <i>What are you doing this evening?</i>	Present Continuous
2. To express a future action according to timetable, programme (for public transport, theatre, etc.): <i>My train leaves at 11.30 on Tuesday.</i> <i>The football championship begins on Monday.</i>	Present Simple
3. To express plans and intentions to do something in future: <i>I'm going to phone him tomorrow.</i> <i>He is going to join a gym next week.</i>	to be going to do

4. To make on-the-spot decisions and also to offer, to refuse, to agree, to promise, to threat and to ask to do something: <i>I'll go and shut the door.</i> <i>We'll help you with your housework.</i>	Future Simple
5. To make predictions based on what we see or we know, especially when there is evidence: <i>Look at the dark clouds! It's going to rain.</i> <i>That building is going to collapse soon.</i>	to be going to do
6. To make predictions based on what we believe or think, often with <i>I believe, expect, hope, think</i> , etc: <i>I hope it won't rain tomorrow.</i> <i>I'm sure she will pass the exam easily.</i>	Future Simple
7. To express that something is going to happen very soon: <i>The train is about to leave – let's hurry.</i> <i>I am about to fall asleep. Don't bother me!</i>	to be about to do
8. To express official arrangements and orders, especially when announced: <i>The President is to visit Brussels next week.</i> <i>You are to be here by nine o'clock.</i>	to be to do
9. To show that something is going to happen immediately: <i>She is on the point of leaving.</i> <i>I am on the point of explaining.</i>	to be on the point of doing

WHEN and IF Clauses

Sentences with adverbial clauses of **time** (*when*) and **condition** (*if*) have two parts:

if/when-clause and **main clause**

If you finish work early, we will go for a walk.

We will go to the cinema when you finish work.

❖ Note that we use a comma (,) when the *if/when-clause* comes before the *main clause*.

Adverbial clauses of **time** show the time of the action expressed in the main clause. They are introduced by the following conjunctions: *when, while, whenever* (коли б не), *as, till, until, as soon as, as long as, after, before*.

Adverbial clauses of **condition** state the condition which is necessary for the realization of the action expressed in the main clause. They are introduced by the conjunctions *if, unless* (якщо не), *on condition that, as long as, in case*.

Zero and First Conditionals

The **Zero Conditional** is used to show that one action, result, etc. always follows another:

<i>if/when-clause</i>	<i>main clause</i>
Present Simple	Present Simple
<i>If/When water freezes, it turns into ice.</i> <i>When I travel by car, I'm always sick.</i>	

The **First Conditional** is used to talk about events which are possible, real or very probable in the present or future:

<i>if/when-clause</i>	<i>main clause</i>
Present Simple	Future Simple
<i>If you study hard, you will do well in the test.</i> <i>When I am in London again, I'll phone you.</i>	

Note that we use **when** for things which are **sure** to happen, and we use **if** (not **when**) for things that will **possibly** happen:

If they don't come soon, I won't wait for them. (= it's possible)

When I go shopping, I'll buy some food. (= for sure)

❖ Other structures are also possible, depending on what we want to say:

<i>if/when-clause</i>	<i>main clause</i>
Present Simple	to going to do (future)
<i>If you don't work, you are going to fail.</i> <i>When I get home, I am going to have dinner.</i>	
Present Simple	modal verbs (can/may/should)
<i>If you behave yourself, you may come.</i> <i>When you get money, you can buy a new house.</i>	
Present Simple	Imperative
<i>If you need anything, ask.</i> <i>When you have some free time, visit us.</i>	
Present Simple	Present Simple (for future)
<i>If there are no problems, the ceremony starts in time.</i> <i>When the weather is clear, my flight arrives at 7a.m.</i>	

Present Continuous	Future Simple
<i>If he is listening to me attentively,</i> <i>When our father is sleeping,</i>	<i>I will tell him an interesting story.</i> <i>I'll play computer games.</i>
Present Perfect	Future Simple
<i>If I have promised,</i> <i>When (As soon as) I have finished,</i>	<i>I will try to do my best to be in time.</i> <i>I'll phone you.</i>
Imperative	and/or + Future Simple
<i>Work hard, and you will do well in the test.</i> <i>Stop arguing, or I'll punish you.</i>	

Interrogative Sentences (Questions)

1. General Questions. (Yes/No Questions)

To form questions we put the auxiliary or modal (*can, be, will, have, etc.*) before the subject. We use *do/does* to form questions in Present Simple and *did* to form questions in Past Simple.

He is ready. → *Is he ready?*

She likes reading. → *Does she like reading?*

Ann went out yesterday. → *Did Ann go out yesterday?*

The word order in general questions:

the auxiliary or modal verb	the subject and it's attribute	the main verb	other parts of the sentence
<i>Will</i>	<i>they</i>	<i>arrive</i>	<i>tomorrow?</i>
<i>Did</i>	<i>you</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>the film?</i>
<i>May</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>use</i>	<i>your phone?</i>
<i>Does</i>	<i>she</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>to school?</i>

2. Special Questions. (Wh-questions)

Wh-questions begin with a question word (*who, what, where, why, when, whose, which, how, etc.*):

Whose cat is this? – It's Ted's.

Where did you stay? – At the Park Hotel.

When there is a preposition, it usually goes at the end of the question, though in formal English it can be put before the question word:

Who does this car belong to?

To whom does this car belong? (formal)

We normally use the following question words to ask about:

people	things/ animals/ actions	place	time	quantity	manner	reason
Who Whose Which What	What Which	Where	When How long What time How often	How many How much	How	Why

- ❖ **Who** is used without a noun to ask about people:
Who is your friend?
Who speaks English?
- ❖ **Whose** is used to express possession:
Whose gloves are these? – They're Peter's.
- ❖ **Which** is used for people, animals or things before **nouns**, **one/ones**, **of** or alone:
Which car is yours?
There are two newspapers here. Which one do you want to read?
Which of the students will come on the school trip?
Which is your bag?
- ❖ **Which** is normally used when there is a limited choice:
Which is your favourite writer – Charles Dickens or Mark Twain?
(there are only two writers to choose from (limited choice))
- ❖ **Which** can also be used with the comparative and superlative:
Which is faster, a Porsche or a Fiat?
Which is the best composition of all?
- ❖ **What** is used before a noun or alone to ask about things:
What day is it today?
What did he say?
What's this?
- ❖ **What** is also used for people, animals and things when there is an unlimited choice:
What books do you prefer reading?
(there are many books to choose from – unlimited choice)
- ❖ **What** can also be used in these patterns:
What... like?, What... for?, What colour?, What size?, What time?, What is he like?, What is it used for?, etc.
What's the weather like today?
- ❖ **What** and **which** are sometimes both possible:
What/Which day did he leave?

The word order in special questions

question word	the auxiliary or modal verb	the subject and it's attribute	the main verb	other parts of the sentence
<i>What</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>you</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>every day?</i>
<i>Where</i>	<i>did</i>	<i>he</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>yesterday?</i>
<i>When</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>your sister</i>	<i>return</i>	<i>home?</i>
<i>Where</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>you</i>	<i>waiting</i>	<i>for me?</i>

If **who**, **which**, **what** are the subject of the question, the word order is the same as in statements. If they are the object of the question, the verb is in question form.

Questions about the subject	Questions about the object
<i>Who was talking to you?</i>	<i>Who were <u>you</u> talking to?</i>
<i>Which <u>computer</u> will work best?</i>	<i>Which computer will <u>you</u> use?</i>
<i>What makes you feel happy?</i>	<i>What do <u>you</u> make with nuts?</i>
<i>How many <u>pupils</u> came to us?</i>	<i>How many pupils did <u>you</u> see?</i>
<i>Whose <u>son</u> is fond of music?</i>	<i>Whose son are <u>you</u> fond of?</i>

Indirect Questions

Indirect questions are used when we ask for information politely. They are introduced with **Do you know...?**, **Can/Could you tell me...?**, **Have you any idea...?** + question word or **if/whether**:

*Do you know **where** Peter is?*

*Could you tell me **how much** these trousers cost?*

*Have you any idea **what time** Sue will be back?*

*Do you know **if/whether** she's coming to the party?*

The word order of indirect questions is the same as in statements (**subject + verb**):

*Can you tell me **where** you bought it?*

*Can you tell me **what time** it is?*

The auxiliary verb **do** is not used in Indirect questions:

*How long **does** the journey take? → Do you know **how long** the journey takes?*

*What time **did** he leave? → Can you tell me **what time** he left?*

3. Question Tags

Question tags are short questions which we add at the end of a statement. We use them to ask for confirmation of, or agreement with, our statement:

*It's hot today, **isn't** it?*

Question tags are formed with an auxiliary verb and an appropriate pronoun. They take the same auxiliary verb as in the statement if there is one, otherwise they take **do/does** (Present Simple) or **did** (Past Simple):

*She was at home, **wasn't** she? He left late, **didn't** he?*

A positive statement is followed by a negative question tag, whereas a negative statement is followed by a positive question tag:

*She plays tennis well, **doesn't she?***

*He hasn't come yet, **has he?***

*He's always late, **isn't he?***

*She is never late, **is she?***

Question tags can be said with a rising intonation (when we are not sure and we expect an answer) or a falling intonation (when we don't expect an answer):

*He works in a bank, ↗ **doesn't he?** (not sure)*

*He looks horrible, ↘ **doesn't he?** (sure)*

❖ *Everyone/someone/anyone/no one* form their question tags with an **auxiliary verb + they**:

*Somebody should help her, **shouldn't they?***

Study the following question tags:

1. I am	aren't I?	<i>I am older than you, aren't I?</i>
2. I used to	didn't I?	<i>He used to work here, didn't he?</i>
3. Imperative	will you?/won't you? can you?/could you?	<i>Please help me, will you/won't you? can you/could you?</i>
4. Let's	shall we?	<i>Let's play tennis, shall we?</i>
5. Let me/him	will/won't you?	<i>Let him buy it, will you/won't you?</i>
6. Don't	will you?	<i>Don't do that again, will you?</i>
7. I have (possess)	haven't I?	<i>She has your book, hasn't she?</i>
8. I have	don't I?	<i>She had dinner yesterday, didn't she?</i>
9. There is/are	isn't/aren't there?	<i>There are some free seats, aren't there?</i>
10. This/That is	isn't it?	<i>That pen is Mary's, isn't it?</i>

1. Irregular Verbs

Неправильні Дієслова

	Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle	Translation
1.	abide /ə'baɪd /	abode /ə'bəʊd / abided /ə'baɪdɪd /	abode /ə'bəʊd / abided /ə'baɪdɪd /	дотримуватись, терпіти, зносити
2.	arise /ə'raɪz /	arose /ə'rəʊz /	arisen /ə'rɪzn /	виникати, з'являтися
3	awake /ə'weɪk /	awoke /ə'wəʊk / awakened /ə'weɪknd /	awaked /ə'weɪkt / awoken /ə'wəʊkn /	прокидатися, будити, пробуджувати
4	be /bi:/	was /wɒz/ were /wɜ:/	been /bi:n /	бути
5	bear /beə /	bore /bɔ:/	borne /bɔ:n / born /bɔ:n /	носити, переносити народжувати
6	beat /bi:t /	beat /bi:t /	beaten /bi:tn /	бити
7	become /bɪ'kʌm /	became /bɪ'keɪm /	become /bɪ'kʌm /	ставати, годитися, личити
8	befall /bɪ'fɔ:l /	befell /bɪ'fel /	befallen /bɪ'fɔ:ln /	траплятися
9	begin /bɪ'gɪn /	began /bɪ'gæn /	begun /bɪ'gʌn /	починати(ся)
10	bend /bend /	bent /bent /	bent /bent / bended /'bendɪd /	згинати(ся), напружувати
11	beseech /bɪ'si:tʃ /	besought /bɪ'sɔ:t /	besought /bɪ'sɔ:t /	благати, просити
12	bet /bet /	bet /bet /	bet /bet /	битися об заклад
13	bid /bɪd /	bade /beɪd / bid /bɪd /	bid /bɪd / bidden /bɪdn /	загнуздувати, стримувати
14	bind /baɪnd /	bound /baʊnd /	bound /baʊnd /	зв'язувати
15	bite /baɪt /	bit /bɪt /	bitten /bɪtn /	кусати

16	bleed /bli:d/	bled /bled/	bled /bled/	кровоточити, стікати кров'ю
17	bless /bles/	blessed /blest/ blest /blest/	blessed /blest/ blest /blest/	благословляти
18	blow /bləʊ/	blew /blu:/	blown /bləʊn/	дути
19	break /breɪk/	broke /brəʊk/	broken /brəʊkn/	ламати(ся)
20	breed /bri:d/	bred /bred/	bred /bred/	виховувати, вирощувати
21	bring /brɪŋ/	brought /brɔ:t/	brought /brɔ:t/	приносити
22	build /bɪld/	built /bɪlt/	built /bɪlt/	будувати
23	burn /bɜ:n/	burnt /bɜ:nt/ burned /bɜ:nd/	burnt /bɜ:nt/ burned /bɜ:nd/	палити, горіти
24	burst /bɜ:st/	burst /bɜ:st/	burst /bɜ:st/	лопатися, розриватися
25	bust /bʌst/	bust /bʌst/ busted /'bʌstɪd/	bust /bʌst/ busted /'bʌstɪd/	збанкрутувати, загуляти
26	buy /baɪ/	bought /bɔ:t/	bought /bɔ:t/	купувати
27	cast /kɑ:st/	cast /kɑ:st/	cast /kɑ:st/	кидати, метати
28	catch /kætʃ/	caught /kɔ:t/	caught /kɔ:t/	ловити, спіймати
29	choose /tʃu:z/	chose /tʃəʊz/	chosen /tʃəʊzn/	вибирати
30	cleave /kli:v/	clove /kləʊv/ cleft /kleft/	cloven /kləʊvn/ cleft /kleft/	розколювати, розсікати
31	cling /klɪŋ/	clung /klʌŋ/	clung /klʌŋ/	чіплятися, прилипати
32	clothe /kləʊð/	clothed /kləʊðd/	clothed /kləʊðd/	одягати
33	come /kʌm/	came /keɪm/	come /kʌm/	приходити
34	cost /kɒst/	cost /kɒst/	cost /kɒst/	коштувати
35	creep /kri:p/	crept /krept/	crept /krept/	повзати, стелитися

36	crow /krəʊ/	crowed /krəʊd/ crew /kruː/	crowed /krəʊd/	кричати кукуріку
37	cut /kʌt/	cut /kʌt/	cut /kʌt/	різати
38	deal /di:l/	dealt /delt/	dealt /delt/	мати справу з чимось
39	dig /dɪg/	dug /dʌg/	dug /dʌg/	копати
40	dive /daɪv/	dived /daɪvd/ dove /dəʊv/ (AmE)	dived /daɪvd/	пірнати
41	do /duː/	did /dɪd/	done /dʌn/	робити
42	draw /drɔː/	drew /druː/	drawn /drɔːn/	малювати, креслити
43	dream /dri:m/	dreamed /dri:md/ dreamt /dremt/	dreamed /dri:md/ dreamt /dremt/	мріяти, бачити сон
44	drink /drɪŋk/	drank /dræŋk/	drunk /drʌŋk/	пити
45	drive /draɪv/	drove /drəʊv/	driven /drɪvn/	гнати, їхати
46	dwell /dwel/	dwelt /dwelt/ dwelled /dweld/	dwelt /dwelt/ dwelled /dweld/	мешкати, жити
47	eat /i:t/	ate /et/	eaten /i:tn/	їсти
48	fall /fɔ:l/	fell /fel/	fallen /fɔ:ln/	падати
49	feed /fi:d/	fed /fed/	fed /fed/	годувати
50	feel /fi:l/	felt /felt/	felt /felt/	почувати, відчувати
51	fight /faɪt/	fought /fɔ:t/	fought /fɔ:t/	воювати, битися
52	find /faɪnd/	found /faʊnd/	found /faʊnd/	знаходити
53	flee /fliː/	fled /fled/	fled /fled/	тікати, уникати
54	fling /flɪŋ/	flung /flʌŋ/	flung /flʌŋ/	кидати(ся)
55	fly /flaɪ/	flew /fluː/	flown /fləʊn/	літати

56	forbid /fə'bid/	forbade /fə'beɪd/	forbidden /fə'bidn/	забороняти
57	forget /fə'get/	forgot /fə'gɒt/	forgotten /fə'gɒtn/	забувати
58	forgive /fə'gɪv/	forgave /fə'geɪv/	forgiven /fə'gɪvn/	прощати
59	freeze /fri:z/	froze /frəʊz/	frozen /frəʊzn/	морозити, замерзати
60	get /get/	got /gɒt/	got /gɒt/ gotten /gɒtn/ (AmE)	діставати, отримувати, одержувати
61	gild /gɪld/	gilt /gɪlt/ gilded /gɪldɪd/	gilt /gɪlt/ gilded /gɪldɪd/	золотити
62	give /gɪv/	gave /geɪv/	given /gɪvn/	давати
63	go /gəʊ/	went /went/	gone /gɒn/	йти, їхати
64	grind /graɪnd/	ground /graʊnd/	ground /graʊnd/	молоти, товкти
65	grow /grəʊ/	grew /gru:/	grown /grəʊn/	рости, вирощувати
66	hang /hæŋ/	hung /hʌŋ/ hanged /hæŋd/	hung /hʌŋ/ hanged /hæŋd/	висіти, страчувати
67	have /hæv/	had /hæd/	had /hæd/	мати
68	hear /hɪə/	heard /hɜ:d/	heard /hɜ:d/	чути
69	heave /hi:v/	heaved /hi:vd/ hove /həʊv/	heaved /hi:vd/ hove /həʊv/	підіймати, тягти, зітхати
70	hew /hju:/	hewed /hju:d/	hewed /hju:d/ hewn /hju:n/	рубати, тесати
71	hide /haɪd/	hid /hɪd/	hidden /hɪdn/	ховати(ся)
72	hit /hɪt/	hit /hɪt/	hit /hɪt/	ударяти, забитися
73	hold /həʊld/	held /held/	held /held/	тримати, держати
74	hurt /hɜ:t/	hurt /hɜ:t/	hurt /hɜ:t/	завдавати болю, боліти

75	keep /ki:p/	kept /kept/	kept /kept/	тримати, зберігати
76	kneel /ni:l/	knelt /nelt/ kneeled /ni:ld/ (AmE)	knelt /nelt/ kneeled /ni:ld/ (AmE)	стояти навколішки
77	knit /nit/	knit /nit/ knitted /'nitɪd/	knit /nit/ knitted /'nitɪd/	в'язати
78	know /nəʊ/	knew /nju:/	known /nəʊn/	знати
79	lay /leɪ/	laid /leɪd/	laid /leɪd/	класти, накривати
80	lead /li:d/	led /led/	led /led/	вести, керувати
81	lean /li:n/	leant /lent/ leaned /li:nd/	leant /lent/ leaned /li:nd/	нахилити(ся), прихилитися
82	leap /li:p/	leapt /lept/ leaped /li:pt/	leapt /lept/ leaped /li:pt/	стрибати, скакати
83	learn /lɜ:n/	learnt /lɜ:nt/ learned /lɜ:nd/	learnt /lɜ:nt/ learned /lɜ:nd/	вчити
84	leave /li:v/	left /left/	left /left/	покидати, від'їжджати
85	lend /lend/	lent /lent/	lent /lent/	позичати
86	let /let/	let /let/	let /let/	дозволяти, пускати
87	lie /laɪ/	lay /leɪ/	lain /leɪn/	лежати
88	light /laɪt/	lit /lɪt/ lighted /'laɪtɪd/	lit /lɪt/ lighted /'laɪtɪd/	освітлювати
89	lose /lu:z/	lost /lɒst/	lost /lɒst/	губити, втрачати
90	make /meɪk/	made /meɪd/	made /meɪd/	робити
91	mean /mi:n/	meant /ment/	meant /ment/	означати, мати значення
92	meet /mi:t/	met /met/	met /met/	зустрічати

93	mishear /mɪs'hiə/	misheard /mɪs'hɜ:d/	misheard /mɪs'hɜ:d/	недочути
94	mislead /mɪs'li:d/	misled /mɪs'led/	misled /mɪs'led/	вводити в оману
95	mistake /mɪ'steɪk/	mistook /mɪ'stʊk/	mistaken /mɪ'steɪkn/	помилятися
96	mow /məʊ/	mowed /məʊd/	mown /məʊn/ mowed /məʊd/	косити
97	pay /peɪ/	paid /peɪd/	paid /peɪd/	платити
98	pen /pen/	pent /pent/ penned /pend/	pent /pent/ penned /pend/	творити, писати
99	plead /pli:d/	pleaded /'pli:di:d/ pled /pled/ (AmE)	pleaded /'pli:di:d/ pled /pled/ (AmE)	просити, благати
100	prove /pru:v/	proved /pru:vd/	proved /pru:vd/ proven /'pru:vn/	доводити, засвідчувати
101	put /put/	put /put/	put /put/	покласти, ставити
102	quit /kwɪt/	quit /kwɪt/	quit /kwɪt/	кидати (роботу)
103	read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/	читати
104	rend /rend/	rent /rent/	rent /rent/	рвати, шматувати
105	rid /rɪd/	rid /rɪd/ ridded /'rɪdɪd/	rid /rɪd/ ridded /'rɪdɪd/	звільняти, позбавляти чогось
106	ride /raɪd/	rode /rəʊd/	ridden /rɪdn/	їхати верхи
107	ring /rɪŋ/	rang /ræŋ/	rung /rʌŋ/	дзвонити
108	rise /raɪz/	rose /rəʊz/	risen /rɪzn/	вставати, піднімати
109	run /rʌn/	ran /ræn/	run /rʌn/	бігти
110	saw /sɔ:/	sawed /sɔ:d/	sawn /sɔ:n/ sawed /sɔ:d/	пиляти, розпилювати

111	say /seɪ/	said /sed/	said /sed/	говорити, казати
112	see /si:/	saw /sɔ:/	seen /si:n/	бачити
113	seek /si:k/	sought /sɔ:t/	sought /sɔ:t/	шукати
114	sell /sel/	sold /səʊld/	sold /səʊld/	продавати
115	send /send/	sent /sent/	sent /sent/	надсилати
116	set /set/	set /set/	set /set/	ставити, поміщати
117	sew /səʊ/	sewed /səʊd/	sewed /səʊd/ sewn /səʊn/	шити
118	shake /ʃeɪk/	shook /ʃʊk/	shaken /ʃeɪkn/	трясти
119	shave /ʃeɪv/	shaved /ʃeɪvd/	shaved /ʃeɪvd/ shaven /ʃeɪvn/	голитися
120	shear /ʃɪə/	sheared /ʃɪəd/	shorn /ʃɔ:n/	стригти
121	shed /ʃed/	shed /ʃed/	shed /ʃed/	втрачати, лити (сльози)
122	shine /ʃaɪn/	shone /ʃəʊn/	shone /ʃəʊn/	світити(ся), сяяти
123	shoe /ʃu:/	shod /ʃɒd/	shod /ʃɒd/	взувати, підковувати
124	shoot /ʃu:t/	shot /ʃɒt/	shot /ʃɒt/	стріляти, проростати
125	show /ʃəʊ/	showed /ʃəʊd/	shown /ʃəʊn/	показувати
126	shrink /ʃrɪŋk/	shrank /ʃræŋk/	shrunk /ʃrʌŋk/	скорочуватись, давати усадку
127	shut /ʃʌt/	shut /ʃʌt/	shut /ʃʌt/	закривати(ся)
128	sing /sɪŋ/	sang /sæŋ/	sung /sʌŋ/	співати
129	sink /sɪŋk/	sank /sæŋk/	sunk /sʌŋk/	опускатися, тонути
130	sit /sɪt/	sat /sæt/	sat /sæt/	сидіти
131	sleep /sli:p/	slept /slept/	slept /slept/	спати

132	slide /slaid/	slid /slɪd/	slid /slɪd/	ковзати
133	smell /smel/	smelt /smelt/	smelt /smelt/	пахнути, нюхати
134	sow /səʊ/	sowed /səʊd/	sowed /səʊd/ sown /səʊn/	сіяти
135	speak /spi:k/	spoke /spəʊk/	spoken /spəʊkn/	говорити
136	speed /spi:d/	ped /ped/	ped /ped/	прискорюватись, поспішати
137	spell /spel/	spelt /spelt/ spelled /speld/	spelt /spelt/ spelled /speld/	писати, вимовляти по літерах
138	spend /spend/	spent /spent/	spent /spent/	витрачати
139	spill /spɪl/	spilt /spɪlt/ spilled /spɪld/	spilt /spɪlt/ spilled /spɪld/	розливати
140	spin /spɪn/	spun /spʌn/ span /spæn/	spun /spʌn/	прясти, плести
141	spit /spɪt/	spat /spæt/	spat /spæt/	плювати(ся)
142	split /splɪt/	split /splɪt/	split /splɪt/	розколювати(ся)
143	spoil /spɔɪl/	spoilt /spɔɪlt/ spoiled /spɔɪld/	spoilt /spɔɪlt/ spoiled /spɔɪld/	псувати
144	spread /spred/	spread /spred/	spread /spred/	розповсюджувати(ся)
145	spring /sprɪŋ/	sprang /spræŋ/	sprung /sprʌŋ/	стрибати, з'являтися
146	stand /stænd/	stood /stʊd/	stood /stʊd/	стояти
147	steal /sti:l/	stole /stəʊl/	stolen /stəʊln/	красти
148	stick /stɪk/	stuck /stʌk/	stuck /stʌk/	встромляти, приклеювати
149	sting /stɪŋ/	stung /stʌŋ/	stung /stʌŋ/	жалити(ся)
150	stink /stɪŋk/	stank /stæŋk/ stunk /stʌŋk/	stunk /stʌŋk/	смердіти

151	strew /stru:/	strewed /stru:d/	strewn /stru:n/ strewed /stru:d/	розкидати, посипати
152	stride /straɪd/	strode /strəʊd/	stridden /strɪdn/	крокувати
153	strike /straɪk/	struck /strʌk/	struck /strʌk/	бити, вдаряти(ся)
154	string /strɪŋ/	strung /strʌŋ/	strung /strʌŋ/	зав'язувати, шнурувати
155	strive /straɪv/	strove /strəʊv/	striven /strɪvn/	старатися, намагатися
156	sweep /swi:p/	swept /swept/	swept /swept/	нестися, підмітати
157	swell /swel/	swelled /sweld/	swollen /swəʊln/	надувати(ся), розростатися
158	swim /swɪm/	swam /swæm/	swum /swʌm/	плавати
159	swing /swɪŋ/	swung /swʌŋ/	swung /swʌŋ/	коливати(ся)
160	take /teɪk/	took /tʊk/	taken /teɪkn/	брати
161	teach /ti:tʃ/	taught /tɔ:t/	taught /tɔ:t/	вчити, навчати
162	tear /teə/	tore /tɔ:/	torn /tɔ:n/	рвати
163	tell /tel/	told /təʊld/	told /təʊld/	розповідати, казати
164	think /θɪŋk/	thought /θɔ:t/	thought /θɔ:t/	думати
165	throw /θrəʊ/	threw /θru:/	thrown /θrəʊn/	кидати
166	thrust /θrʌst/	thrust /θrʌst/	thrust /θrʌst/	штовхати, тикати, колоти
167	tread /tred/	trod /trɒd/	trodden /trɒdn/	ступати, крокувати
168	unbend /'ʌn'bend/	unbent /'ʌn'bent/	unbent /'ʌn'bent/	розгинатися
169	understand /'ʌndə'stænd/	understood /'ʌndə'stʊd/	understood /'ʌndə'stʊd/	розуміти
170	undertake /ʌndə'teɪk/	undertook /ʌndə'tʊk/	undertaken /ʌndə'teɪkn/	починати, братися за щось
171	upset /ʌp'set/	upset /ʌp'set/	upset /ʌp'set/	перекидатися, засмучувати
172	wake /weɪk/	woke /wəʊk/ waked /weɪkt/	woken /wəʊkn/ waked /weɪkt/	прокидатися, будити

173	wear /weə/	wore /wɔ:/	worn /wɔ:n/	носити (одяг)
174	weave /wi:v/	wove /wəʊv/	woven /wəʊvən/	ткати, плести
175	weep /wi:p/	wept /wept/	wept /wept/	плакати
176	wet /wet/	wet /wet/ wetted /'wetɪd/	wet /wet/ wetted /'wetɪd/	змочувати, зволожувати
177	win /wɪn/	won /wʌn/	won /wʌn/	вигравати, перемагати
178	wind /waɪnd/	wound /waʊnd/	wound /waʊnd/	намотувати(ся), заводити
179	withdraw /wɪð'drɔ:/	withdrew /wɪð'dru:/	withdrawn /wɪð'drɔ:n/	брати назад, відкликати
180	wreak /ri:k/	wreaked /ri:kt/ wrought /rɔ:t/	wreaked /ri:kt/ wrought /rɔ:t/	давати волю почуттям
181	wring /rɪŋ/	wrung /rʌŋ/	wrung /rʌŋ/	скручувати
182	write /raɪt/	wrote /rəʊt/	written /rɪtən/	писати

REFERENCES AND FURTHER READINGS

1. Clandfield Lindsay. Straightforward. Beginner / Lindsay Clandfield. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2006. – 128 p.
2. Clandfield Lindsay. Straightforward. Elementary / Lindsay Clandfield. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2006. – 160 p.
3. Cunningham Sarah. New Cutting Edge. Elementary / Sarah Cunningham, Peter Moor. – Longman, 2005. – 174 p.
4. Cunningham Sarah. New Cutting Edge. Pre-Intermediate / Sarah Cunningham, Peter Moor. – Longman, 2006. – 175 p.
5. Cunningham Sarah. New Cutting Edge. Intermediate / Sarah Cunningham, Peter Moor. – Longman, 2005. – 175 p.
6. Evans Virginia. Enterprise 1. Beginner / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2006. – 166 p.
7. Evans Virginia. Enterprise 2. Elementary / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2007. – 168 p.
8. Evans Virginia. Enterprise Plus. Pre-Intermediate / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2009. – 176 p.
9. Evans Virginia. Enterprise 4. Intermediate / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2011. – 198 p.
10. Evans Virginia. New Round - Up 4 / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Pearson Education, Longman, 2010. – 144 p.
11. Evans Virginia. New Round - Up 5 / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Pearson Education, Longman, 2011. – 144 p.
12. Exam Excellence / [Danuta Gryca, Joanna Sosnowska, Russel Whitehead and others]. – Oxford University Press, 2012. – 200 p.
13. Kerr Philip. Straightforward. Pre-Intermediate / Philip Kerr. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2004. – 160 p.
14. Kerr Philip. Straightforward. Intermediate / Philip Kerr, Ceri Jones. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2005. – 168 p.
15. Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English, Fifth Edition. – Pearson Education, Longman, 2009. – 2082 p.

16. Mann Malcolm. Macmillan Exam Skills for Russia: Speaking and Listening / Malcolm Mann, Steve Taylore-Knowles. – MacMillan, 2010. – 167 p.
17. McCarthy Michael. English Vocabulary in Use. Upper-Intermediate and Advanced / Michael McCarthy, Felicity O'Dell. – Cambridge University Press, 2006. – 307 p.
18. Murphy Raymond. Essential Grammar in Use / Raymond Murphy. – Cambridge University Press, 2007. – 319 p.
19. Murphy Raymond. English Grammar in Use / Raymond Murphy. – Cambridge University Press, 2004. – 379 p.
20. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Beginner / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig. – Oxford University Press, 2011. – 120 p.
21. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Elementary / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig, Paul Seligson. – Oxford University Press, 2011. – 160 p.
22. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Pre-Intermediate / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig, Paul Seligson. – Oxford University Press, 2005. – 160 p.
23. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Intermediate / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig. – Oxford University Press, 2009. – 160 p.
24. Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary. – Oxford University Press, 2010. – 1952 p.
25. Radchenko I.A. Notes on English phonetics with seven laboratory sessions. Introductory-Corrective Course / I.A.Radchenko. – Kiev, 1977. – 88 p.
26. Redman Stuart. English Vocabulary in Use. Pre-Intermediate and Intermediate / Stuart Redman. – Cambridge University Press, 2008. – 263 p.
27. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Beginner / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2008. – 144 p.
28. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Elementary / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2008. – 143 p.
29. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Pre-Intermediate / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2009. – 143 p.
30. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Intermediate / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2001. – 160 p.
31. Thomson A.J. A Practical English Grammar / A.J.Thomson, A.V.Martinet. – Oxford University Press, 2011. – 384 p.

32. Thomson A.J. A Practical English Grammar: Exercises 1 / A.J.Thomson, A.V.Martinet. – Oxford University Press, 1986. – 182 p.
33. Thomson A.J. A Practical English Grammar: Exercises 2 / A.J.Thomson, A.V.Martinet. – Oxford University Press, 2010. – 208 p.
34. Vince Michael. First Certificate Language Practice: English Grammar and Vocabulary / Michael Vince. – Macmillan Education, 2009. – 352 p.
35. Vince Michael. Intermediate Language Practice: English Grammar and Vocabulary / Michael Vince. – Macmillan Education, 2010. – 312 p.
36. Wellman Guy. The Heinemann ELT English Wordbuilder / Guy Wellman. – Macmillan Education, 1998. – 270 p.
37. Wells J.C. Longman Pronunciation Dictionary / J.C.Wells. – Longman, 2004. – 896 p.
38. Англо-український словник / Є.І.Гороть, Л.М.Коцюк, Л.К.Малімон, А.Б.Павлюк. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2006. – 1700 с.
39. Базовий тематичний англо-український словник студента-перекладача [уклад. Л.В.Козяревич, Н.Ю.Мароха] – К.: ВЦ КДЛУ, 2000. – 98 с.
40. Верба Г.В. Довідник з граматики англійської мови / Г.В.Верба, Л.Г.Верба. – К.: Логос, 2007. – 352 с.
41. Гужва Т. Английский язык. Разговорные темы: [уч. пособ.] / Т.Гужва. – К.: Тандем, 1995. – 352 с.
42. Корчажкина О.М. Мои любимые звуки. Фонетико-орфографический справочник английского языка / О.М.Корчажкина, Р.М.Тихонова. – М.: Гуманитарный издательский центр ВЛАДОС, 1996. – 256 с.
43. Посібник з практики усного та писемного мовлення. Ч.І.: [навч. посіб.] / [В.В.Богдан, О.О.Галух, А.Б.Пожар, В.Б.Скрябіна]. – К.: ВЦ КНЛУ, 2004. – 228 с.
44. Практична граматика англійської мови з вправами. Том 1: [посібн. для студ. вищ. навч. закл.] / [Л.М.Черноватий, В.І.Карабан, І.Ю.Набокова та ін.]. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2005. – 288 с.
45. Практична граматика англійської мови з вправами. Том 2: [посібн. для студ. вищ. навч. закл.] / [Л.М.Черноватий, В.І.Карабан, І.Ю.Набокова та ін.]. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2005. – 288 с.
46. Прискорений курс англійської мови: [підруч.] / Л.Ю.Куліш, Є.О.Друянова, В.Л.Мотова, А.І.Мостицька. – К.: Чумацький Шлях, 2001. – 360 с.

47. Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка. Ч.1. Морфология / [В.Л.Каушанская, Р.Л.Ковнер, О.Н.Кожевникова, и др.]. – М.: Фирма Старт, 2000. – 320 с.
48. Симхович В.А. Практическая грамматика английского языка: [уч. пособ.] / В.А.Симхович. – Мн.: ИП «Экоперспектива», 1999. – 350 с.
49. Сліпченко Л.Д. Новий курс англійської мови. Ч.1.: [навч. посіб.] / Л.Д.Сліпченко, Г.С.Лисюк, М.І.Соловей. – К.: ВЦ КДЛУ, 2001. – 329 с.
50. Титова Н.Ю. English Articles. Англійські статті: [навч. посіб.] / Н.Ю.Титова, Л.М.Яценко. – Ірпінь: Національна академія ДПС України, 2007. – 157 с.
51. Українсько-англійський словник / Є.І.Гороть, С.В.Белова, Л.К.Малімон. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2009. – 1040 с.
52. Черноватий Л.М. Курс англійської мови для дорослих: [підруч.] / Л.М.Черноватий. – К.: Вид. ім. Олени Теліги, 1995. – 480 с.
53. Офіційний сайт British Council Україна [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.britishcouncil.org/uk/ukraine.htm>
54. Офіційний сайт Cambridge University Press [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.cambridge.org>
55. Офіційний сайт Dinternal-Book. Англійська мова в Україні [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.dinternal.com.ua>
56. ISL Collective. Main page for sharing ESL and EFL teaching resources [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.en.islcollective.com>
57. Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.en.wikipedia.org>
58. Офіційний сайт Headway – Oxford University Press [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.oup.com/elt/headway>
59. Наукова бібліотека НаУКМА [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.library.ukma.kiev.ua>
60. Электронный словарь АБВУЯ Lingvo x5 [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.lingvo.ru>
61. Словарь Мультитран [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.multitrans.ru>

CONTENTS

ПЕРЕДМОВА	3
Module 1: Personal Identification and Family Life	4
Section I	
Family, Resemblance, Age	4
Section II	
Appearance	41
Section III	
Character	77
Section IV	
Jobs	104
Section V	
Weddings	127
Section VI	
Daily Routine	151
Section VII	
Self-study and Advanced Exercises	166
Module 2: There is No Place Like Home	199
Section I	
Exterior	199
Section II	
Interior	224
Section III	
Housekeeping	259
Section IV	
Self-study and Advanced Exercises	267
Grammar Reference	298
Appendix	334
References and Further Readings	344

Підписано до друку 08.09.2014 р. Формат 60X84 1/16
Папір друк. №1 Спосіб друку офсетний. Умовн. друк. арк. 25,21
Умовн. фарбо-відб. 25,32 Обл.-вид. арк. 25,32
Тираж 200. Зам. № 14-

Видавничий центр КНЛУ
Свідоцтво: серія ДК 1596 від 08.12.2003 р.

ПАТ "ВІПОЛ"
03151, Київ-151, вул. Волинська, 60.